



THE LIBRARY
OF
THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA
LOS ANGELES

BOHEMIAN MADE EASY.

A PRACTICAL BOHEMIAN COURSE FOR
ENGLISH SPEAKING PEOPLE.

—BY—

Charles Jonas,

late U. S. Consul at Prague, author of the first Dictionary of the Bohemian
and English languages.

Second Edition.

Published by the SLAVIE, Racine, Wis., 1900.

~~~~~

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1890, in the office  
of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington, D. C.

~~~~~

PG
4111
J 696
1900

TO THE HONORABLE

G R O V E R C L E V E L A N D,

EXPRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES,

THIS LITTLE BOOK IS DEDICATED,

AS A SLIGHT TOKEN OF PROFOUND,

RESPECT AND ADMIRATION

BY THE

A U T H O R,

950813



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2014

<https://archive.org/details/bohemianmadeeasyjona>

Why this book has been written.

The answer to such a question is simple: because there is a demand for it. And whenever there is a demand, the supply is sure to come.

Not a year passes, but numbers apply to divers booksellers and publishers for some handy book to give them a practical knowledge of the Bohemian language or to serve as a proper introduction to a study thereof.

Who are the applicants? They are business men, clerks, salesmen and travelers, druggists and physicians, ministers, teachers and lawyers. They live and follow their vocations in localities where a large fraction of the population speaks the Bohemian language; they perceive the advantage which a knowledge of Bohemian, or even a slight acquaintance with that tongue, would give them; and consequently they look for a guide.

Such a guide this little work is designed to furnish. I may say that within six or eight years past I have myself read hundreds of applications for such a guide from different parts of our country and I repeatedly promised to write a book of this kind as soon as my other occupations permitted. Now I have redeemed that pledge. It has been done to be sure, only in an imperfect manner; there are defects and shortcomings, which in a pioneer work of this kind cannot be avoided. But I applied myself to the task with the honest intention, materially to assist the beginner in his attempt to gain such a knowledge of the Bohemian language, as would be of help to him in his intercourse with people speaking that language, or in his desire to read Bohemian literature; and I cherish the

hope, that this present result of my labor will prove really helpful to those who will make use of it for that purpose. —

„Is Bohemian a hard language to learn?“ This inquiry I have heard more than once.

I think no language is easy to learn, if a person wants to have a perfect command of it; and Bohemian presents about a fair average of the difficulties, which a student of languages encounters. But there is no great difficulty in acquiring a superficial knowledge of any living European tongue, a knowledge sufficient for ordinary intercourse in every day life, if a person has the will and perseverance to learn it and a fair opportunity to use what he learns. Beginners who will take up this little book with an earnest purpose, will soon find out that Bohemian comes well under this general rule.

Some years ago I made the acquaintance of a business man in a small city of Wisconsin, with whom I conversed both in English and Bohemian and whom I noticed to use both languages in his general conversation with others apparently with the same ease and fluency. It was not until some time after our first meeting, that I learned the gentleman in question was not a Bohemian by birth, but a native American of German descent. Had I been told that he was a born Bohemian, I certainly would have believed it, from the way he handled the language. On our next meeting I asked him how he succeeded in mastering the Bohemian language so perfectly; and he said: „My instructor was the Bohemian newspaper. I commenced by reading communications written by farmers in an easy, colloquial style and asking explanations as to meaning and pronunciation. In this I persevered, my stock of words and phrases grew rapidly, and I was soon enabled to understand and to make a rapid progress in conversation. Later on I had recourse to the dictionary.“

This tends to show what may be done by patient application and perseverance and it may serve us an encouragement

to beginners. Of course, the number of persons of other nationalities who have acquired a sufficient practical knowledge of Bohemian to employ it in ordinary intercourse and business, is very large; and I mention it simply to show, that there is no insuperable difficulty in the way, as some persons perhaps might imagine.

And with this little introduction I wish the beginner God speed!

The Bohemian language.

The Slavonic family of nations, numbering rather more than one hundred and ten millions, is composed of two great divisions:

1. The eastern division, comprising the Russians, Bulgarians and Serbo-Croats, under which latter head may also be classed the Slovenes;

2. the western division, comprising the Poles, Bohemians and the remnant of the Wends in Germany.

The Bohemian language is closely related to the other branches of the Slavonic tongue. It needs only a few weeks study, for a person having a full command of Bohemian, to obtain a fair practical knowledge of any other Slavonic idiom. Especially is the relationship between Bohemian and Polish so close, that they might almost be considered dialects of one and the same language.

The Bohemian language is spoken in Bohemia, Moravia, part of Austrian and Prussian Silesia, and also in Upper Hungary. The Slovak idiom spoken in the last named country is simply an earlier form of Bohemian, which latter the Slovaks of Hungary used for centuries as

their literary or “biblical” language; only within the last fifty years have they begun to employ their proper dialect largely in literature. But still, the language is virtually the same, Bohemians and Slovaks needing no interpreters to understand one another, and no dictionaries mutually to read their publications. As a matter of fact, the two idioms are much nearer than high German and low German.

The Bohemians in the United States.

About the year 1848 Bohemian emigration to the United States commenced. Its volume has never been so large as that of the Irish or German emigration, but it has been steady and it will naturally go on for many years to come. In all probability, it will continue as long as European emigration to this side of the Atlantic ocean in general, and it may in the near future assume larger proportions than in the past.

The census of 1870 found 42,000 persons of Bohemian birth settled in the United States. In the year 1880 there were, according to the census taken in that year, over 85,000. But it must be remembered that many of those classified in the census tables as born in Austria, are of Bohemian nationality, especially such as emigrated from the provinces of Moravia and Silesia, and not from Bohemia proper. Quite a number, also, were by mistake entered under the general heading of “Germany”, as to the country of their nativity.

It is safe to say that the number of persons born in Europe, whose mother tongue was Bohemian, at the time

of the official enumeration of 1880 exceeded one hundred thousand. At this writing they number nearly 200,000, and together with the first generation born in this country of Bohemian parents and speaking the language, in all probability somewhere near 500,000.

Within the last ten or fifteen years quite a heavy stream of immigration has set in from Hungary. At first mostly employed in Eastern mines and factories, these immigrants have in recent years been spreading west and settling on lands. These Hungarians are mostly Slovaks.

The number of Slovaks in the United States at this time probably equals about one third that of the Bohemians proper; hence the present number of persons in the United States speaking the Bohemian language in both its dialects may be computed at six hundred thousand.

The Bohemians have their homes chiefly in the following states: New York, Pennsylvania, Maryland, Ohio, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, Iowa, Minnesota, Nebraska, Kansas, S. Dakota, Missouri and Texas.

In the first five states and also in Missouri they live chiefly in the cities, following different trades and working in factories. In the other states they are mainly farmers, as a rule very industrious and thrifty. Many of them are of course engaged in business of all kinds and in the professions. In their manners and customs and ways of thought the Bohemians strongly resemble the Germans, particularly the South Germans, with whom they have been in close contact in the old world for over a thousand years. They are industrious and saving, sociable and hospitable;

their favorite beverage at social gatherings and entertainments is beer, and "Bohemian beer" of different make has in recent years become quite popular in this country of ours. Immoderate indulgence in their favorite drink may doubtless sometimes be observed among them as among others, especially in the large cities; but as a rule, they are sober, law-abiding and extremely goodnatured.

In religion, Roman Catholicism predominates among the Bohemians and they have a large number of churches, priests and parish schools in the United States. The Protestants also have numerous places of worship. Large numbers of the Bohemians, however, keep apart from all churches and religious denominations. They are liberals, free-thinkers and agnostics of different shades of opinion, enjoying the inestimable privilege of every American citizen to follow his convictions and enjoy a full personal freedom, so long as he respects the laws and the equal freedom of his fellow-citizens.

The first Bohemian newspaper on this side of the Atlantic was issued thirty years ago at Racine, Wisconsin, the first number appearing on New Year's day 1860. Now there are about twenty five or thirty newspapers in that language published in the United States, both daily and weekly, besides several in the Slovak dialect. Most of them have a good patronage and some have in fact a surprisingly large circulation. Other publications are also quite numerous. The Bohemians, and particularly the farmers, are fond of reading, eager for information, and above all they seek political knowledge, taking the liveliest interest

in whatever concerns the government, public institutions and laws of their adopted country. During the civil war the Bohemians, although at that time quite generally classified as Germans, furnished a considerable contingent of the defenders of the Union and in Chicago a monument will soon be reared by the Bohemians in memory of those of their nationality, who cheerfully took up arms and gave their lives for the unity and freedom of this great country.*)

*) The following is a quotation from an extensive article on the Bohemians in St Louis, Mo., which appeared in the *GLLOBE DEMOCRAT* of February 16, 1890:

"In the territory lying between Seventh and Fourteenth streets on the east and west, and Geyer and Russell avenues on the north and south, there is a population of 25,000 souls, all speaking the language of Bohemia, schooling their children in the ancient tongue, keeping up an acquaintance with a rich and varied literature that dates back to the ninth century, and for the most part worshiping in the Roman Catholic Church, of which Bohemia has been a staunch adherent since the ninth century. A thrifty set are these Bohemians, good citizens in all that the term implies, prompt taxpayers, fully alive to the requirements of civilization; mingling freely in business intercourse with their cousins from other lands, they yet preserve the social customs of their native land, and take an overweening pride in the preservation of its language and its literature. The Bohemian met up town in business life would be casually mistaken for a German, but a tour through their section of the city impresses one with their startling individuality.... In conversation with S. (one of their leading men) I was struck by the ease and purity of his English diction. This is a marked peculiarity of most of the Bohemians. From their own harsh and difficult language they switch off into English which betrays but little trace of foreign accent." —

The statement about the Bohemians having been steadfast adherents of the Church of Rome may be considered as a serious lapsus calami, because it is not borne out by history. The Bohemians were in fact a protestant nation from the burning at the stake of their famous reformers John Huss and Jerome of Prague (in the years 1415 and 1416) until the period of the Thirty Years war, which took its start in Bohemia. Concerning the allusion to the character of the Bohemian language it may be stated as a well known experience, that nearly every language appears "harsh and difficult" to a person who is perfectly ignorant of the same and very rarely hears it spoken. Time and again have I heard, on the European continent, English language characterized as "harsh and difficult", whereas in fact, English is a language not only full of melody as well as power, but probably the easiest of all European languages to learn.

PART I.

SECTION 1.

General observations.

In the Bohemian language Roman characters are used in writing and printing.

In order to read Bohemian it is first necessary to be well acquainted with the sounds, represented by the different letters of the Bohemian alphabet.

In attempting to read English while giving the letters the customary Bohemian sounds, we should find most English words difficult to pronounce and a large proportion of them simply unpronounceable.

The same is true if we attempt to read Bohemian while giving the letters their English sounds.

This explains why English speaking persons, entirely ignorant of any language but their own and supposing that the letters of the alphabet always retain their English sounds, find so many “jawbreakers” in trying to pronounce Bohemian or other foreign words. Foreign persons, ignorant of English, find themselves “in the same boat”, when trying to pronounce English words, and their difficulty is even much greater on account of the complicated character of English orthography.

SECTION 2.

The Bohemian alphabet.

The alphabet of the Bohemian language consists of 26 letters, the same as the English, if accented letters, being simply a modification of the original sounds, are not counted; but, counting all the accented letters separately, we find 41 letters in the Bohemian alphabet.

The following table gives the complete alphabet of the Bohemian language, with the English equivalents as near as possible. Capital letters, of course, correspond with the small letters, accented or unaccented.

THE ALPHABET.

a	has the sound of <i>o</i> in <i>done</i> .
á	" " " " <i>a</i> in <i>arm</i> .
b	" " " " <i>b</i> .
c	" " " " <i>ts</i> .
č	" " " " <i>ch</i> in <i>child</i> .
d	" " " " <i>d</i> ; it takes the sound of đ when followed by the soft vowels ě , i or í .
đ	" " " " <i>di</i> in the French word <i>diable</i> . This mellow sound of <i>d</i> , imperfectly rendered by <i>dy</i> , is ordinarily heard in the English expressions <i>would you</i> , <i>could you</i> , when rapidly uttered, so that the terminal <i>d</i> and initial <i>y</i> are fused into one sound.
e	" " " " <i>e</i> in <i>end</i> .
é	" " " " e in ere , or <i>ai</i> in <i>air</i> .
ě	" " " " <i>ea</i> in <i>beatitude</i> , or <i>ye</i> in <i>yes</i> ; when it occurs directly after d , n , t , these letters take the soft sound of đ , ň , ť , and ě sounds like e . The syllable je , <i>ye</i> , is an equivalent for ě .
f	" " " " <i>f</i> .
g	" " " " <i>g</i> in <i>great</i> ; it occurs only in foreign words.
h	" " " " <i>h</i> in <i>ham</i> .
ch	" " " " <i>ch</i> in German and Dutch, also in Welsh, or <i>x</i> in Greek, — somewhat like <i>kh</i> .
i	" " " " <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i> .
í	" " " " <i>i</i> in <i>pique</i> , or <i>ee</i> in <i>seen</i> .
j	" " " " <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i> .
k	" " " " <i>k</i> in <i>sink</i> , without an aspirate.
l	" " " " <i>l</i> .

m	"	"	"	"	<i>m.</i>
n	"	"	"	"	<i>n.</i>
ň	"	"	"	"	<i>ň</i> in Spanish (<i>cañon</i>) or <i>gn</i> in French (<i>campagne</i>); imperfectly rendered by <i>ny</i> .
o	"	"	"	"	<i>o</i> in <i>obey</i> .
ó	"	"	"	"	<i>ó</i> in <i>lord</i> .
p	"	"	"	"	<i>p.</i>
q	"	"	"	"	<i>q</i> in <i>question</i> ; it occurs only in foreign words.
r	"	"	"	"	<i>r</i> in <i>rest</i> ; it has a sharp, trilling sound.
ř	"	"	"	"	<i>rsh</i> (or <i>rzh</i> , as the Imperial Dictionary of the English language has it;) it is a sound proper to the Bohemian and Polish languages, which must be heard in order to be acquired correctly; the same may be said of the English sound of <i>th</i> , hard and soft.
s	"	"	"	"	<i>s</i> in <i>sink</i> .
š	"	"	"	"	<i>sh</i> .
t	"	"	"	"	<i>t</i> in <i>test</i> ; it takes the sound of f when followed by ě , i or í .
ť	"	"	"	"	<i>t</i> in the French word <i>tiens</i> , as commonly pronounced. This mellow sound of <i>t</i> , imperfectly rendered by <i>ty</i> , is also heard in the English expressions <i>wouldn't you</i> , <i>couldn't you</i> , when rapidly uttered, so that the terminal <i>t</i> and initial <i>y</i> are fused into one sound.
u	"	"	"	"	<i>u</i> in <i>push</i> .
ú	"	"	"	"	<i>u</i> in <i>rude</i> , or <i>oo</i> in <i>pool</i> .
ü	{	{	{	{	{
v	"	"	"	"	<i>v</i>
x	"	"	"	"	<i>x</i> in <i>expect</i> .
y	"	"	"	"	<i>y</i> in <i>lynch</i> .
ý	"	"	"	"	<i>i</i> in <i>pique</i> , or <i>ee</i> in <i>seen</i> .
z	"	"	"	"	<i>z</i> in <i>zeal</i> .
ž	"	"	"	"	<i>z</i> in <i>azure</i> , or <i>s</i> in <i>pleasure</i> .

The beginner must try to master thoroughly the peculiar sound of every accented letter in the Bohemian alphabet, before proceeding with his lessons. However, it is evident that of all the accented letters only four will present a certain difficulty: **d̄**, **ñ**, **t̄** and **ř**. The rest are simple. Among the plain consonants, the peculiar sound of **ch** must be well practiced; the combination *kh* gives it only imperfectly.

SECTION 3.

Names of the letters.

The names of the letters of the Bohemian alphabet, though of little consequence to the beginner, are given in the following table as near as can be. However, the Bohemian sounds of the letters, as explained in the foregoing section, must be well kept in mind, in order to name the letters correctly.

For instance: **b** is called *bé*, to be pronounced like *beh*, the *e* sounding like *e* in *ere*, **ai** in *air*, or **a** in *fare*, the final *h* being mute and serving only as a lengthening mark.

Two of the accents (á, ü), whenever they occur, signify only a prolongation of the sound; the quality of the other accents has been explained in the foregoing section.

In spelling a word, the vowels with a long accent (á, é, í, ú, ý) are called *long a*, *long e*, etc.; also, **a** with a comma, **e** with a comma, and so forth; ü is called **u** with a ring.

THE LETTERS NAMED.

a, á	á (ah)	ch	khá	ř	ersh
b	bé	i, í	ee (in bee)	s	ess
c	tsé	j	yé	š	esh
č	ché	k	ká	t	té
d	dé	l	el	ť	ťé

d'	<i>d'ě</i>	m	<i>em</i>	u, ú, ü	<i>oo</i>
e, é	<i>é, (eh)</i>	n	<i>en</i>		<i>(in boom)</i>
ě	<i>iýé</i>	ň	<i>eň</i>	v	<i>vé</i>
f	<i>f</i>	o, ó	<i>ó (oh)</i>	x	<i>i.x</i>
g	<i>gé</i> (like g in <i>go</i>)	p	<i>pé</i>	y, ý	<i>ee or ypsilon</i>
h	<i>há</i>	q	<i>koo</i>	z	<i>zett</i>
		r	<i>er</i>	ž	<i>žett</i>

SECTION 4.

Bohemian pronunciation.

After mastering the sounds of the Bohemian letters, the learner may be said to have fully conquered Bohemian pronunciation.

There is in fact only one rule: *Pronounce as it is written, sounding every letter*, — of course, giving the letters their proper Bohemian, and not their English sounds.

The English, French and German written languages abound with silent letters; the Bohemian language has practically none, that is, extremely few. Such as there are, will be pointed out in the course of the following lessons.

It is a well known rule in English, that there can be no written syllable without a vowel. In Bohemian we sometimes encounter syllables made up of consonants without any vowel.

“How in the world can you pronounce that?”

Not infrequently have we heard such a question from persons, having no idea of any language but their own.

But it is just as easy to pronounce such syllables in Bohemian, as it is in English to give utterance to syllables with a mute vowel. An example will elucidate it:

Trn means *thorn*. This word is evidently of the same derivation in both languages.

Now, the Bohemian word **trn** being composed of three consonants and no vowel, how is it pronounced?

In the same way, as the second syllable of the English words *bittern*, *slattern*, where the vowel *e* is silent. We hear in that second syllable only the sounds of *t-r-n*, the sound of the vowel *e* disappearing entirely; and this explains exactly the pronunciation of Bohemian words of one syllable, or syllables, without a vowel. Syllables with silent vowels abound in English as well as in German, — not quite so in French; — and they are constantly pronounced with the same ease, as the syllables having no vowel sounds in Bohemian.

It is to be observed that such syllables **always** contain one of the two consonants **l** and **r** which are sometimes called “half-vowels”, because in such cases they almost take the place of vowels. In a prolongation of the sound we hear in Bohemian somewhat indistinctly the vowel **e** before the proper sound of those consonants, as if we wrote and partially pronounced:

t^ern instead of **trn** (thorn)

v^elk “ “ **vlk** (wolf)

The number of monosyllabic words without a vowel is not large; but syllables consisting of two or three consonants occur quite often.

For instance: **trčeti**, **strčiti**, means in English *to stick out, to push*. Each of these words is composed of three syllables; **tr-če-ti**, **str-či-ti**; and the first syllable of each contains only consonants: **tr**, **str**.

How are they pronounced?

Just like *ter* and *ster* in the English words *bitter*, *blister*. Nobody finds any difficulty in passing over the silent *e* and saying *bittr*, *blistr*.

Among the Bohemian vowels there are some, which are called *soft*, namely: **e**, **ě**, **i**, **í**; and others (**a**, **o**, **u**, **y**) which are called *hard* or *broad*.

Of the soft vowels the last three, **ě**, **i** and **í**, have a softening influence upon some preceding consonants, particularly **n**, **d**, **t**, which they change into the soft sounds of **ñ**, **đ**, **ť**, as noticed in section 1. For instance:

saně (sleigh) is pronounced as if spelt **sañe**;
paní (mistress, lady) is pronounced as if spelt **pañí**;
dělo (cannon) sounds like **d'elo**;
dílo (work)..... **d'ilo**;
tělo (body)..... **telo**;
tisk (printing)..... **tisk**;

This will always be plainly indicated in the pronouncing columns of the practical lessons contained in Part II.

Care must be taken to give every long vowel (**á, é, í, ý, ó, ú, ü**) its proper *long* sound, because a shortened sound would often make the word unintelligible or change its meaning, the same as in English in numerous cases. For instance:

pata means *heel*; **pátá** means the *fifth* (in the feminine gender). The only difference is in the length of the vowels. Likewise in English: **lid** and **lead** have the same vowel sound, the only difference being in its length or quantity. —

We have said all it is necessary to say about Bohemian pronunciation and in closing we again enjoin the only rule, which obtains in the Bohemian with very few exceptions: Pronounce as it is written, — giving every letter its proper Bohemian sound.

SECTION 5.

Parts of speech.

In Bohemian the parts of speech or classes of words are the same as in English excepting the article.

In English we have the definite article *the* and the indefinite article *a, an*. In French, masculine, feminine, *le, la, — un, une*; in German, masculine, feminine and neutre, *der, die, das, — ein, eine, ein*.)

In Bohemian there is no article, definite or indefinite. In this regard, Bohemian agrees with Latin.

We say in English: *the house, the houses, a house*; in Bohemian **dům, domy, dům.**

SECTION 6.

Gender.

But, having no article, the Bohemian noun suffers nevertheless from the useless infliction of grammatical gender in the same degree as the German, Latin and Greek. It has three genders, namely: masculine, feminine and neutre

The English language has rejected all distinction of gender, attributing sex to living beings only, which is one of the greatest advantages the English language has over all other European tongues, ancient and modern.

In the absence of an article in Bohemian, if we want to designate the gender of a noun, we use the indicative pronoun *this* or *that*, namely: **ten** for the masculine, **ta** for the feminine and **to** for the neutre gender. Hence we say:

ten dům	<i>this (or that) house</i>
ta bouda	<i>this (or that) hut</i>
to okno	<i>this (or that) window</i>

In the plural it is **ti** for living masculine beings:

ti muži, *these (or those) men;*

ty for inanimate masculine things and for the feminine gender; **ta** for the neutre:

ty domy, *these or those houses;*

ty boudy, *these or those huts;*

ta okna, *these or those windows.*

However, in colloquial parlance, **ty** is heard in the plural regardless of gender. —

Always remember, that the article has no existence in Bohemian; and that the words **ten**, **ta**, **to**, — **ti**, **ty**, **ta**, when used before a noun, are simply indicative pronouns and nothing else.

SECTION 7.

Grammatical rules in general.

Bohemian is one of the highly inflected languages, like German or the classic tongues, which is doubtless a disadvantage, to be deplored especially from the standpoint of the learner. On account mainly of the useless distinction of gender, which permeates the whole structure of the Bohemian language, grammatical forms and rules are numerous, forming the principal difficulty encountered in the study of the language.

But to some extent, at least, that difficulty is offset by colloquial usage, which largely disregards the artificial distinction of gender in the employment of pronouns, adjectives and verbs, as they relate to nouns of different gender. This serves to simplify the matter somewhat for the learner of Bohemian as commonly spoken.

In the following lessons we try to imitate the natural method of learning a language. We do not teach the child grammatical rules and complications before it knows how to speak. We teach its words and their connection in phrases, expressing thoughts.

Consequently we do not intend to cram the beginner at the outset with all sorts of grammatical rules. There are not thousands but millions of people using the Bohemian language and knowing little of the rules and perplexities of its grammar. The same is true of every other living tongue.

This Course being designed solely for practical purposes, it will be our aim to impart to the learner some practical knowledge of the language in the easiest, most natural and most direct way possible. We shall therefore interpolate in the following lessons only such grammatical rules, as

may appear to be indispensable to facilitate the student's progress and which may easily be mastered *en passant*, or, so to say, by a method of easy induction.

A more extended and methodical review of the Bohemian grammar will be found in the last part of this book. After acquiring to a certain degree a practical knowledge of the language, the learner will find it much easier to grapple with the details of its grammar, which in the beginning would serve only to perplex him unnecessarily and to dampen his ardor. And when a moderate knowledge of the tongue is attained, the progressive student will naturally take a Dictionary of the English and Bohemian languages to his aid, which will make further progress rapid and pleasing.

The main difficulty is in the start, as in every other language. It requires earnestness of purpose and perseverance. The beginner must not allow himself to be discouraged by such initial difficulties, as he is sure to meet with; and whenever the pronunciation of an accented letter or a word, as given in this book, seems to be a stumbling-block, we would advise him to ask some neighbor or acquaintance, who speaks Bohemian, to pronounce it for him repeatedly, so that his ear may grow accustomed to the sound and the same may become quite familiar to him. If he fails to catch it forthwith let him try again and again, until he succeeds. Let him remember, that the thousands of Bohemians who learn English find similar difficulties in their way; and numbers of those, who at first felt discouraged, thinking they could never master the intricacies of the English tongue, to-day speak and write it tolerably well, — many of them with fluency and grace.

*SECTION 8.***The accent..**

In the Bohemian language the accent is always placed upon the first syllable; consequently its rules, which in English have to be closely studied, do not offer any difficulty whatever. Only when a noun is preceded by a preposition of one syllable, the accent is transferred and placed upon that preposition.

SECTION 9.

Ty and vy, — thou and you.

The personal pronoun **ty** of the second person singular is used in Bohemian in family circles, and in addressing familiar or intimate friends. It expresses endearment, familiarity or close friendship.

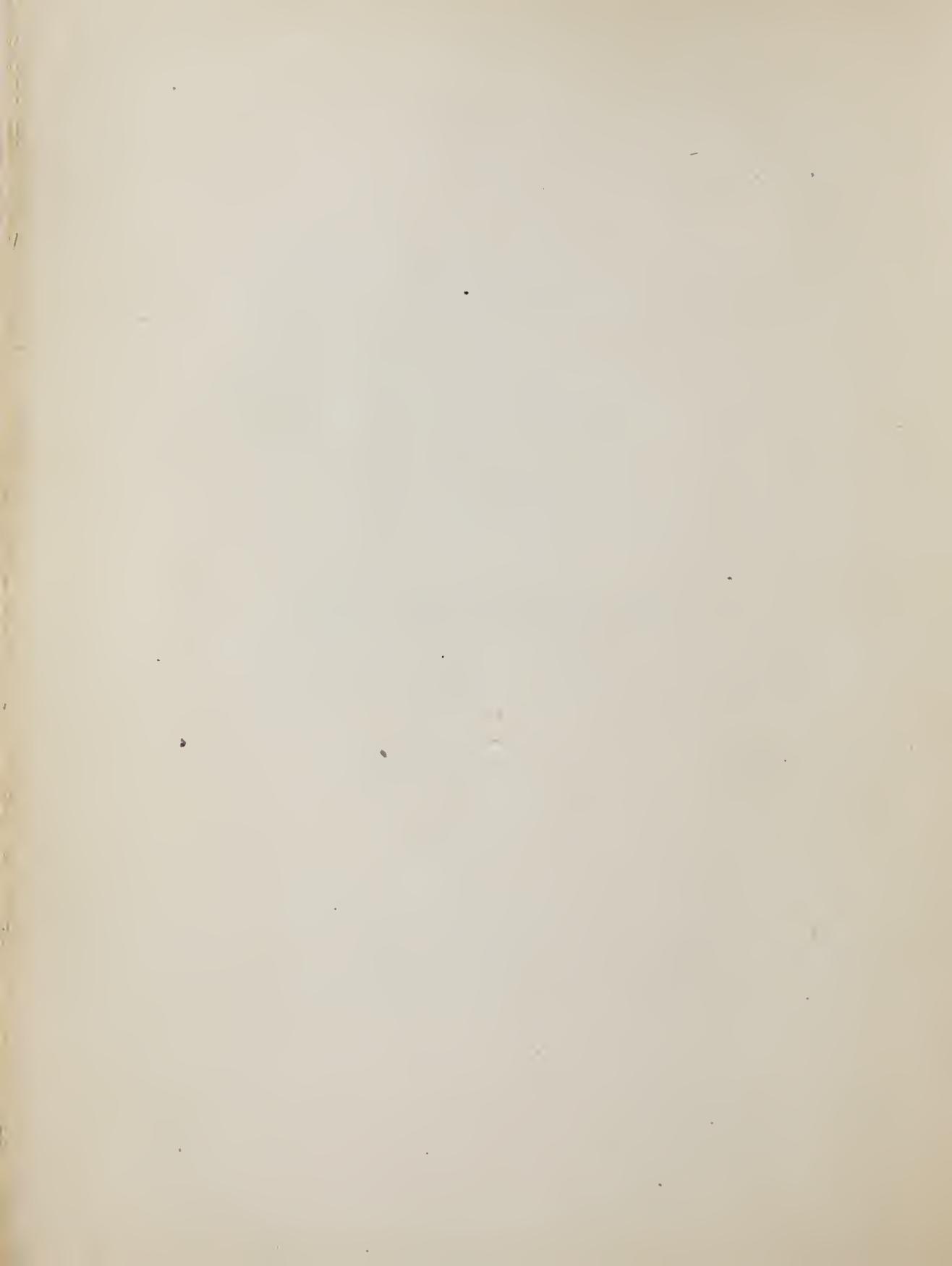
But among the Bohemians in America it is very often improperly employed instead of **vy** (*you*) in addressing others, which latter word in Bohemian has the same general usage as in English. By a curious mistake most of the original Bohemian settlers in America, like many of the Germans, translated the English *you* by **ty**, fancying the meaning to be identical and supposing that in English the second person singular is used in addressing another person, instead of the second person *plural*, as is the proper custom in Bohemian. But the rule in ordinary discourse is almost the same in English as in Bohemian, the second person plural (*you, vy*) being employed in addressing others and always combined with a plural verb, there being only a few exceptions in Bohemian as stated above. The French language follows exactly the same rule as the Bohemian: but in German discourse the third person plural is used in speaking to another (**Sie, they**).

This explanation, though somewhat lengthy, has been deemed necessary at the outset.

SECTION 10.

In vulgar language, the sound of the consonant **v** is often improperly placed before the initial vowel **o**, so that for instance, in place of a pure **on, ona, ono** (he, she, it) we hear **von, vona, vono**. It is something similar to the vulgar English custom to place the sound of **h** before an initial vowel. *H'englishman, h'eye-tooth*, instead of Englishman, eye-tooth.

PART II.



Rules of pronunciation.

The following rules must constantly be kept in mind:

1—The Bohemian pronunciation in the following lessons is always given in *italics*.

2—We proceed upon the supposition that section 2, part I, explaining the sounds of all the Bohemian letters, and particularly the sounds of accented vowels, has been fully digested by the beginner.

3—Consequently we do not attempt, in the following lessons, to give English equivalents for the long vowels á and é, which are of very frequent occurrence, because it would be a useless complication. For the long vowels í and ý, whose sound is identical, the English *ee* as heard in *seen* will have to answer. But it is to be observed that in ordinary Bohemian discourse the sound of ý is frequently (in fact, nearly always) changed into ej, i. e., *ey* as heard in *they*, *obey*. The word *sýr* (cheese), for instance, is properly pronounced *seer*, but commonly *seyr*.

4—The sound of the Bohemian short vowels a, e, o, is represented by ă, ē, ǒ; but the marked characters á, é, ó are avoided when their use appears to be superfluous. For instance the pronunciation of words like **tento** (this one) **pense** (pension), **ponor** (draught of a ship) is sufficiently indicated by *tentő*, *pensě*, *ponor* to an English-speaking beginner; and it would be superfluous to write *těntő*, *pěnsě*, *pőnor*.

5 - The short sound of i is given by *i*, as heard in *pin*. When the long English sound of *i* (as heard in *dine*) is to be employed a full-face **i** or **I** will stand for it, which however is of rare occurrence.

6—Short y always retains its short English sound as heard in the word **lynch**, and we use for it in the pronouncing column either *i* or *y*, as may be more appropriate. The combination **ej** will commonly be represented by *ey*, which must always be pronounced like *ey* in *they*, *whey*, *obey*.

7—The short vowel **u** is represented by *ü*, but frequently also by *oo*, where a slight lengthening of the sound is not only admissible, but conducive to a clear enunciation. Long **ú** and **ü** are naturally always rendered by *oo*, as heard in *boot*.

8—The vowel **ě**, when preceded by **d**, **n**, **t**, changes them into **đ**, **ñ**, **ť**, and **ť** as then the sound of a simple **e**. When it retains its proper sound of **ě**, we commonly write it *ye* in the pronouncing column. The student must be careful always to sound it like *ye* in the English words *yes*, *yet*, *yell*, and NEVER like the word *ye*, meaning "you". For instance: **mě**, **právě**, (me, just). *mye*, *právye*, (*myě*, *právyě*).

The syllable **je** is identical in pronunciation with **ě**, and is also rendered by *ye*; for example: **jen** (only), *yen*. **Je** is generally used in common discourse as an abbreviation of **jest**, *yest* (is); to guard against possible mispronunciation, we will always write it *ye*.

9—The sound of the soft consonants **đ**, **ñ**, **ť** is represented by the combination *dy*, *ny*, *ty*, when practicable, which is rarely the case. Whenever this is found impracticable, or when it would only serve to obscure instead of facilitating matters, a full-face **đ**, **ñ**, **ť** it is used in the pronouncing column and the student must try his best to give it the proper Bohemian sound.

Inflexible rule: When the soft vowels **ě**, **i**, **í** follow after **d**, **n**, **t**, these consonants are softened into **đ**, **ñ**, **ť**, and will be so marked.

10—To represent the sound of **ch**, the combined letters **kh** are invariably employed, for want of a better substitute. The sound of **ř** is given by **rsh**, for the same reason.*)

*) The letter **ř** was unknown in the old Bohemian language and is wisely rejected by the Slovaks, who use the letter **r** in its place. In many cases also, where its use is insisted upon by strict and pedantic grammarians, it is avoided by the practical common sense of the people.

11—For the letter č we use *ch* or *tch* as heard in *chap*; *wretch*; for š the English equivalent *sh* is used; for the Bohemian j, the letter y as heard in *yonder* is made to answer. A final s in Bohemian has always the sharp hissing sound and will be marked *ss*.

12—For the sound of ž the Imperial Dictionary gives *zh* as a substitute; but we retain the full-face Bohemian ž in the pronouncing column, as nothing would be gained by such a substitution. It is always pronounced like *z* in *azure*, or *s* in *pleasure*. But in some cases, when terminating a word or a syllable, the letter ž takes the sharper sound of *sh* and will be so noted.

THE DIPHTHONG ou.

This is the only diphthong in the Bohemian language, and it must always be pronounced like *ou* in *dough*, or like the word *owe*, — never like *ou* in *pound* or *ghoul*. We shall commonly mark it *oū*.

ABBREVIATIONS

will be avoided as much as possible, and their meaning will in every case be self-evident. — The letters *m*, *f*, *n* beside a noun denote gender (masculine, feminine, neutre). — *Sing.* means singular number; *pl.* means plural number.

THE HYPHEN.

Syllables without a vowel — but always containing one of the so-called “semi-vowels” l and r, as before observed, — are separated from other syllables of the same word by a hyphen, to make their separate pronunciation apparent. For instance: **brzo** (soon), *br-zō*, — the syllable *br* being pronounced exactly like *bor* in the English words *labor*, *neighbor*.

However, a silent e will often be interpolated in such syllables, to elucidate their pronunciation; for instance: **prší**, *p^ershee*, it rains.

THE APOSTROPHE

will be used to prevent a collision of two letters, into which an English-speaking beginner might easily be entrapped, and to keep them separate; as, for example: **měl jsem** (I had), pronounced *m'yell sěm*, — and not *my-ell sěm*.

LESSON I.

Já	yá	I	ona	ǒnǎ	she
ty	ty	thou (<i>improperly</i> you)	ono	ǒnō	it
on	ǒn	he	tén, ta, to,	ten, tǎ, tō,	this, that
			ty	ty,	that or those
			tu, zde	tǔ, zdě	here
			a, i	ă, i	and
			ano, ne	ǎnō, ně	yes, no
			za	zǎ	for; půl pool half
			na	nǎ	on

Já mám, yá mám,	},	I have or	on má, ǒn má,	},	he has or
mám	mám	},	má	má	},
mám?	mám?	have I?	má?	má?	has he?
ty máš, ty másh,	},	thou hast or	ona má, ǒnǎ má,	},	she has or
máš	másh	},	má	má	},
		thou hast got	ono má, ǒnō má,	},	it has or
		(<i>improperly</i> : you have)	má	má	},
máš	másh	hast thou? (have you?)			it has got

dollar, m.	dollär	dollar	účet, m.	oo-chet,	bill, account
půl-dollar, m.	pool-d.	half-a-dollar	dluh, m.	dlooh	debt
cent, m.	tsent	cent	na dluh	nǎ dlooh	on trust, on credit
peníze, pl.	peñeezě	money or cash	na účet	nǎ-oochet,	on trust, on credit
hotové	hōtové	cash	maso, n.	mǎsō	meat

chleb , m.	<i>khleb</i>	bread	pivo ,	n.	<i>peevř</i>	beer
chleba	<i>khlebă</i>		víno ,	n.	<i>reenř</i>	wine
sýr , m.	<i>seer</i>	cheese	seda ,	f.	<i>sodă</i>	soda
máslo , n.	<i>máslō</i>	butter	voda ,	f.	<i>vodă</i>	water

Note 1. Pronounce **má** like *ma'a*, the vulgar abbreviation of Mamma; and **mám** like *ma'am*, the vulgar abbreviation of Madam; it will assist in catching the true sound,

Note 2. In Bohemian, **míti** *meet'i* (to have), is not an auxiliary verb as in English, but always an independent verb.

Note 3. Soda is commonly used as an abbreviation of **sodovka**, soda-water. — In vulgar speech, the expression **jo**, *yō*, (from the German *ja*) is often heard instead of **ano**, *yes*.

Note 4. The long vowel **ú**, *oo*, which occurs only at the beginning of a word or syllable, is often changed into **ou**, *oū*, and so pronounced. Hence we frequently hear **oučet**, *oūchet*, instead of **účet**, *oochet*, and the like.

EXERCISES.

Já mám peníze, I have money.

Mám peníze, I have money.

Ty máš peníze, thou hast money
(sometimes *improperly* used for:
you have money, See Section 7.
Part I.)

On má hotové, he has the cash.

Ona má chleba, she has bread (*or*
the bread).

Ona má dollar, she has a dollar.

Ona má cent, she has a cent.

Já mám účet, I have the bill.

Já mám dluh, I have a debt.

Ty máš dluh, thou hast (you have)
a debt.

On má dluh, he has a debt.

Já mám ten účet, I have the bill.

Mám ten účet? have I that bill?

Mám, I have.

Máš ten účet? hast thou (have
you) that bill?

Mám, I have.

Máš dollar? hast thou (have you)
a dollar?

Já mám půl-dollar, I have half-a-
dollar.

Máte peníze? have you money?
Má peníze? has he money?
Má on ty peníze? has he that money?
On má dollar, he has a dollar.
On má ten dollar, he has that dollar.
Ona má ty peníze, she has that
money.
Ona má dluh, she has a debt.
Ona má zde účet, she has an ac-
count here.
Ona má ten účet, she has that bill.
Mám chleba, I have bread.
A já mám maso, and I have meat.
Máš chleba? hast thou (have you)
bread?
Ano, mám; yes, I have.

Máš maso? hast thou (have you) meat?
 Ne, no.
Mám chleba a maso, I have bread and meat.
A já mám pivo, and I have beer.
To pivo, that beer (*or* this beer).
To pivo a to víno, that beer a d that wine.
Chleba za peníze } bread for cash
a pivo na dluh, } and beer on trust.
Maso za hotové } meat for cash and
a víno na účet } wine on account.
Má ten chleb } has he that bread
a to máslo? } and that butter?
Chleb i voda, bread and water.
Máslo a sýr, butter and cheese.

dollar	účet	chleb
cent	dluh	sýr

are all of the masculine gender, and using the indicative pronoun we say: **ten dollar, ten cent, etc.**

Nouns terminating in consonants are mostly of the masculine gender.

The nouns **voda**, **soda**, are of the feminine gender: **ta voda**, **ta soda**.

Nouns terminating in a are always of the feminine gender.

But some feminine nouns also terminate in ě and in consonants: for instance **země**, earth (land, country); **kost'**, bone; **daň**, tax.

The nouns **maso**, **máslo**, **pivo**, **víno**, are neutre: **to maso**, **to máslo**, etc.

Nouns terminating in o are always of the neutre gender.

But some neutre nouns have the termination e, ě or í; for instance **pole**, field; **doupe**, den; **oseni**, crop.

Note 6. The noun **peníze** (money) is in the plural, the singular **peníz**, **peñeez**, means either “a coin” or “an amount”.

LESSON II.

My	<i>me</i>	we	máme	<i>mámě</i>	we have
vy	<i>vy</i>	you	máte	<i>mátě</i>	you have
oni	<i>ðní</i>	they	mají	<i>mă-yee</i>	they have

Note 1. In the third person plural **oni** *ðní* (they) is used in the masculine gender for animate creatures; **ony**, *ðny* (they) in the feminine gender, and in the masculine for inanimate things; **ona** *ðnă* (they) in the neutre gender.

But in common discourse no such grammatical distinction is made and the masculine form **oni** is employed in all cases.

papír , m.	<i>păpeer</i>	paper	plac , m.	<i>plăts</i>	place or
pero , n.	<i>perō</i>	pen	místo , n.	<i>meestō</i>	room
inkoust , m.	<i>inkoúst</i>	ink	stůl , m.	<i>stool</i>	table

vůz , m.	<i>vooz</i>	wagon	seno , n.	<i>sěnō</i>	hay
bič , m.	<i>bitch</i>	whip	obilí , n.	<i>ðbe-lee</i>	grain
pytel , m.	<i>pitěll</i>	sack	potah , m.	<i>potăh</i>	team

čas, m. *chăss* time

tam	<i>tăm</i>	there	dost	<i>dăst</i>	enough
jen, jenom	<i>yey, yenōm</i>	only	každý	<i>každee</i>	every one

všichni, *fshikhñi* all

EXERCISES.

My máme papír, we have paper.
Máte pero? have you a pen?
Ano, mám; yes, I have.
Máte inkoust? have you ink?
Mám, I have.
Máte peníze? have you money?
Zde máte plac, here you have a place.
Tam máte místo, there you have a place.
Zde má každý místo, here every one has a place.
Tam mají všichni místo, there they all have a place.

Zde máte stůl, here you have a table.
Máme vůz, we have a wagon.
On má bič, he has a whip.
Ona má pytel, she has a sack.
Mají potah, they have a team.
Oni mají obilí a seno, they have grain and hay.
Mají obilí a seno? have they grain and hay?
Mají jen seno, they have only hay.
Oni mají jenom pytel, they have only a sack.
Máme čas, we have time.

Note 2. As observed in **všichni** (all), when a word commences with the letter **v** followed by another *consonant*, the initial **v** takes the sharp sound of an **f**, whenever the facility of pronunciation naturally requires that modification of the sound.

LESSON III.

Kde	<i>gdě</i>	where	ne	<i>ně</i>	no, not
kdy	<i>gdy</i>	when	proč	<i>pröch</i>	why
kdo	<i>gdo</i>	who	proto že	<i>protö žë</i>	because
ted'	<i>ted'</i>	now,	ani	<i>äni</i>	no, not one,
nyní	<i>nyñí</i>	at present			not even, neither—nor
nemám	<i>nemám</i>	I have not, I have not got	nemáme	<i>nemámë</i>	we have not
nemáš	<i>nemásh</i>	thou hast (you have) not	nemáte	<i>nemátë</i>	you have not
nemá	<i>nemá</i>	he (she, it) has not	nemají	<i>nemäyee</i>	they have not

Note 1. In the words **kde**, **kdy**, **kdo** the hard consonant **k** is pronounced like **g** in *go*. In **nemám**, **nemáš**, etc.. *nem* has exactly the same sound as in the word *nemesis*.

Note 2. Negation is always expressed by the prefix **ne**.

EXERCISES.

Nemám peníze, I have no money.

Nemáš peníze? hast thou no money?

Nemáte peníze? have you no money?

Ne; no.

Proč nemá peníze? why has he (she, it) no money?

Protože nemá obilí, because he has no grain.

Nemáme účet, we have no account.

Nemáte hotové? have you no cash?

Nemáte ani dollar? have you not even a dollar?

Nemá ani cent? has he not a cent?

Nemám ani dollar, I have not a dollar.

Nemá ani cent, he has not a cent.

Nemají ani chleb, ani máslo; they have neither bread nor butter.

Nemají chleba, ani máslo, ani sýr; they have no bread, no butter and no cheese.

Nemáme papír, pero, ani inkoust; we have no paper, no pen and no ink.

Nemáte plac? have you no place?

Zde nemáme místo, we have no place here.

Tam nemáme místo, we have no place there.

Máš čas? hast thou time?

Máte čas? { have you time?

Máte kdy? {

Nemám čas, { I have no time.

Nemám kdy, {

Ted nemáme čas, we have no time now.

Nyní nemají čas, they have no time now.

Kdy máte čas? when have you time?

Kdy máme čas? when have we time?

Nyní; now.

Kdo má peníze? who has money?

Kdo má čas? who has time?

Kde máš peníze? where hast thou the money?

Kde máte peníze? where have you the money?

Kdo nemá peníze? who has no money?

Kdo má dluh? who has a debt?

Kde máte dluh? where have you a debt?

Proč nemáte hotové? why have you not the cash?

LESSON IV.

Co	<i>tsō</i>	what	moc	<i>mōts</i>	
co to	<i>tsō tō</i>	what it is (that)	mnoho	<i>mnohō</i>	much, many
něco	<i>ñetsō</i>	something	tuze	<i>toozē</i>	very; too
nic	<i>ñits</i>	nothing	jak	<i>yāk</i>	how
pranic	<i>prāñits</i>	nothing at all	tak	<i>tāk</i>	so .

EXERCISES.

Já mám něco. I have something.

Já nemám nic. Nemám nic. I have

nothing.

Já mám dollar, I have a dollar

Nemám ani dollar, I have not even a dollar.

Nemám pranic, I have nothing at all.

Nemáš nic, thou hast nothing.

Nemáte nic, you have nothing.

Oai nemají nic, they have nothing.

Co to máš? what is it thou hast got?

Máš něco? hast thou anything?

Co to máte? what have you? (what is it you have? what have you got?)

Máte něco? have you anything?

Co to mají? what have they got?

Nemáte nic? have you nothing?

Nemáte pranic? have you nothing at all?

Tak vy nemáte nic, so you have nothing.

Nic nemám, I have nothing.

Pranic nemáme, we have nothing at all.

Pranic nemají, they have nothing at all.

Ani víno, ani pivo nemají; they have neither wine, nor beer.

Mám moc, I have much.

Máme mnoho, we have much.

Ty nemáš moc, thou hast not much.

Vy nemáte moc, you have not much.

Oni nemají mnoho, they have not much.

Jak moc? Jak mnoho? how much?

Tuze moc. Tuze mnoho; very much.

Ne moc. Ne mnoho; not much.

Ne tuze moc, not very much.

Ne tuze mnoho, " " "

Ne tak tuze mnoho, not so very much.

Máš dost? hast thou enough.

Máte dost? have you enough?

Ano, mám dost; yes, I have enough.

Nemám dost, I have not enough.

To je tuze mnoho, co máte; that is very much, what you have got.

LESSON V.

někdo <i>negdō</i>	somebody, some one	někde <i>negdě</i>	somewhere, anywhere
nikdo <i>nigdō</i>	nobody, no one	nikde <i>nigdě</i>	nowhere
žádný žádnee		nikdy <i>nigdi</i>	never
vždy <i>vždi</i>		stále <i>stále</i>	stále
vždycky <i>vždi-tski</i> *)	always, all the time, ever	pořád*) <i>porád</i>	porchád
práce, f. <i>prátsě</i>	work	co dělat	tsř d'elāt
			to do.

EXERCISES.

Máte něco? have you something?

Máte někde něco? have you got something, anywhere?

Nemáme nikde nic, we have got nothing, nowhere.

Kdo má něco? who has something?

Žádný nic, nobody (has) anything.

Nikdo nemá nic, nobody has anything.

Nemáme žádný nic; nobody (none of us) has anything.

Nikdo nemá tuze moc, nobody has too much.

Nemám nikde nic, I have not anything anywhere.

Ty nemáš nikdy nic, thou never hast anything.

Vy nemáte nikdy nic, you never have anything.

Mám vždy (dycky) něco, I always have something.

Máte vždycky něco, you always have something,

Pořád něco máte, you always have something.

Ty pořád něco máš, thou hast always something.

Stále něco máte, you always have something.

Neustále něco mají, they always have something.

Nemám pořád nic, I never have anything.

Stále nemá nic, he never has anything.

*) Colloquially *dycky*, *dit-ski*; *pořád*, *porád*.

Pořád nemají nic, they never have anything.

Proč nemáš nic? why hast thou nothing?

Proč nemáte nic? why have you nothing?

Proč nemáte něco? why have you not something?

Proto že nemám, because I have not.

Nemáš dollar? hast thou not a dollar?

Nemáte peníze? have you no money?

Proč nemáte peníze? why have you no money?

Já mám půl-dollar, I have half-a-dollar.

On má dollar a půl, he has a dollar and a half.

Nikdy nemám čas, I never have time.

Proč nemáte nikdy čas? why have you never time?

Proto že mám moc práce, because I have much work (much to do).

Proto že mám mnoho co dělat, because I have much to do.

Proto že mám tuze moc práce, because I have very much to do.

Jak moc? Jak mnoho? how much (many)?

Tak moc. Tak mnoho. So much (many).

Tak tuze moc, so very much.

Proč tak moc? why so much?

Stále tak tuze moc, always so very much.

Žádný nemá tak mnoho, nobody has so much.

Ne tuze moc, not too much.

Co to? what is it?

Nic, nothing.

Note 1. It will be observed that in Bohemian there is a double negation expressed in a negative sentence:

Já nemám nic, *literally*, I have not nothing, (*actually*, I have nothing).

Žádný nemá nic; nobody has not nothing, (nobody has anything).

Nemáte nikdy nic; you never have not nothing, ('you never have anything).

Note 2. The order of the words in a sentence is much less rigid than in English, and may often be changed at pleasure or according to the stress we wish to lay upon a certain word, without changing the sense. For instance;

Žádný nemá mnoho; mnoho nemá žádný;
nemá žádný mnoho,

This is always one and the same sentence, the words fitting together at the pleasure of the speaker. But in English we are rigidly bound to a certain order: *nobody has much*. It would be impossible to transpose the words and say: *much has nobody*; *has nobody much*.

Of course, not every Bohemian sentence yields to transposition to the same extent, but nearly every one yields more or less. Let us take another illustration at random from the foregoing exercises:

Proto že mám moc práce, *because I have much work (much to do)* may be expressed as follows, without changing the sense:

proto že moc práce mám;
proto že práce moc mám;
proto že moc práce mám;
proto že práce mám moc.

In the English sentence no transposition is possible. What an immense help this freedom of transposition is, especially in poetry, will be apparent to the student.

LESSON VI.

Já jsem	<i>yá sěm</i>	{	I am		ty jsi	<i>ty si</i>	{	thou art
jsem	<i>sěm</i>				<i>jsi</i>	<i>si</i>		
on jest,	<i>őn yest;</i>	{	on je,		<i>őn yě;</i>	<i>jest,</i>	{	he is
ona “	<i>őnă “;</i>		ona “		<i>őnă “;</i>	“ “		she is
ono “	<i>őnō “;</i>	{	ono “		<i>őnō “;</i>	“ “	{	it is
My jsme,	<i>me smě</i>		we are		vy jste	<i>vee stě</i>		you are
jsme	<i>smě</i>				<i>jste</i>	<i>stě</i>		
oni (ony, oma) jsou	<i>oñi (ony, őnă)</i>	{	<i>soú</i>		<i>soú</i>		{	they are
jsou	<i>soú</i>							

Note 1. The verb **býti**, *beet'i* (to be) is the only auxiliary verb in the Bohemian language.

Jsem, jsi, jsme, jste, jsou, as shown above, are pronounced: *sem, si, smě, stě, soū*. In spelling the initial **j** is also frequently omitted, even by some of the best writers: *sem, si, sme, ste, sou*.

dobrý, á, é	<i>dobree</i>	good	také, taky	<i>täke</i>	also, too;
špatný, á, é	<i>shpătnee</i>	bad	ale	<i>älë</i>	but
drahý, á, é	<i>drăhee</i>	dear	zde, tu, tady	<i>zdë, tü, tăde</i> ,	here, present;
laciný, á, é	<i>lätsinee</i>	cheap	teda	<i>tëtä</i>	well then;
čerstvý, á, é	<i>cherstvée</i>	fresh	už, již	<i>üsh, yeež</i>	already
doma	<i>dömä</i>	at home			

není *neñi* (colloquially: *nejní, neyñi*), he (she, it) is not
pravda, prävdä true, truth

EXERCISES.

Jsem zde,	I am here.
Zde jsem,	here I am.
Já jsem už zde, I am here already.	
Jsi zde?	art thou here?
Už jsem tu,	I am here already.
Jste už tady?	are you already here?
Už jsme tady,	we are here already.
My jsme už také zde,	we are also here already.
Jsou už zde?	are they already here?

Máme dobrý chleb,	we have good bread.
Je ten chleb dobrý?	is this bread good?

Ano, už jsou tu!	Yes, they are here already.
Teda jsou všichni zde;	well, then they are all here.
Proč jsme zde?	why are we here? (what are we here for?)
Proč vy jste tu?	why are you here?
A proč on tady je?	and why is he present?
Proč jsou ty zde?	why are those here?

Ano, je dobrý;	yes, it is good.
Ale je drahý,	but it is dear.
My máme chleba doma,	we have bread at home.

Je čerstvý? is it fresh?
Ano, ten chleba je čerstvý, yes, that bread is fresh.
Ale proč je tak drahý? but why is it so dear?
Není drahý, it is not dear.
Jest tuze drahý, it is very dear.

Vždyť (dyť) není drahý; but it is not dear.
Ale vždyť není drahý; why, it ain't dear at all.
Je laciný, it is cheap.
Je dost laciný, it is cheap enough.
Je tuze laciný, it is very cheap.

Ten sýr je dobrý, that cheese is good.
Je čerstvý, it is fresh.
To pivo je taky dobré, that beer is also good.
Ano, to je pravda; yes, that is true.
Je čerstvé, it is fresh.
Ale ta soda není dobrá, but this soda-water is not good.
To víno je špatné, that wine is bad.
Proč není to víno také tak dobré? why is that wine not just as good?

My máme dobré víno, we have good wine.
Kde mají dobré pivo? where do they have (keep) good beer?
Zde všude, here everywhere.
Je to pravda? is it true?
Ano, to je pravda; yes, that is true.
Zde všude mají dobré pivo, here they everywhere have good beer.
Ale víno nemají dobré, but their wine is not good (*literally:* but wine they have not good).
Proč nemáte dobré víno? why have you not good wine?

Note 2. It will be observed that the termination of the adjectives **dobrý, drahý** etc. changes according to gender.

The masculine gender terminates in **ý**
 the feminine “ “ “ **á**
 the neutre “ “ “ **é**

dobrý sýr (masc.), *dobree seer*, good cheese;
dobrá voda (fem.), *dobrá vōdā*, good water;
dobré pivo (neut.), *dobré (eh) pivō*, good beer.

The feminine and neutre will always be indicated by placing á, é after the masculine adjective, as above.

In common conversation, however, the masculine termination is also used in the neutre gender: **dobrý pivo**; so that practically we hear only the two terminations ý and á: **dobrý, dobrá**.

Note 3. In ordinary speech the final ý of all adjectives in the masculine gender is pronounced *ey* (as in *they*), and such is in fact the prevalent custom in relation to the long letter ý, no matter where it occurs, as stated in the "Rules of Pronunciation". Hence we hear *dobrey*, *drăhey* in the masculine gender, instead of *dobree*, *drăhee*. This is the general colloquial usage, by no means confined to the uneducated classes. It has sprung up quite naturally because the sound of *ey* is not only easier, but also more euphonious than the sound of *ee*, in most such cases. Listening to the common conversation of Bohemians, the beginner will almost constantly hear the long ý pronounced *ey*.

LESSON VII.

Rád	<i>rád</i>	glad	nemíti rád <i>nemeeti rád</i> , (<i>nemeet rád</i>), to dislike
nerad	<i>nerád</i>	sorry	býti rád <i>beeti rád</i> , (<i>beet rád</i>), to be glad
rádi	<i>rádi</i>	{ (the same	býti nerad <i>beeti nerád</i> (<i>beet nerád</i>),
neradi	<i>neradi</i>	{ in plural)	to be sorry
míti rád	<i>meetí rád</i> (<i>meet rád</i>)		
		to like	
vždyť	<i>vždit</i>	{ but, well, yet	veliký, á, é <i>velikee</i> } large,
dýť (colloquial)	<i>dýť</i>		velký <i>velkee</i> } great, big
tak	<i>ták</i>	so, such	malý, á, é <i>mälee</i> small, little
také tak	<i>také</i>	{ just so,	dlouhý, á, é <i>dloúhee</i> long
taky tak	<i>tak</i>	{ just as	krátký, á, é <i>krátkee</i> short
všude	<i>fshudě</i>	{ every-	pravý, á, é <i>prävee</i> right, genuine
všade	<i>fshadě</i>		falešný, á, e <i>fäleshnee</i> false
všudy	<i>fshude</i>	where	plný, á, é <i>pl-nee</i> full
			prázny, á, é <i>práznee</i> empty

i	<i>e</i>	oh, well	nebo	<i>něbō</i>	or
že	<i>žě</i>	that	jako	<i>yěkō</i>	as, like
že je	<i>žě yě</i>	that he (she, it) is	skoro	<i>skorō</i>	almost
zase	<i>ză-sě</i>		tomu	<i>tōmū</i>	of it
zas	<i>zăss</i>	{ again	žádné	<i>žádné</i>	none
opět	<i>op-yet</i>		dlužen	<i>dloožen</i>	indebted

EXERCISES.

Já jsem rád, I am glad.
To sem rád! I am so glad.
Tuze rád! very glad!
Jsme tomu rádi, we are glad of it.
Tuze jsme tomu rádi, we are very glad of it.
Oni jsou tomu moc rádi, they are very glad of it.
Jsi rád nebo ne? art thou glad or not?
Jste tomu rádi? are you glad of it?
Máte to rád? (speaking to *one* person) do you like it?
Nemám to rád, I do not like it.
Nic to nemámi rád, I do not like it at all.
Nemaji to rádi. **Oni to nemají rádi.** They do not like it.
Jsem rád že mám peníze; I am glad (that) I have money.
Ten dollar je falešný; that dollar is false.
Není, je pravý; no, it is genuine.
Já mám vždycky dobré peníze, I have always good money.

Máte vůz plný? have you a full wagon (is your wagon full)?
Vůz není plný, the wagon is not full.
On je skoro prázdný, it is almost empty.
On je rád že má prázdný vůz; he is glad that he has an empty wagon.
Já mám dluh, I have a debt.
Mám jen malý dluh, I have only a small debt.
Ale ty máš (vy máte) velký dluh; but thou hast (you have) a big debt.
Mám také tak velký dluh jako vy; I have just as large a debt as you.
Vždyť máte peníze! but you have money!
I nemám žádné; oh, I have none (well, I have none).
On je všude dlužen, he is indebted everywhere (he owes everybody).
Už zase máme peníze, again we have (some) money.
Ale vy zas už nemáte peníze, but you again have no money.
Já jsem tuze rád, že mám peníze! I am very glad that I have money!

On je tuze nerad, že je dlužen; he is very sorry, that he is in debt.
Proč je dlužen? why is he in debt?
Proto že nemá peníze, because he has no money.

Vždyť (dyť) on nemá skoro žádný dluh; well, he has almost no debt (is almost out of debt).

To je pravda, that is true.
On není dlužen, he is not in debt.
Mám velký dluh, nebo malý? have I a large debt or a small one?

Tu jest účet, here is the bill.
To není dlouhý účet, that is not a long bill.

Je jenom krátký, it is only short.
Ano, velmi krátký; yes, very short.
Máte jen tak malý účet? have you only such a small bill?

Nemám rád velký účet, I do not like to have a large account.

Je velký dost, it is large enough.

Nemám mnoho, I have not much.

To je nic, that is nothing.

To je jako nic, that is like nothing.

To že je nic? this you call nothing (literally: that this is nothing)?

Oni jsou rádi, že tam není žádný dluh; they are glad, that there is not any debt there.

I je tam dluh, ale malý; well, there is a debt there, but a small one.

Pravda, jenom malý; true, only a small one.

Ano, tak to je; yes, it is so.

Ne, tak to není; no, it is not so,

Účet je právý the bill is right.

Ten účet není právý, that bill is not right.

Je falešný, it is false.

A proč? and why?

Proto že je! because it is!

LESSON VIII.

Nejsem *neysem* I am not
není *neynī* he (she, it) is not
nejsi *neysi* thou are not

nejsme *neysmě* we are not
nejste *neystě* you are not
nejsou *neysou* they are not

Note. Always pronounce *ney*, in the pronouncing column, like the English word *neigh*.

sám (masc.) *sám* }
sama (fem.) *sāmā* }
samo (neut.) *sāmō* }
samoten (tna, tno) } alone; him-
 self, herself
 itself,

dnes *dness* to-day
právě *práv'yě* just;
zrovna *zrōrnā* this moment

otec	otěts	father	strýc	streets, streyts	uncle
matka	mätkä	mother	teta	tětä	aunt
bratr	brä-tr	brother	hoch	hökh	boy
sestra	sest-rä	sister	chlapec	khlapets	
syn	syn	son	holka	hölkä	girl
deera	tsérä	daughter	děvče, n.	čechě	
	docela		dotsělă	all, quite	
	pryč		pritch	away, gone	
	i		e	both...and	

EXERCISES.

Nejsem rád, I am not glad.

Nejsem tomu rád, I do not like it.

Nejsi rád? art thou not glad?

Nejste rád? (addressing *one* person;)

nejste rádi? addressing *more than one* person;) are you not glad?

Jsem sám, I am alone?

Docela sám? all alone?

Ano, docela samoten; yes, all alone.

Není otec doma? is father not at home?

Ne, on není doma; no, he is not at home.

Není žádný doma? is nobody at home?

Matka ani bratr, ani sestra nejsou doma; neither mother, nor brother or sister are at home.

Kde jsou? where are they?

Pryč; gone.

Všichni jsou pryč? are they all gone?

Ano, všichni; yes, all of them.

Je strýc doma? is uncle at home?

Nebo teta? or aunt?

Jsou taky pryč; they are gone, too.

Ten hoch je tu sám; the boy (this, that boy) is here alone.

Ta holka je pryč; the girl (that girl) is gone.

To děvče je doma samotno, that girl is at home alone.

Proč tu není bratr? why is the brother (her brother) not here?

On není doma, on je pryč; he is not at home, he is gone.

Deera není zde docela samotna, the daughter is not here all alone

Matka je zde také; the mother (her mother) is here, too.

Je někdo doma? is somebody at home?

Není; no.

Dnes jsou všichni pryč, to-day they are all gone.

A kde jsou? and where are they?
Někde pryč, somewhere away.
Právě jsem tu sama (fem.); I am
 here just alone.

Proč jste tu samotna? (fem.) why
 are you here alone?
Protože otec i matka jsou pryč, be-
 cause both father and mother are
 gone.

LESSON IX.

Byl jsem <i>bill sěm</i>	I have	byli jsme <i>billy smě</i>	we have
(byla, f. <i>billă</i> “)	{ been;	(byly, f. <i>billy</i> “)	{ been;
bylo, n.) <i>billō</i> “	{ I was	byla, n.) <i>billy</i> “	{ we were
byl jsi <i>bill s</i>	thou hast		
(abbr.) byl's, m. <i>bills</i>	{ been;		
“ byla's, f. <i>billăs</i>	{ thou wast		
	{ he (she, it)		
byl (a, o) <i>bill (ă, ǒ)</i>	{ has been;	byli jste <i>billy stě</i>	{ you have been;
	{ he (she, it)		{ you were
	was	byli (y, a) <i>billy(y, ă)</i>	{ they have been;
			{ they were

Nebyl jsem <i>ně-bill sěm</i>	I have not	Nebyli jsme <i>ně billy smě</i>	we have not
	{ been;		{ been;
	I was not		{ we were not
etc.			

Kde jsem byl? <i>gdě sěm bill</i>	where have I	Kde jsme byli? <i>gdě smě billy?</i>	where have we
	{ been?		{ been?
	where was I?		{ where were we?
etc.			

Míti, to have: **mám,** I have:

měl jsem,	<i>m'yell sěm,</i>	I have had; I had;
měla jsem,	<i>m'yellă sěm,</i>	
měli jsme,	<i>m'yelli smě,</i>	we have had; we had;
and so forth, using měl, měli in place of byl, byli,		

Note 1. There is in Bohemian no such formal difference between the perfect and imperfect tense as in English: *I have been; I was.*

Note 2. There is a distinction of gender in the past tense, which does not exist in English. **I have been, I was,** is used in all cases. In Bohemian however, when a man speaks, he says: **byl jsem, bill sěm;** when a woman speaks, she says: **byla jsem, billa sěm.** And this rule covers every verb in the language. For instance, a man says:

jedl jsem,	<i>yěd'l sěm,</i>	I ate; I have eaten;
sedl jsem,	<i>sěd'l sěm,</i>	I sat down; I have sat down;
šel jsem,	<i>shell sem,</i>	I went; I have gone;
šil jsem,	<i>shill sem,</i>	I sewed; I have sewn;
viděl jsem,	<i>vid'el sem,</i>	I saw; I have seen.

A woman says:

jedla jsem,	<i>yědlá sěm;</i>	šla jsem,	<i>shlá sem;</i>
sedla jsem,	<i>sědlá sem;</i>	šila jsem,	<i>shillá sem;</i>
	viděla jsem,		<i>vid'elá sem;</i>

In the third person of the past tense we say in English:

he was, he has been; she was, she has been; it was it has been;

In Bohemian we must say: **on byl, ona byla, ono bylo,** according to gender. This rule holds good in the conjugation of every verb.

For instance:

Jedl, <i>yed'l,</i> he has eaten; he ate;	šel, <i>shell,</i> he has gone; he went;
jadla, <i>yedlá,</i> she has eaten; she ate;	šla, <i>shlá,</i> she has gone; she went.
jadlo, <i>yedlō,</i> it has eaten; it ate;	šlo, <i>shlō,</i> it has gone; it went.

In the *plural* number the distinction of sex is simply grammatical and perfectly useless; in the ordinary spoken language there is none whatever. In grammatical theory

byli jsme,	byli jste,	byli,	is masculine;
byly jsme,	byly jste,	byly,	is feminine;
byla jsme,	byla jste,	byla,	is neutre.

But in the living tongue, or at least in ordinary conversation, we hear in all three genders:

byli jsme, billi smě; **byli jste, billi stě;** **byli, billi.**

There is no difference of pronunciation between **byli** and **byly**; and this orthographical distinction as well as the form **byla** in the third person neutre are only maintained by the pedantry of theoretical grammarians, opposing changes which a living tongue has actually undergone and which always tend in the direction of practical simplicity. That artificial and useless distinction of gender is found in writing, but not in conversation.

Note 3. The form of the second person plural as given above (**byli jste, billi stě**) is of course used when several persons are meant or spoken to; but when employing **vy, you**, in addressing a single person, we leave the main verb in the singular, whereas in English it is put in the plural, as if several persons were addressed: **byl jste, bill stě**, you have been, you were, (meaning only one person). And so in all Bohemian verbs; for instance:

jedli jste, yed'li stě, you have eaten, you ate, (meaning several persons);
jedl jste, yed'l stě, you have eaten, you ate, (meaning one person, addressed **vy, you**).

Ráno	<i>ránō</i>	in the morning	včera	<i>fcherā.</i>	yesterday
v poledne	<i>fpōledně</i>	at noon	včera večer,	<i>fcherā věčer,</i>	last evening; last night
večer	<i>věcher</i>	in the evening	zima	<i>zimă</i>	cold
venku	<i>venkū</i>	outside, out of doors	oba	<i>obā</i>	both

EXERCISES.

Byl jsem doma, I was at home.
Byl jsem stále doma, I have been
at home all the time.

Byl jsi doma? (abbreviated: **byl's doma?**) hast thou been at home?
wast thou at home?

Ne, nebyl jsem doma; no, I was not at home.

Ale bratr byl doma, but brother was at home:

Kde jsi byl? (abbreviated: **kde's byl,** *gděs bil?* where hast thou been? where wast thou?

Kde jste byl? Kde jste byla? (fem.) (when addressing one person) where have you been? where were you?

Byl jsem pryč, I was away.

Byla jsem pryč, (fem.) I was away.

Byli jsme právě pryč, we were just gone.

Byli jsme všichni pryč, we were all gone; we have all been away.

Kde byl otec? where was father?

Byl venku, he was out of doors.

A matka? and mother?

Matka byla také pryč, mother also was gone.

Oba byli pryč, they were both gone.

Zádný nebyl doma, nobody was at home (*literally:* nobody was not at home.)

Všichni byli pryč, all were gone.

Ráno byli jsme doma a v poledne pryč; in the morning we were at home and at noon we were gone.

Byli jste večer doma? (addressing one person: **byl jste večer doma?**) Were you at home in the evening?

Nebyli jsme doma, we were not at home.

Nebyl jsem doma, I was not at home.

Proč jsi nebyl doma? why wast thou not at home?

Proč jste nebyl doma? why were you not at home?

Kdo byl doma? who was at home?

Bratr a sestra byli oba doma, brother and sister were both at home.

Proč nebyli venku? why were they not out of doors?

Protože bylo zima, because it was cold.

Nebylo zima včera večer, it was not cold last evening.

Že nebylo? wasn't it?

Ba bylo! oh yes, it was!

Včera bylo zima, yesterday it was cold.

Nebylo tuze, it was not very.

LESSON X.

It will doubtless be self-evident to the student, that the past tense in the preceding lesson may at pleasure be connected with the personal pronoun, as is the rule in English.

(Instead of:)

byl jsem,	I have been	já jsem byl,	yá sěm bil
byl jsi,	thou hast been	ty jsi byl,	ty si bill
byl, a, o,	he (she, it) has been	(abbrev. ty's byl, tyss bill)	on (ona, ono) byl, a, o, őn bill
byli jsme,	we have been	my jsme byli,	me smě billy
byli jste,	you have been	vy jste byli,	vee stě billy
byli, y, a,	he (she, it) has been	oni byli,	őñi billy

The sense is not changed thereby, only more emphasis is laid on the subject.

Then again, in the *first* person of the second form, both singular and plural, 'the auxiliary **jsem**, **jsme** is commonly left out.

(Instead of:)

(we can say:)

já jsem byl,	yá sěm bill	já byl,	I have been; I was;
my jsme byli,	me smě billy	my byli,	we have been; we were;
já jsem měl,	yá sěm m'yell	já měl,	I have had; I had;
my jsme měli,	me smě m'yelli	myměli,	we have had; we had;
já jsem šel,	yá sěm shell	já šel,	I have gone; I went;
my jsme šli,	me smě shli	my šli,	we have gone; we went;

u mě	úm'yě	by me,	with me,	at my house (or place)
u tebe	útěbe	by thee,	with thee,	at thy house
u něho	úñeho	} by him,	with him,	at his house
u něj	úñey		with him,	
u ní	úñee	by her,	with her,	at her house
u nás	únáss	by us,	with us,	at our house
u vás	úváss	by you,	with you,	at your house
u nich	úñikh	by them,	with them,	at their house
rodiče	rodíchě	parents	celý den	tsělee den
domu	dōmū	home	až	ásh
nic než	ñits něsh	nothing but	pak	pák

EXERCISES.

Já byl doma, I was at home.
Byl jsem doma celý den, I was at home all day.

Byl jsem pořád doma, I have been at home all the time.

Byl otec doma? was father at home?

Ano, byl; yes, he was.

A kdy byl doma? and when was he at home?

Skoro celý den, nearly all day.

Já šel domu ráno, I went home in the morning.

Kdy sestra šla domu? when did sister go home?

Ona šla domu večer, she went home in the evening.

Nešla domu až večer, she didn't go home till evening.

Byl strýc doma? was uncle at home?

Nebyl; he was not.

Byl's u něho? wast thou at his house?

Byl jste u něho? were you at his house?

Ano, byl jsem tam; yes, I was there.

Sestra byla zde, sister was here.

Byla u mě, she was at my house

Byla také u vás? was she also at your house?

Byla tam v poledne, she was there at noon.

Teta u nás nebyla, aunt was not at our house.

Ale její hoch tam byl, but her boy was there.

My byli včera u ní, we were at her house yesterday.

Rodiče byli včera ráno doma, our parents were at home yesterday morning.

Pak šli pryč, then they went away.

A my jsme šli taky pryč, and we went away, too.

Byl někdo u nich? was anybody at their house?

Žádný u nich nebyl, nobody was at their house.

V poledne někdo tam byl, ale šel pryč; at noon somebody was there, but went away.

Já měl dnes maso a pivo, I had today meat and beer.

Sestra měla maso a chleba, sister had meat and bread.

Ten malý hoch neměl nic, that little boy had nothing.

Proč neměl nic? why did we have nothing?

Neměli jsme nic pro něho, we had nothing for him.

Byl zde ten chlapec? was that boy here?

Byl tu, he was here.
 Co měl? what did he have?
 Nic neměl; he had nothing
 Byl zde pořád? has he been here all
 the time?
 Ane, byl tu stále; yes, he has been
 here all the time.
 Kdy šel pryč? when did he go away?
 Šel večer, he went in the evening.
 Šel sám? did he go alone?

Decela sám, all alone.
 Měli jste dnes víno? have you had
 wine to-day?
 Ne, my jsme měli pivo; no, we had
 beer.
 A co oni měli? and what did they
 have?
 Také pivo; beer, also.
 My neměli nic, we had nothing.
 Ale praní? not a thing!

LESSON XI.

Budu	<i>būdū</i>	<i>būdem</i>	<i>būdemě</i>	we shall be
			<i>būdem</i>	we will be
budeš	<i>būdesh</i> ,	thou will be	<i>būdětē</i>	you will be
bude	<i>būdě</i> he (she, it) will be		<i>būdoū</i>	they will be
		„nebudu <i>něbūdū</i> , I shall (will) not be; etc.		

neb	<i>neb</i>	or	snad	<i>snăd</i>	perhaps
nebo	<i>něbō</i>		setvá	<i>sōtvă</i>	hardly
brzo	<i>br-zō</i>	soon	zítra	<i>zeetra</i>	
brzy	<i>br-ze</i>		zejtra	<i>zeytră</i>	to-morrow
hned	<i>hned</i>	presently, right away	letos	<i>letōs</i>	this year
až	<i>ăsh</i>	when	dobře	<i>dobrshě</i>	well, right, it is
když	<i>gdiž</i>				well, all right.

dělati	<i>dělă-ti</i>	to do	prodávati	<i>prodávă-ti</i>	to sell; to be
platiti	<i>plăti-ti</i>	to pay			selling;
kupovati	<i>kăpovă-ti</i>	to buy; to be	ehtiti	<i>khăeet-ti</i>	to want.
		buying;			

Note 1. English verbs in the infinitive have various endings; *to do, to pay, to sell, to speak, to converse, to understand*, etc.

Bohemian verbs invariably end in **ti**. However, in ordinary discourse the final **i** is nearly always dropped, and very often it is also omitted in spelling; the preceding **t** in such cases should indeed be written and pronounced **t̄**; but it generally retains its common *hard* sound:

dělat	dělat	to do	kulovat	kúpovat	to buy
platit	platit	to pay	prodávat	prolávát	to sell
chtít			khťeet		
					to want.

Note 2. *Budu, budeš, etc.*, connected as an auxiliary with the infinitive of another verb forms the future tense of this verb:

budu dělati	}	I shall (will) do	bude kupovat	he will buy
“ dělat			budeme prodávat	wé shall (will) buy
budeš platit		thou wilt pay	budete chtít	you will want
			budou chtiti	they will want.

Zde jsem, here I am.
Už jste tu? are you here already?
Je zde taky bratr? is brother also here?

Není, ale bude tu hned; he is not, but he will be here presently.

To bude dobré, that will be all right.

Kdy zde bude otec? when will father be here?

Dnes sotva, hardly to-day.

Snad zejtra, perhaps to-morrow.

Máte čerstvé* máslo? have you fresh butter?

Dnes nemáme, to-day we have not.

Proč tu bude? why will he be here?
Kupovat obilí a seno, to buy grain and hay.

Budete mít letos víno? will you have wine this year?

Nebudeme mít žádné víno, we shall have no wine.

Co budou u vás prodávat? what will they sell at your place?

Nebudou nic prodávat, they will sell nothing.

Nemáme žádné, we have none.

Ale budeme mít zejtra, but wé shall have (some) to-morrow.

*) See lesson VI, note 2.

Co budete dělat dnes večer? what
will you do this evening?

Nebudu nic dělat, I shall do nothing.
A proč? and why?

Nemám co dělat, I have nothing
to do.

Až bude zase práce, budu dělat;
when there will be work again, I
shall work.

LESSON XII.

Míti	<i>meet'i</i>	{	to have	chtíti	<i>khteeet'i</i>	{	to want
mít¹⁾	<i>meet</i>			chtít¹⁾	<i>khteeet</i>		
chci	<i>khtsi</i>		I want	chceme	<i>khts̄emē</i>		we want
chceš	<i>khts̄esh</i>		thou wantst	chcete	<i>khts̄etē</i>		you want
chce	<i>khts̄e</i>		he wants	chtějí	<i>kht̄e-yee</i>		they want
chtěl jsem²⁾	<i>kht̄el s̄em</i>		I wanted	chtěli jsme	<i>kht̄eli sm̄e</i>		we wanted
budu chtíti³⁾	<i>būdū khteeeti</i>	{					I shall (will) want
“ chtít	“ <i>khteeet</i>						
budeme chtíti	<i>būděmē khteeeti</i>	{					we shall (will) want
“ chtít	“ <i>khteeet</i>						

Note 1. Irregular verbs in the Bohemian language are far less numerous than in English. There is not a full dozen of them, whereas in English we find nearly two hundred. On the other hand, regular verbs have only one conjugation in English, whereas in Bohemian there are several conjugations, as we shall see in due time.

Chtíti and **míti** are irregular verbs.

1) See Lesson XI. Note 1.

2) See Lesson IX. **Chtěl** simply takes the place of **byl**.

3) See Lesson XI. Note 2.

Od	<i>ođ</i>	since, from	nůž	<i>noož</i>	knife
pro	<i>prō</i>	for	vidlička	<i>vidlichkă</i>	fork
více	<i>veetsē</i>	more	jídlo	<i>yeedlō</i>	{ something to eat; victuals; meal
ještě	<i>yesh-tē</i>	{ still, more, another	jíst (jísti)	<i>yeest</i>	to eat
trochu	<i>trokhū</i>	some, somewhat	krájet (i)	<i>kráyet</i>	to cut
spolu	<i>spolū</i>	together	mluvit (i)	<i>mlūvit</i>	to speak
dlouhō	<i>dloūhō</i>	long	dát (i)	<i>dát</i>	to give
už dávno	<i>ušh dávnō</i>	{ already long (a long time already)	dejte mi	<i>deytē me</i>	give me
na prodej	<i>nă prodey</i>	for sale	kůň	<i>kūñ</i>	horse
nový, á, é, nővee		new	koně*)	<i>koñe</i>	{ of the horse; for the “
starý, á, é, stăree		old	aui	<i>ăñi</i>	{ not one; not even; neither
dříví,	<i>drshee-ree</i>	wood	asi	<i>ăssi</i>	about, probably
stavivo	<i>stărivō</i>	lumber	se, s	<i>sĕ</i>	with
míti hlad	<i>meet̄i hlad</i>	to be hungry	opravdu	<i>oprăvdū</i>	truly, really
			muž	<i>moož</i>	man

EXERCISES.

Máte peníze? have you money?
Mám asi dollar, I have about a dollar.

Nic více? nothing more?

Ani cent, not a cent.

Co s dollarem? what (can you do with a dollar?

Aha, zde je ještě půl dollaru; ah, here is half a dollar more.

Bude to dost? will that be enough?

Sotva, hardly.

Ani to nebude dost, even that will not be enough.

Já mám hlad (literally: *I have hunger*), I am hungry.

Chci něco jíst, I want something to eat.

Máte nějaké jídlo? have you something to eat?

Tu máte maso, here you have (some) meat.

Dejte mi nůž, give me a knife.

Zde máte nůž a tu je vidlička; here you have a knife and here is a fork.

Nožem můžete dobře krájet, with the knife you can cut well.

Tu je kůň a vůz, here is a horse and a wagon.

Vy máte zde koně; you have a horse here.

*) The plural of the noun **kůň** is also **koně**, *koñe* (the horses).

Ano, jsem tu s koněm; yes, I am here with the horse.

To je dobrý kůň, that is a good horse.

Tuze dobrý; a také není na prodej; very good; and he is not for sale.

Máte nový vůz? have you a new wagon?

Ne; to je starý vůz; o no; that is an old wagon.

Ale jako nový; but (it looks) like a new one.

Opravdu? really?

Co máte na voze (ve voze)? what have you got in the wagon?

Dříví, wood.
Stavivo, lumber.

Trochu obilí je tam, some grain is in there.

Budete něco kupovati? will you buy something (will you make some purchases?)

Koně pro syna a vůz pro strýce, a horse for my son and a wagon for my uncle.

Checi dátí synovi dobrý potah, I want to give my son a good team.

Chtěl jsem to už dávno; I wanted (to do) it long ago.

On je zde se strýcem, he is here with uncle.

Jsou tu spolu, they are here together.

Jak dlouho jsou tu? how long are they here?

Od večera, since evening.

A jak dávno vy jste tu? and how long are you here?

Od poledne, since noon.

Tam ten muž má koně na prodej, that man there has a horse to sell.

Checete vidět toho (třího) muže? do you want to see that man.

Chei mluvit s tím (střím) mužem; I want to speak with that man.

Je na koni, he is on horseback.

Dobře že je tu s tím koněm; it is well he is here with that horse.

Je to velký kůň; it is a big horse.

Note 2. In the English language the noun remains nearly unchanged in all its relations, there being only a slight change in the genitive or possessive case: *brother*, *brother's*, (of the brother); but this form of the possessive case is being more and more limited. The relations of one person or thing to another are expressed by separate words, called prepositions: *of a brother*; *to a brother*; *with a brother*.

In Bohemian these relations are expressed by changes in the termination of the noun, which process is called declension: **bratr**, *brother*; **-bratra**, *of a brother*; **bratu**, *to a brother*; **bratrem**, *with a brother*.

This is a heavy encumbrance which the Bohemian language shares with the German and Latin. The declension of the nouns is followed by that of the adjectives joined to the nouns, which are subject to corresponding changes in their terminations. Pronouns also have declensions, and these continue to exist even in the English tongue.

Note 3. The declension of Bohemian nouns varies according to their gender and the termination of their nominative; there is, besides, a slight variation between animate and inanimate nouns of the masculine gender.

The following table will bring before the student's eyes the different changes of the termination of Bohemian masculine nouns, in the singular, omitting the vocative case. A glance over the same now and then may assist him to become more rapidly familiar with the different endings and their signification in English; but only frequent use in common sentences during the further progress of these lessons will make them handy to him.

Inanimate nouns:

Dollar, **vůz** *dolář*, *rooz* the dollar, the wagon;
dollaru, **vozu** *dolářů*, *vőzů* of the dollar, the dollar's; of the wagon, the wagon's; (**v dollaru**, in the dollar; **ve voze**, in the wagon; etc.)
dollarem, **vozem** *dolárem*, *vőzem* (or **s dollarem**, **s vozem**), with the dollar, with the wagon.

Animate nouns:

Syn, **muž** *syn*, *moož* the son, the man;
syna, **muže** *synā*, *moožč* { of the son; the son's: of the man, the man's; also in the *accusative*:
synu, **muži** *synū*, *mooži* { to the son, to the man; (**v synu**, **v**
—ovi, **—ovi** *synōvi*, *moožōvi* { **synovi**, in the son; etc.)
synem, **mužem** *synem*, *moožem* (or **se synem**, **s mužem**), with the son, with the man.

Note 4. It will be observed that the letter **ů** in the nominative case of a monosyllable changes into **o** in the inflected cases:

vůz,	the wagon;	vozu, -e	of the wagon;
kůň,	the horse;	koně,	of the horse;
nůž,	the knife;	nøže,	of the knife;

Něž and similar nouns (masculine inanimate and ending in a soft consonant) are declined just like **muž**; only in the dative and locative case we cannot use the long form like **mužovi**, **v mužovi** (to the man, in the man), but must always employ only the short form: **noži**, **v noži**, **nøži**, **v noži** (to the knife, in the knife); and the accusative agrees with the nominative: **nůž**—**nůž**.

Note 5. Prepositions consisting of a single consonant (**v**, **s**, **k**, simply abbreviations of **ve**, **se**, **ke**, — in, with, to) are always joined in pronunciation to the succeeding syllable; hence we write: **v synu**, **s koněm**; and pronounce *vsynu* (or *fsinu*), *skoněm*; in the son, with the horse.

It may hardly be necessary to mention that the locative case does not always appear with the preposition **v** or **ve**, but employs also different other prepositions. For instance: **ve voze**, in the wagon; **na voze**, on the wagon; **o voze**, about the wagon.

LESSON XIII.

Museti <i>müset'i*</i>	must, to have to	jíti	<i>yeetli</i>	} to go, to come,
musiti <i>müsiti</i>			<i>yeet</i>	
musím <i>müseem</i>	I must	jdu	<i>dü</i>	I go
musíš <i>müseesh</i>	thou must	jdeš	<i>dësh</i>	thou goest
musí <i>müsee</i>	he must	jde	<i>dë</i>	he goes
musíme <i>müseemë</i>	we must	jdemë	<i>dëmë</i>	we go
musíte <i>müseetë</i>	you must	jdetë	<i>dëtë</i>	you go
musí <i>müsee</i>	they must	jdou	<i>döü</i>	they go
musejí <i>müsë-yee</i>				

(* The letter **s** has the same sharp sound as in *must*.

muset platit	to have to pay	šel	<i>shell</i>	he has gone;
budu muset <i>būdū mūset</i> , I shall	have to; I shall			he went
	be obliged.			
musel jsem <i>mūsell sěm</i>	I was ob-	půjdu	<i>pūydā</i>	(colloquially
	liged			<i>pūdū</i> , I shall go
musel <i>mūsell</i>	he was obliged	půjdeš, půjde, půjdeme, půjdete,		
muset	to have to go, to be	půjdou; pūydesh, pūyde, pūy-		
	obliged to go	pūydemě, pūydětě, pūydoū; collo-		
šel jsem <i>shell sěm</i>	I have gone;	quially: pūdesh, pūdě, pūděmě,		
	I went	pūdětě, pūdoū);		
		jdi	đi	go (thou)
		jděte	đetě	go (you)

Note 1. All Bohemian verbs in the infinitive (as stated in Lesson XI. Note 1) end in **ti**, which becomes a simple **t** in ordinary discourse: **dělati**, to do, to make; **platiti**, to pay; **kupovati**, to buy, to be buying; **prodávati**, to sell, to be selling; **museti**, must.

Note 2. Leaving out **ti** and putting **I** in its place (**la** for the feminine, **lo** for the neutre gender), we get the past tense of every regular verb, using the auxiliary **jsem**, **jsi** in the first and second person singular, **jsme**, **jste** in the first and second person plural, and changing **I** into **li** in the *plural* (feminine **ly**, neutre **la**, — of no account in ordinary conversation); in the third person singular and plural no auxiliary is used:

dělal	<i>d'elāl</i>	he made;	he has made;
dělali	<i>d'elāli</i>	they made;	they have made;
dělal jsem	<i>d'elāl sem</i>	I made:	I have made;
dělal jsi	<i>d'elāl si</i>	thou madest;	thou hast made;
dělali jsme	<i>d'elāli smě</i>	we made;	we have made;
dělali jste	<i>d'elāli stě</i>	you made;	you have made;
platil	<i>plāt'il</i>	he paid;	he has paid;
kupoval	<i>kūpovāl</i>	he was buying;	he has been buying;
prodával	<i>prodāvāl</i>	he was selling;	he has been selling;
musel	<i>mūsell</i>	he had to;	he was obliged.

Ho	hō	him, it; of it;
ven	ven	out
venku	venkū	out of doors
prý	pree	they say;
(colloq. prej)	prey	it is said
náš, m.	násh	our, ours
naší, f.	náshee	of our
dobře	dobrshē	well; right
tuze	toozē	dobrshē
časně	chássñē	very well
nějaký, á, é, ñeyákee	ñeyákee	early
(colloq. ñákej	ñákey	some
pohromadě	pō-hromádē	together
najednou	náyednoū	at once
dál	dál	in, farther
at	ăt	let him be, let
		her be, let it be
po	pō	after
do	dō	tc, before

žena	žená	woman
služka	slušhkā	servant girl
země, f.	zemyē	land, earth
snídaně, f.	sñeedañē	breakfast
oběd, m.	ob-yēd	dinner
večeře, f.	večerschē	supper
kost, f.	kōst	bone
kus, m.	küss	piece
oděv, m.	od'ef	clothing
oblek, m.	oblēk	suit of clothes
kabát, m.	kabát	coat
kalhoty, pl.	kalhoty	pants
vesta, f.	vestā	vest
klobouk, m.	klobouk	hat
boty, pl.	boty	boots
škoda	shkodă	pity
hotov, a, o,	hotof	ready
ke	kē	to

podívat se	pod'evat se	to look
spáti	spáti, spát	to sleep
státi	státi, stít	to stand
čekati	chekáti, chekáť	to wait
viděti	vid'et, vid'et	to see
dívati se	d'evat sě	to look, to be looking

dělati	d'elati, d'elat	to make
myslím	mysleem	I think
koupiti	koupit	to buy
kupovati	küpovat	to be buying
predati	prödät	to sell
prodávati	prödávät	to be selling

EXERCISES.

Musím jit ven. I must go out.
 Půjdu se podívat ven. I shall go and look out.
 Je někdo venku? Is somebody out of doors?

Kdo je venku? Who is out of doors?
 Nějaká žena je tam. Some woman is there.
 Co chce ta žena? What does that woman want?

Chce viděti dceru. She wants to see (her) daughter.

Je to matka naší služky. It is the mother of our servant girl.

Ať jde dál. Let her come in, **Proč nejde dál?** Why doesn't she come in?

Chce něco jíst? Does she want anything to eat?

Dejte ženě jíst a pít. Give that woman to eat and to drink.

Maso na kosti a pivo. Meat on the bone and beer

Až bude oběd. When dinner is (shall be) ready.

Bude zde spátí? Will she sleep here?

Já myslím, I think so.

Dobře teda. Very well, then,

Musí spátí se služkou. She must sleep with the servant girl.

Chci něco koupit. I want to buy something.

Chci si něco koupit. I want to buy me something.

Co si chcete koupit? What do you want to buy (yourself)?

Myslím že nějaký oděv. I think (that) some clothing.

Už jdu. I am going already.

Jdete taky? Are you going, too?

My taky jdeme. We are going, too.

Oni všichni jdou. They are all going.

Holka má mnoho práce. The girl has much to do.

Bude setva do večera*) hotova. She will hardly be done before evening.

Myslím že bude s prací hotova. I think she will be done with the work.

Po večeři nemusí dělat nic. After supper she need not do anything.

Ať je večeře brzy hotova. Let supper be soon ready.

Bude zde ta ženská ke snídani? Will that woman be here to breakfast?

Myslím že bude. I think (that) she will.

Budeme mítí snídani brzy ráno. We shall have breakfast soon in the morning.

Ano, časně ráno. Yes, early in the morning.

Kabát, kalhoty, vestu, klobouk. A coat, (a pair of) pants, a vest, a hat.

Snad také boty. Perhaps also (a pair of) boots.

Celý oblek. A whole suit.

Pravda, bude dobré koupit oblek. True, it will be well to buy a suit.

Myslím že sestra půjde taky. I think that sister will go, too.

Ano, půjde s tetou. Yes, she will go with auntie.

*) **Do večera**, instead of **do večeru**. — **Večer** has the same endings in the singular as the animate noun **syn**, excepting **-ovi** in the dative and locative.

Půjdeme všichni pohromadě. We will all go together.

Jdi se podívat zdali jsou hotové. Go (thou and see if they are ready.

My zde nebudeme stát a čekat. We shall not stand here and wait.

Jděte se tam zase podívat. Go (you) there and see again.

Už jdou; tu jsou. They are coming already; here they are.

Půjdou všichni uajednou. They will all go together.

Ten dům chci prodat. That house I want to sell.

A proč to? And why?

Je malý; musím ho prodat. It is small, I must sell it.

Myslím že je trochu malý. I think it is somewhat small.

Ten starý dům byl dost velký. The old house was large enough.

Škoda že museli sme ho prodat. It is a pity we had to sell it.

Náš nový dům nebude na prodej. Our new house will not be for sale.

Není dobré prodávat nový dům. It is not well to sell (to be selling) a new house.

Budeme mít u domu kus země. We shall have by (our) house a piece of land.

Note 3. The changes of endings of feminine nouns, excepting the vocative case, are shown in the following exhibit:

1. **Žena** *ženă* the woman;
ženy *ženy,* of the woman;
ženu *ženū* the woman, (accusative);
ženě *ženē* to the woman, (*v ženě*, in the woman, etc.);
ženou *ženou,* (or *se ženou*) with the woman.
2. **Země** *zemyě* the earth, of the earth;
zemi *zemi* to the earth, (*v zemi*, in the earth, etc.);
zemí *zemee* (or *se zemí*) with the earth;
3. **Kost'** *kost'* the bone;
kosti *kost'i* of the bone, to the bone, (*v kosti* *skost'i*, in the bone, etc.);
kostí *kost'ee* (or *s kostí* *skost'ee*) with the bone.

Nouns ending in **e** (like **růže** *roože*, the rose) agree with **země**.

Nouns ending in **ka** change the hard consonant **k** into **c ts**, when the final **a** changes into **e** :

matka, služka, mătkă, slušhka, the mother, the servant girl.

matce, služce, *mätsë, slüshtsë*, to the mother, to the servant girl.

Nouns ending in **st**, like **kost**, are **ALWAYS** of the feminine gender.

Note 4. The verb **jíti** is irregular. Its future tense is formed by the prefix **pü**, and not by the auxiliary **budu**. The formation of the future by means of prefixes occurs quite often, as will be seen hereafter.

Note 5. The verbs **prodávati**, **kupovati** (to be selling, to be buying) are in fact reiterative forms of **prodati** (to sell, to make a sale) and **koupiti** (to buy, to make a purchase).

Common indefinite verbs, denoting a continuous action, may, as a rule, be changed into REITERATIVES, denoting a repeated action, by inserting **va** before the final syllable **ti** (or the final **t**) and lengthening the preceding vowel, if it be short. For instance:

dělati, to make; **dělávati**, *d'elávati* or *d'elávăt*, to use to make,
to be in the habit of making.

platiti, to pay;	platívatı, <i>plăt'eevăt</i> , to use to pay;
spáti, to sleep;	spávati, <i>spávăt</i> , to use to sleep;
jísti, to eat;	jídávati, <i>yeedávăt</i> , to use to eat; (irregular verb).

Note 6. In English, verbs are sometimes formed by prefixes joined to other verbs, to vary their signification; for instance:

to deck, — to bedeck | to judge — to prejudge | to sell — to undersell
to grow — to outgrow | to stand — to withstand | to turn — to overturn.

The same rule finds application in Bohemian in a much higher degree. Prefixes may be joined to most of the verbs in order to modify or change their meaning; and it is astonishing how many new verbs are sometimes derived from the original verb by that process. As an example, let us take the verb **jíti**, to go:

dojiti,	<i>dō-yet'i</i> ,	to go (get, reach) somewhere; to make an errand
najíti,	<i>nă-yet'i</i> ,	to find;
nadejíti,	<i>nădĕ-yet'i</i> ,	to gain, to get ahead, to head off;
obejíti,	<i>obĕ-yet'i</i> ,	to go around;
odejíti,	<i>odĕ-yet'i</i> ,	to go away, to leave;
pojíti,	<i>pō-yet'i</i> ,	to perish, to die;
podejíti,	<i>podĕ-yet'i</i> ,	to deceive, to cheat;
přejíti,	<i>prshĕ-yet'i</i> ,	to pass over, to pass by;
předejíti,	<i>prshĕdĕ-yet'i</i> ,	to come before, to get ahead, to anticipate;
přijíti,	<i>prshı-yet'i</i> ,	to come;
projíti,	<i>pro-yet'i</i> ,	to pass through;
rozejíti se,	<i>rōzĕ-yet'i sĕ</i> ,	to part, to disperse;
ujíti,	<i>ŭ-yet'i</i> ,	to escape;
vejíti,	<i>vĕ-yet'i</i> ,	to go in, to come in;
vyjíti,	<i>vy-yet'i</i> ,	to go out, to come out;
zajíti,	<i>ză-yet'i</i> ,	to go down, to set, to pass behind;
zajíti si,	<i>ză-yet'i si</i> ,	to go out of one's way.

This shows the immense adaptability of the Bohemian verb, and certainly looks somewhat perplexing at first sight; but it is only necessary to fix in one's mind the meaning of a dozen of prefixes, which occur in all such cases, in order to have a key to the whole system. The same is true in English; a knowledge of the signification of the prefixes used in connection with verbs explains the modified meaning. Verbs formed by prefixes are in most cases contained separately in Bohemian dictionaries, the same as in English.

Note 7. An indefinite verb like **jíti**, *to go*, denotes a continuous action. When a new verb is formed by means of a prefix, it is definite, denoting a completed action: **dojiti**, to go (get, reach) somewhere; **najíti**, to find; etc. The present form of these verbs denotes, in fact, a *future* action: **dojdu**, I shall go or get somewhere; **najdu**, I shall find. Hence it is actually the future tense, there being no present, and the

auxiliary **budu** can never be used. Such compound verbs have therefore only a past with the auxiliary **jsem**, and a simple future:

došel jsem , <i>dōshell sem</i> , I went (got, reached) somewhere;	dojdu , <i>doydū</i> I shall go (get, reach) somewhere;
našel jsem , <i>năshell sem</i> , I found;	najdu , <i>năydu</i> I shall find.

LESSON XIV.

stevo , n.	<i>slorō</i>	word	teprv	<i>tep'erf</i>	only, not before
horko , n.	<i>horkō</i>	heat; hot	vedle	<i>vědlē</i>	beside, next to
teplo , n.	<i>tepłō</i>	warmth; warm	nebe , n.	<i>něbě</i>	heaven, sky
chladno , n.	<i>khładnō</i>	cool	slunce , n.	<i>slěntsě</i>	sun
blato , n.	<i>blătō</i>	mud	měsíc , m.	<i>myě-seets</i>	moon, month
město , n.	<i>myěs-tō</i>	city	počasí , n.	<i>pōčhōsee</i>	weather
pšenice , f.	<i>pshě-ñitsě</i>	wheat	znamení , n.	<i>znămeñee</i>	sign
pole , n.	<i>polē</i>	field	dešť , m.	<i>deshť</i>	rain
poupě , n.	<i>poüpýě</i>	bud	stín , m.	<i>stěen</i>	shade, shadow
dítě , n.	<i>đeet'e</i>	child	vítr , m.	<i>ree-t'er</i>	wind
den , m.	<i>den</i>	day	pěkný , á, é, <i>pyěk-nee</i>	nic ^r , fine	
noc , f.	<i>nots</i>	night	jasný , á, é, <i>yăss-nee</i>	clear, bright	
týden , m.	<i>teeden</i>	week	hezky	<i>hessky</i>	nice
odpoledne	<i>đdpoleáně</i>	afternoon	zle	<i>zle</i>	bad, badly
půlnoc , f.	<i>poolnots</i>	midnight	posud	<i>pōsūd</i>	till now, stil
dnes v noci	<i>dness vnotsi</i>	to-night	okolo	<i>đkolō</i>	about
západ slunce	<i>západ slěntsě</i>	sunset	na	<i>nă</i>	on, in
cesta , f.	<i>tsestă</i>	way, road	s tím	<i>stěem</i>	with that
radost	<i>rădost</i>	pleasure	za	<i>ză</i>	behind, beyond
les	<i>less</i>	forest, timber	zase, zas	<i>zăssě, zăss</i>	again
			o	<i>ő</i>	at, on.
vidím	<i>vid'eem</i>	I see	svítiti	<i>sweet'it</i>	to shine
pršeti	<i>p'eršhěti</i>	to rain	svítí	<i>sweet'ee</i>	shines
prší	<i>p'ershee</i>	it rains	už není	<i>úsh neyñee</i>	is no more

choditi	<i>khōd'it</i>	to walk	dej mu	<i>dey mū</i> give (hou) him
chodím	<i>khōd'eeem</i>	I walk	dejte mu	<i>deytē mū</i> give (you) him
chodi	<i>khōd'ee</i>	he (she, it) walks		

Note 1. **Pršeti, pršet,** *p^ershet'i, p^ershet*; to rain; **vítr,** *veet^er*; *e* is silent and placed there simply to elucidate the pronunciation. See Sec 4. Part I.

EXERCISES.

Včera byl špatný den. Yesterday
was a bad day

Dnes je hezky. To-day is nice.

Opravdu, je pěkné počasi. Truly,
it is fine weather.

Myslím že bude tak celý den. I
think it will be so all day.

Bude teplo celý den. It will be
warm all day.

Odpoledne bude horko. In the after-
noon it will be hot.

Rád jsem venku za tepla. I like to
be out when (it is) warm.

V horku nerad jdu do města. In the
heat I do not like to go to town.

Já také ne. Neither do I.

Je nebe jasné? Is the sky clear?

Bylo, ale už není. It was, but is no
more.

Vidím na nebi znamení deště. I see
in the sky a sign of rain.

Ale slunce ještě svítí. But the sun
is still shining.

Po slunce západu bude snad pršet.
After sunset perhaps it will rain.

Je silný vítr. There is a strong wind.

Nebude tak zle s tím horkem. It
won't be so bad with the heat.

Cesta je pěkná. The road is fine.

Není žádné blato. There is no mud.

Včera bylo ještě dost blata. Yester-
day there was still enough mud.

Nerad chodím v blatě. I do not like
to walk in mud.

Náš hoch rád chodí blatem. Our
boy likes to walk through mud.

To snad každé dítě. Perhaps every
child (likes that).

To je radost dítěte. That is a child's
pleasure.

Ano, to dělá radost dítěti. Yes, it
makes pleasure to a child.

Je skoro chladno ve stínu. It is al-
most cool in the shade.

Na slunci je dosud horko. In the
sun it is still hot.

Dnes v noci svítí měsíc. To-night
the moon shines.

Teprv o půlnoci. Only at (i. e. not
before) midnight.

Ano, okolo půlnoci. Yes, about
midnight.

Zde je náš dům. Here is our house.
Vedle domu je stodola. Beside the house there is a barn.

Za stodolou máme pole. Behind the barn we have a field.

Na tom poli je pšenice. On that field there is wheat.

Za tím polem máme kus lesa. Beyond that field we have a piece of timber.

Je to dobrý kus lesa. It is a good piece of timber.

Pak je zase kus pole s obilím. Then there is again a piece of a grain-field, (*literally*: of a field with grain).

Jděte na pole. Go to (on) the field.
Jdi s tím dítětem. Go (thou) with the child.

Dej dítěti poupě z růže. Give (thou) the child a rose bud, (*literally*: a bud from the rose).

Otec je na poli. The father is in the field

Note 2. The following little scheme shows the changes of the endings of *neutrenouns*, which in the nominative always end in **o**, **e**, **ě** or **í**:

slovo,	<i>slōvō</i>	the word;	ve slovu,	<i>vě slōvū</i>	in the word;
slova,	<i>slōvā</i>	of the word;	“ slově,	<i>vě slōvyě</i>	slovu, about the word);
slovu,	<i>slōvū</i>	to the word;	slovem	<i>slōvem</i> , (or se slovem) by or with the word.	

poupě,	<i>poūpyě,</i>	the bud;	poupěti,	<i>poūpyetěi</i> , to the bud; (v poupěti , in the bud, etc)
poupěte,	<i>poūpyetě,</i>	of the bud;	poupětem,	<i>poūpyetěem</i> (or s poupětem) with the bud.

pole,	<i>pōlě</i> , the field;	of the field;	polem,	<i>pōlem</i> , (or s polem) with the field.
poli,	<i>pōli</i> , to the field;	(v poli , in the field; etc.)		

znamení,	<i>znāmeñee</i> , the sign;	of the sign; (v znamení , in the sign; etc.);	znamením,	<i>znāmeñeem</i> (or se znamením), with the sign.
-----------------	-----------------------------	--	------------------	---

LESSON XV.

Jeden	<i>yělen</i>	one	můj, m.	<i>mooy</i>	my, mine
jedna, f.	<i>yědnă</i>	"	moji, pl.	<i>moye</i>	my, mine, pl.
dva	<i>dwă</i>	two	mých, pl.	<i>meekh</i>	of my
dvě, f. & n.	<i>dwyě</i>	"	mým, pl.	<i>meem</i>	to my
tři	<i>trshi</i>	three	mými, pl.	<i>meemi</i>	with my
čtyry	<i>shtiri</i>	four	ty	<i>ty</i>	those
pět	<i>pyět</i>	five	k těm	<i>kṭem</i>	to those
šest	<i>shěst</i>	six	těch	<i>těkh</i>	of those, from
sedm	<i>seděm</i>	seven	z těch	<i>z těkh</i>	those
osm	<i>osěm</i>	eight	v těch	<i>v těkh</i>	in those
devět	<i>dev-yet</i>	nine	od nás	<i>od náss</i>	from us, from
deset	<i>deset</i>	ten			our place
oba, m.	<i>obă</i>	{ both	jaký, á, é, yăkee		what, what kind
obě, f. & n.	<i>obyě</i>		tamlé	<i>tamlě</i>	there, over there
pár	<i>pár</i>	{ some, a few	hned		right away
několik	<i>ňekolik</i>		a sice	<i>ă sitsě</i>	that is, namely
mnoho	<i>mnohō</i>	a good deal	možná	<i>mōžná</i>	perhaps, possibly
mnoholi	<i>mnohō-li</i>	how much	dokonce	<i>dōkontsě</i>	perhaps even
kolik	<i>kōlik</i>	how many	ještě něco?	<i>yeshťe ňetso</i>	anything else?
asi tak	<i>ăsi tăk</i>	about			
tolik	<i>tōlik</i>	so many, so much	nejmíň	<i>neymeeň</i>	at least, least of all
k, ke, ku,	<i>kě, kū</i>	to, unto	mu, jemu,	<i>mū, yěmū,</i>	to him
i	<i>e</i>	oh! well	v, ve,	<i>vě</i>	in
s, se,	<i>sě</i>	with	z, ze	<i>zě</i>	from, of
Mluviti	<i>mlūvit</i>	to speak	utratil	<i>útrăt'íl</i>	spent
mluvil*)	<i>mlūvîl</i>	spoke	prodati	<i>prodăt</i>	to sell
utratiti	<i>útrăt'it</i>	to spend	prodal	<i>prodăl</i>	sold

*) See Lesson XIII. Note 2.

koupiti	<i>koüpít</i>	to buy	hospoda , f. <i>höspodă</i>	saloon, tavern
koupil	<i>koüpil</i>	bought	mouka , f. <i>mučkă</i>	flour
koupím	<i>koüpem</i>	I shall buy	cena , f. <i>tsěnă</i>	price, value
rozuměti	<i>rozümyet</i>	to understand	pödpora , f. <i>pödlporă</i>	support
rozuměl	<i>rozüm' yell</i>	understood	drobné , pl. <i>dröbné</i>	change
rozumím	<i>rozümeem</i>	understand	výběr , m. <i>veeb-yer</i>	choice
jezditi	<i>yezd'it</i>	to drive, to ride	tucet , m. <i>tütset</i>	dozen
jezdil	<i>yezd'il</i>	drove, rode	domu	home
jezdím	<i>yezd'eem</i>	I drive, I ride	na venku	<i>nă venkă</i> in the country
znám	<i>znám</i>	I know, I am acquainted	spokojen	<i>spököyen</i> satisfied
vím to	<i>veem tō</i>	I know it	můžete	<i>mōžetě</i> you can, you may
dělá	<i>d'elá</i>	makes	počítejme	<i>pocheeteymě</i> let us count
člověk , m.	<i>chlö-vyěk</i>	man	sto,	<i>stō</i> a hundred
pán	<i>pán</i>	gentleman	víc, více	<i>veets, veetsě</i> more
farma , f.	<i>farmă</i>	farm	stojí	<i>stōyee.</i> costs

EXERCISES.

Tady jsme zas. Here we are again.
Jaký pěkný den! What a nice day!
Máte ještě peníze? Have you still (some) money?

I ještě něco mám. Well, I have still something.

Mnoho-li asi máte? About how much have you?

Ne mnoho. Not much.

Mám ještě dva dollarů. I have still two dollars.

Já taky mám pár dollarů. I also have a few dollars.

Kolik dollarů? How many dollars?

Asi tak čtyry dollarů. About four dollars.

Žádné drobné? No change?
Mám také pár centů. I have also a few cents.

Utratil jsem mnoho. I have spent a good deal.

Jak mnoho asi? About how much?
Nejmíň pět nebo šest dollarů. At least five or six dollars.

Já také utratil několik dollarů. I also spent a few dollars.

Víc než já? More than I?
Možná asi sedm dollarů. Perhaps about seven dollars.

Nebo dokonce osm. Or perhaps even eight,

K dollarům počítejme čas. To the dollars let us count the time.

Ten má taky cenu v dollarech. It also has a price (value) in dollars.

Ce stojí ten vůz? How much is that wagon? (*literally*: what costs that wagon?)

Sto dollarů. A hundred dollars.

Za sto dollarů můžete koupit dva vozy. For a hundred dollars you can buy two wagons.

Zde je můj syn. Here is my son.

Oba moji synové jsou tu. Both my sons are here.

Ano, myslím že jsou. Yes, I think (that) they are.

Jeden z mých synů právě šel ven.

One of my sons has just gone out.

Dejte mým synům oběd; a sice hned. Give (to) my sons a dinner; I mean right away.

Ano, dáme pánum dobrý oběd. Yes, we shall give to the gentlemen a good dinner.

Koupil jsem mouku. I bought (some) flour.

Checete koupit ještě něco? Do you want to buy anything else?

Půjdu a koupím dva nože. I shall go and buy two knives.

Já půjdu taky a koupím tucet nožů. I shall go, too, and buy a dozen knives.

To dělá mnoho. That makes much.

Devět nebo deset dollarů je pryč.

Nine or ten dollars are gone.

Dost možná. Very likely.

Já rozumím vozům. I understand wagons.

Je velký rozdíl ve vozech. There is a great difference in wagons.

Já jezdím s vozy už dávno. I drive wagons a long time already.

V synech (mých) mám nyní podporu. In my sons I have now a support.

To je dobré. That is well.

Jsem spokojen se syny. I am satisfied with (my) sons.

Jsme všichni na farmě. We are all on the farm.

Synové jsou rádi na farmě. My sons like it on the farm.

Jsme všichni rádi na venku. We all like it in the country.

Ale k nožům také vidličky. But to the knives also forks.

Tamhle mají velký výběr v nožích.

Over there they have a large choice in knives.

Ano, vím to; mají tuze dobré nože. Yes, I know it: they have very good knives.

Máte pravdu. You are right (*literally*: you have right).

Tamhle v hospodě jsou tři muži.

Over there in the saloon there are three men.

Znám ty muže. I know those men.

Jeden z těch mužů je od nás. One of those men is from our place.

Prodal jsem mu koně. I sold (to) him a horse.

Jaký je to člověk? What kind of a man is that?

Je dobrý muž. He is a good man.

Jděte k těm mužům. Go to those men.

Půjdu, chci mluvit s těmi muži. I will go; I want to speak with those men.

Myslím že ti mužové půjdou brzy domu. I think that those men will soon go home.

Note 1. The formation of the *plural* of masculine inanimate and animate nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, are seen in the following table:

dollar, dollár, the dollar; vůz, vooz, the wagon; syn, syn, the son; muž, moož, the man;

dollary	<i>dolláry</i>	the dollars
vozy	<i>vězky</i>	the wagons
syni	<i>syní</i>	
—ové	<i>synové</i>	
muži	<i>mooži</i>	
—ové	<i>moožové</i>	the men;

REMARK. The long termination **ové** belongs to animate nouns; only in poetic language or solemn expressions does it sometimes appear connected with inanimates. —

In the accusative or objective case animate nouns have **syny, muže;** **Mám syny zde,** I have my sons here; **vidím ty muže,** I see those men. —

S dollar, s vozy, se syny, s muži; **s dolláry, s vězky, se syny, s mooži;** with the dollars, with the wagons, with the sons, with the men.

dollarů	<i>dollároo</i>	} of the dollars
—ův	<i>dollárooſ</i>	
vozů	<i>vězoo</i>	} of the wagons
—ův	<i>—ooſ</i>	
synů	<i>synoo</i>	} of the sons
—ův	<i>—ooſ</i>	
mužů	<i>moožoo</i>	} of the men
—ův	<i>—ooſ</i>	

REMARK. Both animate and inanimate nouns use the long termination **ův**, — but never in ordinary discourse and seldom in the spoken language generally.

dollarům	<i>dollärüm</i>	to the dollars	synům	<i>synoom</i>	to the sons
vozům	<i>vōzoom</i>	to the wagons	mužům	<i>mūžoom</i>	to the men;
v dollarech	<i>vdollärekh</i>	in the dollars			
ve vozech	<i>vě vōzehk</i>	in the wagons			
v synech	<i>vsyněkh</i>	in the sons			
v mužích	<i>vmužéekh</i>	in the men.			

REMARK. Also with other prepositions: **o dollarech**, about the dollars; **po dollarech**, after the dollars (or dollar by doilar); etc.

Note 2. The prepositions **k**, **s**, **v**, **z**, consisting of a single consonant, are simply abbreviations of **ke**, **ku**, **se**, **ve**, **ze**, as before explained. Their use is almost arbitrary, in cases where they can easily be connected and pronounced with the succeeding syllable; hence they are nearly always used when the following word begins with a vowel or with a consonant followed by a vowel: **v obleku**, *vō-blě-kū*, in the suit of clothes; **v dollarech**, *vdol-lě-rěkh*, in the dollars; **v synech**, *vsy-ěkh*, in the sons; — **s oblekem**, *sō-blě-kem*, with the suit of clothes; **s dollarem**, *sdol-lě-rem*, with the dollar; **s mužem**, *smoo-žem*, with the man: — **k obleku**, *kō-blě-kū*, to the suit of clothes; **k vozu**, *kō-zū*, to the wagon; etc.

We can never say **v vozu**, **s synem**, **k koni** (in the wagon, with the son, to the horse), because it could not be pronounced; the letter **e** has to be retained and it is ridiculous to leave it out in writing as a silent letter, as it can never be silent. We speak and write: **ve vozu** (or **ve voze**), *vě vōzū* (*vōzě*), in the wagon; **se synem**, *sě syněm*, with the son (or with my son); **ke koni**, *ke kōñi*, to the horse.

On the other hand, the long form **ke**, **ku**, **ve**, **ze** may nearly always be employed, when the following word begins with a consonant; we can say and write **ve dollarech**, **ve synech**; but it is not customary. The sound of **v** connects easily with every other consonant without the help of an **e**. However, the short prepositions **k**, **s**, **z** are being limited in their use and the proper long form **ke**, **ku**, **se**, **ze** is employed wherever practicable.

Note 3. The letters **h**, **ch**, **k**, **r** are called *hard* consonants "par excellence". When they occur in a MASCULINE ANIMATE noun, or

in its ultimate syllable, they are changed or softened in the nominative plural after the following manner:

h	changes into	z		k	changes into	c
ch	" "	š		r	" "	ř

The following examples will explain it:

soudruh,	<i>soúdrúh</i> , (<i>soúdrúkh</i>),	a comrade;	soudruzi,	<i>soúdrúzi</i> ,	comrades;
hoch,	<i>hókh</i> ,	a boy;	hoši,	<i>hó-she</i> .	boys:
kluk,	<i>klük</i> ,	a boy, an urchin;	kluci,	<i>klütsi</i> ,	boys, urchins;
bratr,	<i>brat' r</i> ,	a brother;	bratři,	<i>brát-rshī</i> ,	brothers;

But whenever the long form of the nominative plural (*ové*) is employed, the hard consonant remains unchanged: **soudruhové**, the comrades; **bratrové**, the brothers. In the other cases (excepting the vocative, which is like the nominative: **o soudruzi!** o comrades!). the hard consonant also retains its place: **soudruhů**, **hochů**, **kluků**, **bratrů**, of the comrades (boys, brothers); **soudruhům**, and so forth.

LESSON XVI.

Líbí se mi	<i>leebee sě me</i>	I like it, (him, her, etc)	dejte	<i>deytě</i>	give, put
néstí	<i>nesti</i>	to bring, to yield	posázím	<i>posázem</i>	I shall set out
nesou	<i>nessou</i>	they bring, they yield (or pay)	povídá	<i>poveedá</i>	says
přines	<i>prshi-ness</i>	bring (thou)	letos	<i>letoss</i>	this year
přinesu	<i>prshi-nessü</i>	I shall bring	v loni	<i>vloñi</i>	last year
vede se	<i>vědě sě</i>	thrives	hodně	<i>hodně</i>	much, many
čítám	<i>cheetám</i>	I read (i. e. I use to read)	(the same as mnoho)	<i>a good deal</i>	a good deal
sednu	<i>sednü</i>	I sit down			
bavím se	<i>báveem sě</i>	I amuse myself	třeba	<i>trshě-bă</i>	it needs, need- ed, necessary
			i třeba	<i>e trshě-bă</i>	I don't care
			všeho druhu	<i>vshěhō drůhō</i>	of all kinds
			krajina , f.	<i>kráyină</i>	country

soused, m.	<i>soúsed</i>	neighbor	půda, f.	<i>poodá</i>	land, soil
užitek, m.	<i>úžitek</i>	profit	prairie, f.	<i>prairiě</i>	prairie
kukuřice, f	<i>kükürshitsě</i>	corn	bahno, n.	<i>băhnō</i>	swamp
korna, f.	<i>kornă</i>		řezuňk, m.	<i>rshěz-ñeek</i>	butcher
brambory, pl.	<i>bränbory</i>	potatoes	kniha, f.	<i>kñihă</i>	book
oves, m.	<i>ovess</i>	oats	knihovna, f.	<i>kñihōvnă</i>	library
ječmen, m.	<i>yěchmen</i>	barley	milovník, m.	<i>milōv-ñeek</i>	lover
sklizeň, f.	<i>sklizeñ</i>	crop	záliba, f.	<i>zálibă</i>	pleasure
slad,	<i>slăd</i>	malt	růže, f.	<i>roože</i>	rose
trh, m.	<i>t^erh</i>	market	pivonka, f.	<i>pivonkă</i>	peony
u cesty	<i>ú tsěsty</i>	by the road	okno, n.	<i>oknō</i>	window
		near the road	poklad, m.	<i>poklăd</i>	treasure
· samý, á, é	<i>sămee</i>	nothing but	kdykoli	<i>gdi-koli</i>	whenever
úrodný, á, é	<i>oo-rodnee</i>	fertile	ještě jeden	<i>yesh'te yěden</i>	one more, another
obzvláště	<i>ob-zvláshťe</i>	especially	před	<i>prshěd</i>	before
zvláštní	<i>zvlásht-ñee</i>	particularly	bez	<i>běz</i> or <i>bess</i>	without
zpátky	<i>spátke</i>	special, particular	za	<i>ză</i>	beyond, behind

EXERCISES.

Zde se mi líbí. I like it here.

Zde je pěkná krajina. This is (here is) a nice country.

Každý to povídá. Everybody says so.

My máme zde farmu. We have a farm here.

Strýc je náš soused. Uncle is our neighbor.

On má zde dvě farmy. He has two farms here.

Má velký užitek z těch farem? Has

he a large profit from those farms?

Myslím že má. I think (that) he has.

Myslím že nesou mu hodně. I think (that) they yield (i. e. pay) him a good deal.

Vloni měl mnoho sklizně (skliz-ñe, of the c.) všeho druhu. Last year he had a large crop of all kinds.

Je to tuze úrodná farma. It is a very fertile farm.

Měl mnoho sena, pšenice, kukuřice i brambor. He had a great deal of hay, wheat corn and potatoes.

Letos bude míti také oves, ječmen a žito. This year he will also have oats, barley and rye.

Ječmen na slad má vždycky (dycky dit-ski) dobrý trh. Barley for malt has always a good market.

Knihy jsou poklad. Books are a treasure.

Rád čítám knihy. I like to read books.

Obzvláště když jsem doma. Especially when I am at home.

Jste teda milovník knih. You are then a lover of books.

To je pravda. That is true.

Máte mnoho knih? Have you many books?

Má knihovna je veliká My library is large.

Máte růže před oknem. You have roses before the window.

Máme tam hodně růží. We have many roses there.

K růžím dejte pivoňky. To the roses put peonies.

Na farmách zde ječmen vede se dobrě. On the farms here barley thrives well.

Za farmami u cesty je kus špatné půdy. Beyond the farms by the road there is a piece of bad land.

Já myslel, že je to úrodná prairie. I thought (that) it was a fertile prairie.

Není; je to skoro samé bahno. It is not; it is almost nothing but swamp.

Jaké knihy máte? What books have you?

Mám knihy všeho druhu. I have books of all kinds.

Sednu ke knihám kdykoli mám čas. I sit down to the books whenever I have time.

Teda máte zálibu ve knihách. Then you have (you find) pleasure in books.

Ano, tuze rád bavím se s knihami. Yes, I like very much to amuse myself with books.

V růžích mám zvláštní zálibu. In roses I have (I take) particular pleasure.

Posázím ještě jeden záhon růžemi. I shall plant another bed with roses.

Byl jsem u řezníka. I was at the butcher's.

Koupil jsem maso od řezníka. I bought (some) meat from the butcher.

Tu je to maso. Here is that meat.

To je samá kost. That is nothing but bone.

Jsou tu nějaké kosti. There are some bones here.

Ano, kostí je dost. Yes, there are bones enough.

K těm kostím třeba více masa. To the bones (besides the b.) we need more meat.

Na těch kostech není ho mnoho. On these bones there is not much of it.

Co s kostmi? What (can we do) with the bones?

Nechceme taklik kostí. We do not want so many bones.

Přines maso bez kostí. Bring meat without bones.

Půjdu zpátky a přinesu ho. I shall go back and bring it.

Note 1. The formation of the plural of feminine nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, are shown in the following table:

cena, tsěnă, the price; **růže, roožě,** the rose; **kost, kōst,** the bone;

ceny *tsěny* the prices

růže *roožě* the roses

kosti *kostě* the bones;

cen *tsěn* of the prices

růží *roožee* of the roses

kostí *kostee* of the bones;

REMARK. When two consonants terminate the noun in the genitive, an **e** is interpolated: **farmy**, the farms; **farem** (instead of **farm**), of the farms; **matky**, the mothers; **matek** (instead of **matk**), of the mothers.

cenám *tsěnám* to the prices

růžím *roožeem* to the roses

kostem *kostem* to the bones;

v cenách *ftsě-nákh* in the prices

v růžích *vroo-žekh* in the roses

v kostech *fkōs-tékh* in the bones;

REMARK. Also with other prepositions: **o cenách**, about prices; **při cenách**, at the prices; etc.

cenami	<i>tsěnămi</i>	with the prices	REMARK. Usually with the preposition s (with): s cenami , <i>stsě-nămi</i> ;
růžemi	<i>roožemi</i>	with the roses	
kostmi	<i>kostmi</i>	with the bones.	

LESSON XVII.

Vám	<i>vám</i>	to you	bohatví , n.	<i>bōhăts-tvee</i>	richess
jím	<i>yim</i>	to them	štěstí , n.	<i>shťess-t̄i</i>	happiness, luck, good fortune
mi, mě	<i>me, myě</i>	to me	moudrost , f.	<i>moǔdrost</i>	wisdom
moje, mé	<i>moyě, mé</i>	mine, my	váha , f.	<i>váhă</i>	weight
naše	<i>năshě</i>	our, ours	poupě , n.	<i>poǔpyě</i>	bul
vaše	<i>văshě</i>	your, yours	poupata	<i>poǔpătă</i>	buds
s těmi	<i>sťemi</i>	with those	plot , m.	<i>plōt</i>	fence
tohle	<i>tōhlě</i>	this here	obtíž , f.	<i>ob t̄eež</i>	trouble
tam ty	<i>tăm ty</i>	those over there	mýlka , f.	<i>meelkă</i>	mistake
tuze	<i>toozě</i>	very much	máte pravdu	<i>máte prăvdă</i>	you are right (literally: you have right)
blíže	<i>bleežě</i>	nearer	není třeba	<i>neñi trshě-bă</i>	it is not necessary
nikoli	<i>ñikoli</i>	no, not at all	obalený, á, é	<i>obălĕnee</i>	covered
kolem	<i>kōlem</i>	round	drátěný, á, é	<i>drá-tĕnee</i>	of wire
pojd'me	<i>pod'me</i>	let us go	hluboký, á, é	<i>hlübökee</i>	deep, pro- found.
jde	<i>dě</i>	comes	zdravý, á, é	<i>zdrăvee</i>	healthy, well, sound
hled'te	<i>hled'tě</i>	see, look	děvče	<i>děf-chě</i>	gir ¹
vidím	<i>vid'eem</i>	I see	děvčata	<i>děf-chătă</i>	girls
vidíte	<i>vid'eetě</i>	you see	dobře	<i>dobrshě</i>	well, all right
znám	<i>znám</i>	I know	slovem	<i>slōvem</i>	in a word
znáte	<i>znátě</i>	you know			
přidám	<i>prshí-dám</i>	I shall add			
řeknu	<i>rshěk nū</i>	I shall tell			
slyšet	<i>slisht</i>	to hear			
postačí	<i>postač-chee</i>	is sufficient			
roste	<i>rostě</i>	grows			

EXERCISES.

Já vám něco řeknu. I will tell you something.

Bohactví není štěstí. Riches are not happiness.

To jsou slova moudrosti. These are words of wisdom.

Znáte váhu těch slov? Do you know the weight of those words?

K těm slovům nic více není třeba. To those words nothing more is needed.

Tam ty růže už mají poupatá. The roses over there already have buds.

Ano, mají mnoho poupat. Yes, they have many buds.

Letos jsou obaleny poupaty. This year they are covered with buds.

Vloni byly skoro bez poupat. Last year they were almost without buds.

Pojďme blíže k těm poupatům. Let us go nearer to those buds.

Vidím něco na těch poupatech. I see something on the buds.

To není nic. That is nothing.

Máte pravdu; poupatá jsou zdravá. You are right; the buds are sound.

Ano, jsou; yes, they are.

Hleďte! See!

Ty pole co vidíte jsou moje. The fields you see are mine.

V těch slovech je hluboká pravda.

In those words there is a profound truth.

Chcete slyšetí více? Do you want to hear more?

Nikoli; ta slova postačí. Not at all; those words suffice.

Jsem spokojen s těmi slovy. I am satisfied with those words.

Slovem: máte pravdu! In a word: you are right!

Aha, zde je moje děvče! Ah, here is my girl!

Jsou vaše děvčata zdravá? Are your girls well?

Obě naše děvčata jsou zdravá. Both our girls are well.

Přinес děvčeti poupě Bring (thou) to the girl a bud.

Jsou zde dvě děvčata. There are two girls here.

Přineste jim několik poupat. Bring (you to) them some buds.

Tady jde s těmi poupaty. Here he comes with the buds.

Tu je pár poupat. Here are some buds.

Dobře. All right.

Kolem těch polí je nový plot. Around those fields there is a new fence.

Je to drátěný plot. It is a wire fence.

K těm polím je dobrá cesta. To those fields there is a good road.

Co bude na těch polích? What will there be on those fields?

Na těch polích bude obilí a kukurice. On those fields there will be grain and corn.

Co je tohle? What is this here?

Nějaká znamení. Some signs.

To jsou moje znamení. These are my signs.

Já něco přidám k těm znamením.

I shall add something to those signs.

Jste spokojen s těmi polemi? Are you satisfied with those fields?

Jsem tuze spokojen. I am very much satisfied.

Všechno dobře roste na těch polích.

Everything grows well on those fields.

Není mýlka v těch znameních! Is there no mistake in those signs?

S těmi znameními je někdy obtíž. With those signs there is sometimes trouble.

Pravda, je někdy obtíž. True, there is sometimes trouble.

Note. The formation of the plural of neutre nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, will appear from the following table:

slovo	<i>slōvō</i>	the word	pole	<i>polē</i>	the field
poupě	<i>poūpye</i>	the bud	znamení	<i>znāměñee</i>	the sign;
slova	<i>slōvā</i>	the words	pole	<i>pōlē</i>	the fields
poupatá	<i>poūpătă</i>	the buds	znamení	<i>znāměñee</i>	the signs;
slov	<i>slōf</i>	of the words	polí	<i>pōlee</i>	of the fields
poupat	<i>poūpăt</i>	of the buds	znamení	<i>znāměñee</i>	of the signs;
slovům	<i>slōvoom</i>	to the words	polím	<i>pōleem</i>	to the fields
poupatům	<i>poūpătoom</i>	to the buds	znamením	<i>znāměñeem</i>	to the signs;
ve slovech	<i>vē slōvěkh</i>	in the words	REMARK. Also with other prepositions: o polích , about the fields; na polích , on the fields.		
v poupatech	<i>fpoūpătěkh</i>	in the buds			
v polích	<i>fpoléekh</i>	in the fields			
ve znameních	<i>vē znāměñeekh</i>	in the signs;			

slový *slövy* with the words
poupaty *poüpäty* with the buds
polí (-emi) *polí (-ěmi)* with the fields
znameními *znäměñneemi* with the
signs.

REMARK. Also with the preposition **se, s:** *se slovy, se slövy; s poupaty, spoüpäty; s polemi, spolěmi; se znameními, sě znäměñneemi*.—Instead of **polemi**, the short forms **polmi** and **polí** (*polmi, polli*) are also used.

LESSON XVIII.

Mrak, m.	<i>mräk</i>	cloud
mráček, m.	<i>mrá-chek</i>	little cloud
žena	<i>ženä</i>	wife
míle* , f.	<i>meelë</i>	mile
hodina* , f.	<i>höd'ina</i>	hour, o'clock
jízda, f.	<i>ye zdü</i>	drive, ride
k večeru	<i>kvečerü</i>	toward evening
za světla	<i>zä swyët-lä</i>	by daylight
tma	<i>tmü</i>	dark, darkness
pozdě	<i>pözd'e</i>	late
dobrá!	<i>dobrá</i>	very well!
krásný, á, é	<i>krássneee</i>	beautiful
s námi	<i>s námi</i>	with us
brzy	<i>b'rzzy</i>	soon
po svém	<i>pö svém</i>	after one's business
ještě	<i>yesh'te</i>	still, yet.

já pravil	<i>yá prävil</i>	I said
jářku	<i>yá-rshkü</i>	I said, I say (like the colloq. "says I".)
jeti	<i>yet'i, yet</i>	to drive, to ride
pojedem	<i>pöyëdem</i>	we shall drive, we shall ride
pojed'me	<i>poyëd'më</i>	let us drive, let us ride
vyjeti,	<i>ve-yet'i, ve-yet</i>	to drive out, to ride out, to start
vyjeli jsme	<i>ve-yelli smë</i>	we started
vrátíme se	<i>vrát'eeemë së</i>	we shall re- turn, we shall come back
vrátil mi	<i>vrát'fil me</i>	he returned to me (something);
půjčené peníze	<i>püyçhéné peñeezë</i>	the money loaned;

*) **Jedna, dvě, tři, čtyry míle,** *yednä, dwyë, trshi, shtiri meelë*, one, two, three, four miles; **pět mil,** *pyët mill*, five miles; **šest mil,** *shëst mill*, six miles; and so forth.

Jedna hodina, *yednä hod'ina*, one hour, one o'clock; **dvě, tři, čtyry hodiny,** *dwyë, trshi, shtiri hod'iny*, two, three, four hours; two, three, four o'clock; **pět hodin,** *pyët hod'in*, five hours; five o'clock; **šest hodin,** *shëst hod'in*, six hours, six o'clock; — and so forth.

EXERCISES.

Včera byl krásný den; — nebe bylo jasné, — ani mráčku nikde.

Jářku, ženo! dnes pojedem do města.

Ano, pojedeme! pravila žena; — je den tak krásný!

Máme deset mil do města.

Brzy po snídani vyjeli jsme; — bylo právě osm hodin.

Soused pan Rohan byl s námi.

Já pravil: sousede, jak brzy bude me ve městě?

V deset hodin jsme tam! pravil pan Rohan.

A byli jsme.

Je to as dvě hodiny jízdy, když cesta je dobrá.

Ve městě soused šel kupovat něco a my také šli po svém.

Půjčil jsem mu pět dollarů.

Jářku, sousedě! kdy se vrátíme?

Myslím pozdě odpoledne, nebo k večeru; — to bude dost času.

Dobrá; vrátíme se asi v sedm hodin večer, — ještě za světla.

Ale bylo už tma, když jsme se vrátili.

Yesterday was a beautiful day; — the sky was clear, — not a cloud anywhere.

I said: wife, to-day we will drive to town.

Yes, let us drive! said (my) wife; — the day is so beautiful!

It is ten miles to town (*literally*: we have ten miles to town).

Soon after breakfast we drove out (we started); — it was just eight o'clock.

(Our) neighbor Mr. Rohan was with us.

I said: neighbor, how soon shall we be in the city?

At ten o'clock we are there! said Mr. Rohan.

And we were.

It is about a two hour's ride, when the road is good.

In the city, the neighbor went to buy something, and we also went after our business.

I loaned (to) him five dollars.

I said: neighbor, when shall we return?

I think late in the afternoon or towards evening; — that will be time enough.

Very well; we shall return about seven o'clock in the evening. — still by daylight.

But it was already dark, when we returned.

Soused šel domu a vrátil mi půjčené peníze.

The neighbor went home and returned to me the money I loaned him.

Note 1. The noun **mráček** is a diminutive of **mrak**. In English only a few nouns have their proper diminutives; for instance: man, *manikin*; eagle, *eaglet*; river, *rivulet*; goose, *gosling*.

In Bohemian diminutives are exceedingly numerous; and very often a noun has two, sometimes three diminutives, differing in degree. For example:

dům, m. *dům*, a house; **domek**, *dōměk*, a small house; **domeček**, *dōměček*, a very small house.

hoch, *hōkh*, a boy; **hošík**, *hōsheek*, a small boy; **hošíček**, *hōshee-chek*, a very small boy.

ruka, f. *růkă*, a hand; **ručka**, *růchka*, a small hand; **ručička**, *růchich-kă*, a very small hand.

oko, n. *ōkō*, an eye; **očko**, *ōch-kō*, a small eye; **očičko**, *ōchich-kō*, a very small eye.

Diminutives, however, are often used simply as expressions of fondness and endearment, apart from any relation of size or degree.

Note 2. The genitive or possessive case of **mráček** is **mráčku**, not **mráčeku**. All nouns ending in **ek** drop the letter **e** in their declension. They are all of the masculine gender (as observed in Lesson I, Note 5), and the animate have **ka**, the inanimate **ku** in the genitive:

ptáček, *ptáček*, (colloq. *ftáček*), a small bird; **ptáčka**, *ptáčkă* (*ftáčkă*), a small bird's;

svátek, *svátek*, a holiday; **svátku**, *svát-kū*, a holiday's.

Note 3. Reflexive verbs in English are followed by reflexive pronouns; for instance: to forswear *one's self*; I foreswore *myself*; he forswore *himself*; they forswore *themselves*; etc.

In Bohemian, the reflexive pronoun is always *se*, without any variation. But many verbs, which are reflexive in Bohemian, are not so in English; and vice versa.

Vrátiti se, *vráťit sě* (to return, to come back), is a reflexive verb; we say: **vrátím se**, *vráťeem sě*, I shall return; **vrátíme se**, *vráťeemě sě*, we shall return; **vrátíte se**, *vráťeetě sě*, you will return: **vrátí se**, *vráťee sě*, they will return.

Note 4. In the foregoing exercises, **sousede**, *ženo*, are the vocative cases of **soused** (neighbor), *žena* (wife). The noun is put in the vocative case, when the person or thing is addressed: O Lord! o heavens!

In Bohemian, the vocative case in the singular is very often, in the plural *always* like the nominative, as will be seen from the following comparison:

N o m i n a t i v e .			V o c a t i v e .		
soused ,	<i>soúsed</i> .	the neighbor	sousede!	<i>soúsedě</i>	o neighbor!
muž ,	<i>moož</i> ,	the man	muži!	<i>mooži</i> ,	o man!
žena ,	<i>ženă</i> ,	the woman	ženo!	<i>ženă</i> ,	o woman!
kost , f.	<i>kost</i> ,	the bone	kosti!	<i>kost'i</i> ,	o bone!
růže , f.	<i>roožě</i> ,	the rose	růže!	<i>roože</i>	o rose!
slovo , n.	<i>slövö</i> ,	the word	slovo!	<i>slövö</i> ,	o word!
pole , n.	<i>pöle</i> ,	the field	pole!	<i>pölë</i> ,	o field!
znamení ,	<i>známeñee</i> ,	the sign	znamení!	<i>známeñee</i> ,	o sign!

In the plural number, the nominative and vocative always agree

sousedí*),	<i>soúsed'i</i> ,	the neighbors; o neighbors!
muži (-ové),	<i>mooži</i> ,	the men; o men!
ženy ,	<i>ženy</i> ,	the women; o women!
kosti ,	<i>kost'i</i> ,	the bones; o bones!
růže ,	<i>roožě</i> ,	the roses; o roses!
slova ,	<i>slövă</i> ,	the words; o words!
pole ,	<i>pölë</i> ,	the fields; o fields!
znamení ,	<i>známeñee</i> ,	the signs; o signs!

*) **Sousedé**, *soúsedé*, is the proper grammatical form, this noun forming an exception: but **sousedí** is the common usage.

Note 5. The Latin noun has six cases; the Bohemian noun has six cases corresponding perfectly with the Latin, and an additional case called "instrumental", because it denotes by whom, with whom or through whom (by means of what or through what) something happens or is done: **mužem, s mužem**, by the man, with the man; **dollarem, s dollarem**, with the dollar.

The nature of the six cases of the Bohemian noun apart from the vocative will appear more distinctly by stating the questions to which they respond.

The *nominative* case, of course, responds to the question **kdo? eo? gdő, tső; who? what?**

dollar, muž, žena, slovo; the dollar, the man, the woman, the word.—
dollary, muži, ženy, slova; the dollars, the men, the women, the words.

The *genitive* or *possessive* case responds to the question **čí, čeho? chee, chěhő; whose? of what?**

dollaru, muže, ženy, slova; of the dollar; the man's, the woman's, of the word; — **dollarů (-ův), mužů (-ův), žen, slov;** of the dollars, the men's, the women's, of the words.

The *dative* case responds to the question **komu? čemu? kōmū, chěmū;** to whom? to what?

dollaru, muži, ženě, slovu; to the dollar, to the man, to the woman, to the word; — **dollarům, mužům, ženám, slovům;** to the dollars; to the men, to the women, to the words.

The *accusative* or *objective* case responds to the question **koho? eo? kōhō, tsō; whom? what?**

dollar, muže, ženu, slovo; the dollar, the man, the woman, the word; — **dollary, muže, ženy, slova;** the dollars, the men, the women, the words.

The *locative* case responds to the question **v kom? v čem? (na kom? na čem? -- o kom? o čem?), fkōm, fchěm;** in whom? in what? (on whom — what? about whom — what?)

v dollaru, v muži, v ženě, ve slovu (-ě); in the dollar, in the man,

in the **woma** **1**, in the **word**; — **v dollarech**, **v mužích**, **v ženách**, **ve slovech**; in the **dollars**, in the **men**, in the **women**, in the **words**.

The *instrumen'tal* case respo ds to the question **kým?** **čím?** — **s kým?** **s čím?** *keem, cheem, skeem, scheem*; by whom? by what? with whom? with what?

dollarem, mužem, ženou, slovem; with the dollar, with the man, with the woman, with the word; — **dollary, muži, ženami, slovy**; with the dollars, with the men, with the women, with the words.

LESSON XIX.

Pan	<i>pán</i>	Mr (mister)	blízký, á, é	<i>bleeskee</i>	near
pán	<i>pán</i>	gentleman	hodný, á, é	<i>hodnee</i>	nice, good
paní	<i>páñeee</i> Mrs. 'missis); lady		jiný, á, é	<i>ye-nee</i>	another
člověk	<i>chlövyék</i>	man; one;	letný, á, é	<i>letnee</i>	aged
Karel	<i>kärell</i>	Charles	bohatý, á, é	<i>böhätée</i>	rich
Anna	<i>änä</i>	Anna	chudý, á, é	<i>khüdee</i>	poor
Marie	<i>marië</i>	Mary	poctivý, á, é	<i>pots-t'ivee</i>	honest
dceruška	<i>tserüshkä</i>	little daughter	mladý, á, é	<i>mlädee</i>	young
hošík	<i>hösheek</i>	little boy	četný, á, e	<i>chetnee</i>	numerous
sousedka	<i>soúsedkä</i>	female neighbor	pilný, á, é	<i>pillnee</i>	industrious
vdova	<i>vdövä</i>	widow	poslušný, á, é	<i>poslüshnee</i>	obedient
vdovec	<i>vdö-vëts</i>	widower	ještě tři	<i>yesh'te trshi</i>	three other
domov, m.	<i>dömosf</i>	home			three more
rok, m.	<i>rök</i>	year	usazen	<i>üssäzen</i>	settled
leta	<i>letä</i>	years*)	jmenuje se	<i>menüyé së</i>	is called
let	<i>let</i>		v skutku	<i>fsküt-kü</i>	indeed, in
náklonnost, f.	<i>náklönnost</i>	inclination	opravdu	<i>oprävdü</i>	fact, really
několik	<i>ñekolik</i>	several, some, a few	má být	<i>má beet</i>	ought to be
			máte rád	<i>mátë rád</i>	you like

*) **Dvě leta**, *dvoyë letä*, two years; **tři leta**, *trshi letä*, three years; **čtyry leta**, *shtiri letä*, four years; **pět let**, *pyët let*, five years; **šest let**, *shëst let*, six years; **sedm let**, *sëdüm let*, seven years; and so forth.

Máte to rád? *mátě tō rád?* do you like it?
mám vždycky rád, *mám dit-ski rád,* I always like;
dávno, *dávnō,* a long time;
jak dávno, *yāk dávnō* how long;

nesklame se, *nessklāmě sě,* will not be disappointed;
jednám, *yed-nám,* I deal;
jedná, *yed-ná,* deals;
váš, *vásh,* your, yours;
její, *yěyee,* her, hers.

EXERCISES.

Tak zde je váš domov!
Kdo je váš soused?
Pan Hodan je můj soused.
On je náš blízký soused.
Je pan Hodan hodný muž?
Ano, je hodný muž; a paní Hodanová je hodná žena.
Mají děti?
Mají jednu dcerušku.
Jak se jmenuje?
Myslím že jmenuje se Marie; je to hodně dítě.
Jiný soused náš je pan Braun.
Jak dávno je zde usazen?
Je zde usazen asi rok nebo dvě leta.
Je pan Braun bohatý?
Není; on je chudý člověk.
Je chudý a tuze poctivý.
Je letný muž?
Ne, pan Braun je mladý muž a paní Braunová je mladá žena.
Ale rodina je už četná.
Mají několik dětí.

So here is your home!
Who is your neighbor?
Mr. Hodan is my neighbor.
He is our near neighbor.
Is Mr. Hodan a nice man?
Yes, he is a nice man; and Mrs. Hodan is a nice woman.
Have they children?
They have one little daughter.
What is her name?
I think she is called Mary; she is a nice child.
Another neighbor of ours is Mr. Brown.
How long is he (has he been) settled here?
He has been settled here about a year or two (years).
Is Mr. Brown rich?
He is not; he is a poor man.
He is poor and very honest.
Is he an aged man?
No; Mr. Brown is a young man, and Mrs. Brown is a young woman.
But the family is already numerous.
They have several children.

**Karel je asi deset let a pak mají
ještě tři děti.**

Karel je poslušný a pilný hoch.

Anna je také poslušná a pilná.

Je jí asi osm let.

Dítě má být poslušné a pilné.

Ano, má být; ale někdy není.

**Vdova Borošová je také naše blízká
sousedka.**

**Její bratr, pan Bloch, je také
vdovec.**

Charles is about ten years, and then
they have three more children.

Charles is an obedient and industrious
boy.

Anna is also obedient and industrious.

She is (*literally*: it is to her) about
eight years.

A child should be obedient and industrious.

Yes, it ought to be; but sometimes
it is not.

The widow Borosh is also our near
neighbor.

Her brother, Mr. Bloch, is also a
widower.

**Teda máte rád pana Hodana? (pánă
hodăň),—accusative).**

**Mám vždycky rád hodného muže, a
hodnou ženu také.**

**K hodnému muži a k hodné ženě
máme vždy náklonnost.**

**A je také pravda, že v hodném mu-
ži a v hodné ženě se člověk nikdy
nesklame.**

**S hodným mužem a hodnou ženou
každý rád jedná.**

Též rád jednám s hodným dítětem.

**Pana Branna hošk je v skutku
hodné dítě.**

So you like Mr. Hodan?

I always like a nice man, and a nice
woman too.

Toward a nice man and a nice woman
we always have an inclination.
And it is also true, that in a good
man and in a good woman one is
never disappointed.

With a nice man and a nice woman
everybody likes to deal.

I also like to deal with a nice child.
Mr. Brown's little boy is really a
good child.

Note 1. In Lesson VI. Note 2, it was explained that the termination
of adjectives changes according to the gender of the nouns which
they qualify:

hodný muž,	<i>hodnee moož,</i>	a nice man;
hodná žena,	<i>hodná ženă,</i>	a nice woman;
hodné dítě,	<i>hodné ȏeet'ē,</i>	a nice child (in ordinary discourse hodný dítě , like the masculine).

Adjectives, also, are declined and agree in number and case with the nouns. The changes of termination in the singular number appear in the following table:

hodný muž,	<i>hodnee moož,</i>	a nice man;
hodné dítě,	<i>hodné ȏeet'ē,</i>	a nice child;
hodného muže,	<i>hodnéhō moož̄,</i>	of a nice man,
“ dítěte,	“ ȏeet'etē,	of a nice child;

REMARK. The accusative or objective agrees with the possessive in the masculine, and with the nominative in the neutre gender:
vidím hodného muže, *vid'eeem hodnéhō moož̄;* I see a nice man;
vidím hodné dítě, *vid'eeem hodné ȏeet'ē,* I see a nice child.

hodnému muži,	<i>hodném̄u moož̄i,</i>	to a nice man,
“ dítěti,	“ ȏeet'et̄i,	to a nice child;
v hodném muži,	<i>v hodném moož̄i,</i>	in a nice man,
“ “ dítěti,	“ ȏeet'et̄i,	in a nice child;
s hodným mužem,	<i>shodneem moož̄em,</i>	with a nice man,
“ “ dítětem,	“ ȏeet'et̄em,	with a nice child.

hodná žena,	<i>hodná ženă,</i>	a nice woman;
hodné ženy,	<i>hodné ženy,</i>	of a nice woman;
“ ženě,	“ žen̄e,	to a nice woman;
v “ ženě,	v “ “ ,	in a nice woman;
hodnou ženu,	<i>hodnoū ženū,</i>	a nice woman (accusative);
s hodnou ženou,	<i>shodnoū ženōū,</i>	with a nice woman.

Note 2. In common discourse no distinction whatever is made between the masculine and neutre gender, and the terminal *ý* does not change. We hear:

hodný muž,	hodný dítě;	a nice man,	a nice child;
hodnýho muže,	hodnýho dítěte;	of a nice man,	of a nice child;
hodnýmu muži,	hodnýmu dítěti;	to a nice man,	to a nice child;
hodnýho muže,	hodný dítě; (<i>accusative</i>);	a nice man,	a nice child;
v hodným muži,	v hodným dítěti;	in a nice man,	in a nice child;
s hodným mužem,	s hodným dítětem;	with a nice man,	with a nice child.

In the feminine gender, we hear: **hodná žena, hodnou ženu** (*accus.*), **s hodnou ženou**; but in the other cases:

hodný ženy,	of a good woman;
hodný ženě,	to a good woman;
v hodný ženě,	in a good woman;

The ordinary usage of the people evidently rejects all artificial, and unnecessary grammatical distinction, always tending to simplicity; and it will be noticed that there is much more consistency in this common rule as applied to the declension of adjectives, when we come to treat of their plural number.

Note 3. In Bohemian, the adjective may be placed either before or after the noun, according to the speaker's pleasure;

pan Hodan je hodný muž;	{	Mr. Hodan is a nice man;
pan Hodan je muž hodný;		
je to letný muž;	{	he is (<i>literally, it is</i>) an aged man.
je to muž letný;		

It is usually placed after the noun when the speaker wishes to lay particular stress upon the adjective (*hodný, letný*) qualifying the noun.

LESSON XX.

Sousedstvo, n. <i>soúsedstvö</i> neighbor-	hood	vejde	<i>veydě</i>	enters, calls
celý, á, é <i>tselee</i>	whole, all	rád vejde	<i>rád veydě</i>	likes to call
milý, á, é <i>millee</i>	pleasant, pleasant-	rád promluví, <i>rád promlūvee,</i>	likes	to talk (to have a chat)
	ing, dear			
příjemno, f. <i>prshee-yěmnö</i>	agreeable, pleasant	má rád	<i>má rád</i>	he likes
nehodný	<i>ně hodnee</i>	má ráda	<i>má rádă</i>	she likes
bydleti	<i>bidlet</i>	doufám	<i>doúfám</i>	I hope
vše	<i>fshě</i>	ba právě	<i>bă právyě</i>	that is so; to be sure;
všechno	<i>fshekh-nö</i>	ba věru	<i>bă vyěrū</i>	certainly: no doubt of it;
však	<i>fshăk</i>	v pořádku	<i>fpo-rshád-kü</i>	right; all right;
však je	<i>fshăk yě</i>	dobrá vůle	<i>dobrá voolě</i>	good will
	(there are)	na štěstí	<i>nă shťestí,</i>	happily, fortunately;
nad	<i>năd</i>	je na to čas, <i>yě nă tă chăss,</i>	there is	time for it.
není nad <i>něñi năd</i>	there is nothing			
	better than . . . ;	že ne? že ně?	{ isn't it so? is it not?	
	nothing like . . . ;			are they not?
velmi	<i>velmi</i>	to víš	<i>tă veesh</i>	thou knowest
jich	<i>yikh</i>	to víte	<i>tă veetě</i>	you know
nám	<i>nám</i>			
vám	<i>vám</i>			

REMARK. When standing alone and used as a rejoinder, **to víš** and **to víte** signify; *of course, to be sure.*

EXERCISES.

Myslím že všichni vaši sousedé jsou hodní.

Pravda; celé sousedstvo je hodné.

Pak je příjemno bydleti zde.

Opravdu, velmi příjemno.

A jaké je sousedstvo vaše?

My také máme pár hodných sousedů.

Myslím že je vám to také milé.

Je nám to tuze milé.

Člověk rád vejde k hodným sousedům.

Každý má rád hodné sousedy.

Ba právě; a v hodných sousedech vždycky (*dit-ski*) má podporu.

Když je na to čas, člověk rád promluví s hodnými sousedy.

Není nad hodné sousedy!

Má žena je zde velmi spokojena.

Vaše sousedky jsou všechny hodné, že ne?

Naše sousedky jsou hodné.

To víte, že mezi hodnými sousedkami je dobrá vůle.

Není nad dobrou vůli v sousedstvu.

To víte.

Když sousedé také mají hodné děti, všechno je v pořádku.

I think that all your neighbors are nice.

True; the whole neighborhood is nice.

Then it is agreeable to live here.

Truly, very agreeable.

And what kind is *your* neighborhood?

We also have some nice neighbors (i. e. some *of* the nice neighbors).

I think (that) it is also agreeable to you.

It is very agreeable to us.

One likes to call on nice neighbors; (*literally*:) one likes to enter to nice neighbors.

Everybody likes good neighbors.

To be sure; and in good neighbors one always has (finds) a support.

When there is time for it, one likes to have a chat with good neighbors.

There is nothing like good neighbors!

My wife is very much satisfied here. Your female neighbors are all nice, are they not?

Our female neighbors are nice.

You know that among nice female neighbors there is good will.

There is nothing like good will in a neighborhood.

Of course (i. e. you know).

When the neighbors also have nice children, everything is all right.

Máme opravdu mnoho hodných dětí v sousedství.

We have indeed many nice children in the neighborhood (i. e. many of the nice children)*).

Však je také několik nehodných.

But there are also a few naughty (ones).

Doufám že není jich mnoho.

I hope (that) there are not many of them.

Na štěstí není jich mnoho.

Fortunately there are not many of them.

Je jich jen pár; ale je to dost.

There are only a few; but it is enough.

Ba věru.

No doubt of it.

Note 1. In the plural, the masculine gender of an adjective changes the terminal **ý** into an **í**;

hodný muž, *hodnee moož*, a nice man; **hodní muži, *hodñee mooži*,** nice men.

The feminine gender changes the terminal **á** into an **é**:

hodná žena, *hodná ženă*, a nice woman; **hodné ženy, *hodné ženy*,** nice women.

The neutre gender changes the terminal **é** into an **á**:

hodné děcko, *hodné d'et-sko*, a nice child; **hodná děčka, *hodná d'et-skă*,** nice children.

Dítě, *d'et'ě*, (child,) follows the feminine in the plural: **hodné děti, *hodná d'et'i*,** nice children.

Note 2. Adjectives containing in their last syllable the hard consonants **h, ch, k, r**, change these consonants in the plural of the masculine animate gender into **z, š, c, ř**, in the same manner as stated in Lesson XV. Note 3. For example:

*) **Mnoho, málo, pár, kolik, několik,** (many, few, a few, how many, some), as well as all numbers after "four" (see foot-notes in Lessons XVIII and XIX) govern the *genitive or possessive* case; hence the noun, or pronoun, adjective, which follows them, must always appear in that case.

dłouhý had, *dloúhee hăd*, a long snake; **dłouzí hadi**, *dloúzee hăd'i*, long snakes;
hluchý muž, *hlükhee moož*, a deaf man; **hluší muži**, *hlüshee mooži*, deaf men;
velký hoch, *velkee hōkh*, a big boy; **velcí hoši**, *veltsee hō-shi*, big boys;
dobrý soused, *dobree soùsed*, a good neighbor; **dobří sousedi**, *dobr-shee soùsed'i*, good neighbors.

Note 3. The following table presents a complete view of the plural number of adjectives ending in *ý* (*á*, *é*).

The nominative and accusative cases:

hodní muži (*accus.* **hodné muže**), *hodnīe mooži*, *hodné moožě*, nice men;

hodné ženy, *hodné ženy*, nice women;

hodná děcka, hodná dětská, nice children.

The *genitive* or *possessive* case :

hodných mužů, žen, děcek, *hodneekh moožoo. žen, d'etsek*, of the nice men, women, children.

The *dative* case :

hodným mužům, ženám, děckům, *hodneem moožoom, ženám d'etskoom*, to the nice men, women, children.

The *locative* case:

o hodných mužích, ženách, děckách, *o hodneekh moožekh, ženákh, d'etskákh*, about the nice men, women, children.

The *instrumental* case:

s hodnými muži, ženami, děcky, shodneemi mooži, ženámi, dětskí,
with the nice men, women, children.

Note 4. In common discourse, however, the grammatical distinction of gender in the nominative plural of this class of adjectives is treated as perfectly useless, which in fact it is. The Bohemian language, as it lives in the daily intercourse of millions, employs the masculine singular form of the adjective in all three genders of the plural, recognizing only one form of declension :

hodný muži, hodný ženy, hodný děti (or děcka); the nice men, women, chi!dren;

hodných mužů, žen, dětí; of the nice men, women, children:
and so forth.

LESSON XXI.

Sousedův , m. <i>soūsedloof</i>	the neigh- bor's.	denní	<i>děñee</i>	daily
sousedova , f <i>soūsedlōvă</i>		týdenní	<i>teeděñee</i>	weekly
sousedovo , n. <i>soūsedlōvō</i>		denník , m. <i>děñeek</i> ,	daily paper	
sousedovi , pl. <i>soūsedlōvi</i>		týdenník , m. <i>teeděñeek</i>	weekly "	
bratrův , m. <i>brătroof</i> , the brother's		dnešní	<i>dñesh-ñee</i>	today's
plný , á, é <i>pl-nee</i>		včerejší	<i>schereyshée</i>	yesterday's
nový ; á, é <i>nōvee</i>		poslední	<i>pōsledñee</i>	last
falešný , á, é <i>făleshnee</i>		volba , f. <i>volbă</i>		election
co nového? <i>tsō nōvěhō</i> , what is		zpráva , f. <i>správă</i>		advice
		den co den , <i>den tsō den</i> , day by day		
noviny , pl. <i>nōviny</i> news, news-		co, něco <i>tsō, n̄etsō</i>	something	
		brzo hotovi , <i>b^erzo hotōvi</i> , soon done		
tiskárna , f. <i>tiskárnă</i> printing office		přinesl <i>prshī nessl</i>	he brought	
list <i>list</i> , paper, sheet, leaf		dopadnouti , <i>dōpădnoūt</i> , to come		
hlas , m. <i>hlăss</i>				out, to result
slonpec , m. <i>sloňpets</i>		podívej se , <i>pōd̄eevey s̄e</i> , look thou)		
sloupec		podívejte se , <i>pōd̄eeveyt̄e s̄e</i> , look		
čísti , <i>cheest̄i, cheest</i> , to read				(you)
čteme		pokaždé , <i>pōkăždē</i>	every time	
v tom , m & n. <i>flōm</i>		též		also
v té , f. <i>fté</i>		věřiti , <i>vyě-rhiťi, vyě-rshít</i> , to be-		
proto <i>prōtō</i> hence, therefore				lieve
proto ale přece , <i>prōtō ālē prshē-tsē</i> ,		nesmíte <i>nēsmeet̄e</i>	you must not	
in spite of that, notwith-		pracovati <i>prātsōvāt</i>	to work	
standing that		pracuje <i>prātsūyē</i>	work	

EXERCISES.

Kdo to byl?**To byl sousedův syn.****Přinesl něco?****Přinesl nám noviny.****Sousedovy noviny?****Ano, sousedovy noviny.****Jsou to denní nebo týdenní noviny?****Je to denník.****Jaký je to denník?****Je to Denní Hlas.****Bratrův hoch pracuje v té tiskárně, myslím.****Ano, a sousedova dcera též.****Bratrova dcera chce tam pracovat též.****A Hodanova Marie také.****Je to dnešní list?****Je dnešní; ale sousedův Jan také přinesl včerejší list.****Co je nového? Podívej se do dnešního listu.****Ve dnešním listu není mnoho nového; — jen něco o poslední volbě.****Jak dopadla poslední volba?****Hned to budu čísti.****Budeme brzy hotovi s dnešním listem.****Denní listy vždycky (*dit-ski*) mají něco nového.****Pravda, v denních listech je po každé co čísti.**

Who was it?

That was (our) neighbor's son.

Has he brought something?

He brought (to) us a newspaper.

Our neighbor's newspaper?

Yes, our neighbor's paper.

Is it a daily or a weekly newspaper?

It is a daily.

What daily is it?

It is the Daily Voice.

My brother's boy works in that printing-office, I think.

Yes, and (our) neighbor's daughter also.

My brother's daughter wants to work there also.

And Mary Hodan too.

Is it to-day's paper?

It is to-day's; but (neighbor's) John also brought yesterday's paper.

What is the news? Look (thou) into to-day's paper.

In to-day's paper there is not much news; only something about the last election.

How did the last election come out?

I shall read it right away.

We shall soon be done with to-day's paper.

Daily papers always have something new.

To be sure, in daily papers there is every time something to read.

Ale nesmíte vždy věřiti denním listům.

S denními listy je to tak : sloupce musí být plné den co den.

Proto jsou někdy falešné zprávy v denních listech.

Proto ale přece rádi čteme denní listy.

Čteme několik denních listů (*genit. case*, — “of the daily papers”).

But you must not always believe the daily papers.

With the daily papers it is so; the columns must be full day by day. Hence there are sometimes false advices in daily papers.

In spite of that we like to read the daily papers.

We read several daily papers.

Note 1. Adjectives ending in **i**, like **denní**, **dnešní**, **poslední**, **včerejší**, have the same termination in all genders and both numbers; and in the singular of the feminine gender they remain unchanged in all cases: in the masculine and neutre gender the genitive case is characterized by the termination **ího**, the dative by **ímu**, the locative and instrumental by **ím**, — corresponding with **ého**, **ému**, **ém** & **ým** of the main order of adjectives.

In the plural, their declension is the same in all three genders, showing the termination **ích** in the genitive and locative, **ím** in the dative, and **imi** in the instrumental case.

Note 2. There is also a class of adjectives derived *from nouns* denoting persons or animals, by means of the suffixes **ův**, **ova**, **ovo**, according to gender. They are called “possessive adjectives”, and their sense is rendered in English by the “possessive case” of the noun :

sousedův syn,	<i>soúsedoof syn,</i>	the neighbor's son;
sousedova dcera,	<i>soúsedová tsérá,</i>	the neighbor's daughter;
sousedovo dítě,	<i>soúsedové dítě,</i>	the neighbor's child;
sousedovi synové,	<i>soúsedoví synové,</i>	the neighbor's sons;
sousedovy dcery (děti),	<i>soúsedoví tséry (děti),</i>	the neighbor's daughters (children).

From feminine nouns they are derived by the suffixes **in**, **ina**, **ino** (**iny** in the plural, in colloquial usage).

ženin klobouk, *žeñin kloboúk*, the woman's (or wife's) bonnet;
ženiny šaty, *žeñiny šáty*, the woman's (or wife's) clothes *or* dress.

Grammatically, these adjectives have their own mode of declension; but colloquially, they are declined just like adjectives of the main order: **hodný, á, é.**

Note 3. A few more examples of such possessive adjectives as are commonly in use, in connection with nouns of different gender, will make the student sufficiently familiar with them:

Otec, *ořečs*, the father :

otecův klobouk, m.	<i>ořsoof kloboúk</i> ,	the father's hat;
otecova čepice, f.	<i>ořsová chěpitsě</i> ,	the father's cap;
otecovo místo, n.	<i>ořsovō meestō</i> ,	the father's place;

Matka, *mátká*, the mother :

matčin pokoj, m.	<i>máčchin pōkoy</i> ,	the mother's room;
matčina stolice, f.	<i>máčchiná stolitsě</i> ,	the mother's chair;
matčino slovo, n.	<i>máčchinō slovō</i> ,	the mother's word.

Sestra, *sestrá* the sister :

sestrin šál, m.	<i>sestr-rshin shawl</i> ,	the sister's shawl;
sestrina taška, f.	<i>sestr-rshiná tăshkă</i> ,	the sister's satchel;
sestrino piano, n.	<i>sestr-rshinō piáno</i> ,	the sister's piano.

Hoch, *hōkh*, the boy :

hochův míč, m.	<i>hōkhoof meeč</i> ,	the boy's ball;
hochova mapa, f.	<i>hōkhová măpă</i> ,	the boy's map;
hochovo pero, n.	<i>hōkhovō perō</i> ,	the boy's pen;

Holka, *holká*, the girl :

holčin kufr, m.	<i>holchin kūff'r</i> ,	the girl's trunk;
holčina postel, f.	<i>holchiná postell</i> ,	the girl's bed;
holčino prádlo, n.	<i>holchinō prádlō</i> ,	the girl's linen,

REMARK. It will be noticed that in the derivatives from feminine nouns ending in **ka**, **ra**, the hard consonants **k**, **r**, change into the soft consonants **č**, **ř**: **matka**, **matčin**; **sestra**, **sestřin**.

LESSON XXII.

Mladý, á, é	<i>mlădee</i>	young	přítel, m.	<i>prshee-tel</i>	friend
mladší	<i>mlăd-shee</i>	younger	obchod, m.	<i>ob-hkăd</i>	business
nejmladší	<i>ney-mlăd-shee</i>	youngest	obchodník, m.	<i>ob-khăd-ñeek</i>	merchant, business man;
starý, á, é	<i>stăree</i>	old	krám, m.	<i>krám</i>	store
starší,	<i>stăr-shee</i>	older	sklad, m.	<i>sklăd</i>	warehouse
nejstarší	<i>ney-stăr-shee</i>	oldest	zboží, n.	<i>zbožee</i>	goods, stock of goods;
bohatší	<i>bohăt-shee</i>	richer	železný, á, é	<i>želěznee,</i>	of iron;
nejbohatší	<i>ney-bohăt-shee</i>	richest	železné zboží,	<i>želězné zbožee,</i>	hardware;
chudší	<i>khăd-shee</i>	poorer	konkurent, m.	<i>concūrent,</i>	competitor;
nejchudší	<i>ney-khăd-shee</i>	poorest	lidi, lidé,	<i>lid'i, lidé,</i>	people
nejpøslednější	<i>ney-posled-ñeyshée</i>	last of all, the very last	jeden z (ze),	<i>yěden z (zë),</i>	one of
jak se jmenuje?	<i>yăk sě menüyě,</i>	what is his name?	jeho	<i>yěhō</i>	his
buď jak buď,	<i>băd' yăk băd',</i>	be it	zatím	<i>zăťeem</i>	on the contrary
as it may; no matter how it is;			naopak	<i>nă-opăk</i>	
není-li pravda?	<i>neyñi-li prăvdă,</i>	isn't it so?	mezi	<i>mězi</i>	among
je-li možná!	<i>yelli mōžná,</i>	is it possible!	přes	<i>prshěs</i>	over, across
já myslel,	<i>yá mis-lel,</i>	I thought	skoupý, á, é	<i>skoūpee</i>	miserly
oni myslí,	<i>oñi mislee,</i>	they think	štědrý, á, é	<i>shťedree</i>	liberal
bydlíte,	<i>bidleetě</i>	you live (reside)	patří	<i>pătrshée</i>	belongs.
známý, á, é <i>známee</i> , known; (used as a noun) acquaintance;					
půl leta,	<i>pool letă,</i>	half a year;	ze všech,	<i>zë fshěkh,</i>	of all.

EXERCISES.

Jsem rád že jste tu.

Vy bydlíte teda v B.?

Ano; už přes rok.

Já mám přítele*) v B.

Je bohatý obchodník; — má veliký sklad — a krám plný zboží na Washington ulici.

Jaký má obchod?

Železné zboží. (Obchod v železném zboží).

Jak se jmenuje?

Jmenuje se Josef Baldwin; — znáte ho?

Znám ho; — je bohatý, — ale jeho konkurent p. Adams je bohatší, — a pan Fleming je nejbohatší.

Bud' jak bud', pan Baldwin patří mezi nejbohatší obchodníky ve městě B.

Ano, jest jeden z nejbohatších obchodníků, — to je pravda.

Ale není pravda, že je skoupý; — naopak, on je tuze štědrý.

Jeho soused přes ulici, pan Wild, je také můj známý; — myslím že je posud chudý muž.

Ano, je prý chudší než lidí myslí; — však není ten nejchudší obchodník ve městě.

I am glad that you are here.

You live, then, in B.?

Yes; already over a year;

I have a friend in B.

He is a rich merchant; — he has a large warehouse — and a store full of goods on Washington street.

What business has he?

Hardware. (A hardware business).

What is his name?

His name is Joseph Baldwin; — do you know him?

I know him; — he is rich, — but his competitor Mr. Adams is richer, — and Mr. Fleming is the richest.

Be it as it may, Mr. Baldwin belongs among the richest business men in the city of B.

Yes, he is one of the richest merchants, — that is true;

But it is not true, that he is miserly; — on the contrary, — he is very liberal.

His neighbor across the street, Mr. Wild, is also my acquaintance; — I think that he is still a poor man.

Yes, he is said to be poorer than people think; — but he is not the poorest business man in town.

*) The noun **přítel** is somewhat irregular in its declension: **přítel**, *prshhee-telē*, in the genitive and accusative case (of a friend: a friend); **příteli**, the dative, also the vocative (to a friend; friend!). The plural is **přátelé**, *prshá-telé*, the friends; **přátel**, *prshá-tel*, of the friends.

Váš Robert je klerkem*), není-li pravda?

Ano, je) klerkem už půl leta.**

Myslím že Robert bude dobrý obchodník(or dobrým obchodníkem).

Robert je pilný hoch, — ale Frank je pilnější, — a Edward je nej-pilnější ze všech.

Není Frank starší než Robert?

Ne; Robert je starší a Edward je nejstarší.

Je-li možná! — Já myslel, že Robert je mladší než Frank, — a Frank zatím je nejmladší.

Your Robert is a clerk, is he not?

Yes, he has been a clerk for half-a-year.

I think that Robert will be a good business man.

Robert is an industrious boy, — but Frank is more industrious, — and Edward is the most industrious of all.

Is not Frank older than Robert?

No, Robert is older, and Edward is the oldest.

Is it possible! — I thought that Robert was younger than Frank, — and Frank, on the contrary, is the youngest.

*) The noun *klerk* is here used in the instrumental case, answering the question *čím je?* *cheem yě*, what is he?

This is a common construction. — We may ask: *Co je váš syn?* *what is your son?* — The answer would be: *On je klerk*, *he is a clerk*.

We may also ask: *Čím je váš syn?* (which, in English, is identical with the first question;) the answer would be: *On je klerkem*, *he is a clerk*.

In a similar manner we say in Bohemian, using the instrumental case:

Jsem farmerem, I am a farmer;

on je farmerem, he is a farmer;

on je obchodníkem, he is a merchant;

je generalem, he is a general; etc.

**) *Je, on je, on jest*, *he is*, the simple present tense of *býti*, *to be*, is also used in Bohemian for the perfect tense *he has been*. (See Lesson IX. Note 1.) Similarly we say;

jsem tu rok, I have been here a year;

já jsem tu rok, “ “ “ “ “ “ “ “

jsem farmerem deset let, I have been a farmer for ten years;

jsme doma týden, we have been at home a week; etc.

Máte také dcery?	Have you also daughters?
Mám dceru; je ještě mladší než hoch Frank.	I have a daughter; she is still young- er than the boy Frank.
To je nejposlednější dítě.	That is the very last child.
To je má celá rodina.	That is my whole family.

Note 1. In the English language, the comparative degree of adjectives is formed either by adding **er**, or by placing **more** before them. *young, younger; industrious, more industrious.*

The superlative degree is formed either by adding **est** (**st**), or by placing **most** before the adjective: *youngest; most industrious.*

In Bohemian, the comparative degree is formed by adding **ší** or **ější** (sometimes **ejší**) in place of the final **ý** (**á, é**):

mladý, á, é *mlădee*, young; **mladší, mlădshee**, younger;
pilný, á, é *pillnee*, industrious; **piln-ější, pilln̄eyshee**, more industrious.

The superlative degree is always formed by prefixing **nej, ney, to** the comparative degree:

nej-mla dší,	<i>neymlădshee,</i>	youngest;
nej-pilnější,	<i>neypilln̄eyshee,</i>	most industrious.

Note 2. Some adjectives, in Bohemian as well as in English, have an irregular comparison. The most common of them are the following:

dobrý,	<i>dobree,</i>	good;	lepší,	<i>lepshee,</i>	better;
zlý,	<i>zlee,</i>	bad;	horší,	<i>horshee,</i>	worse;
malý,	<i>mălee,</i>	small;	menší,	<i>menshee,</i>	smaller;
velký,	<i>velkee,</i>	large;	větší,	<i>vyětshee,</i>	larger;
dłouhý,	<i>dloūhee,</i>	long;	delší,	<i>delshee,</i>	longer;
vysoký,	<i>visōkee.</i>	high;	vyšší,	<i>vishee,</i>	higher;
hluboký,	<i>hlūbokee,</i>	deep;	hlubší,	<i>hlūbshee,</i>	deeper;
široký,	<i>shirokee,</i>	wide;	širší,	<i>shirshee,</i>	wider;
daleký,	<i>dălekee,</i>	far;	další,	<i>dălshee,</i>	farther;

blízký,	<i>bleeskee,</i>	near;	bližší,	<i>blishee,</i>	nearer;
hezký,	<i>hesskee,</i>	pretty, (nice);	hezčí,	<i>hess-chee,</i>	prettier;
lehký,	<i>lehkee,</i>	light;	lehčí,	<i>leh-chee,</i>	lighter;
měkký,	<i>myěkee,</i>	soft;	měkčí,	<i>myěk-chee,</i>	softer.

The superlative is formed without exception by prefixing **nej** to the comparative.

LESSON XXIII.

Já jel,	<i>yá yell,</i>	I rode, I went;	domov, m.	<i>dōmōf,</i>	a home;
čekal,	<i>chekăl,</i>	(he) waited;	obydlí, n.	<i>ōbidlee,</i>	dwelling;
pravil,	<i>prăvil,</i>	(he) said;	světnice, f.	<i>swyětñitsę</i>	room
vešel,	<i>věshell</i>	went in;	sednice, f.	<i>sedñitsę</i>	
psala,	<i>psălă,</i>	(she) wrote;	ložnice, f	<i>lož-ñitsę,</i>	bedroom;
neviděl jsem,	<i>něvid'el sem,</i>	I did not	dráha, f.	<i>dráhă,</i>	road, railroad;
		see;	po dráze,	<i>pō drázę,</i>	by railroad;
milujem se,	<i>milüyem se,</i>	we love	nádraží, n.	<i>nádră-žee,</i>	depot;
		each other;	pohodlí, n.	<i>pōhodlee,</i>	comfort;
postavím si,	<i>postăveem si,</i>	I shall	pohodlný, á, é	<i>pōhod'ēlnee,</i>	comfortable;
		build for myself;			
atť to stojí,	<i>atť tō stoyee,</i>	let it cost;	švagrová,	<i>shwăgrová,</i>	sister-in-law;
řka,	<i>rshkă,</i>	saying;	dítko, n.	<i>d'ēetkō,</i>	child, baby;
řekl jsem,	<i>rshěkl sem,</i>	I said, I told;	nemoc, f.	<i>němots,</i>	sickness;
		I have said (told);	všelico,	<i>fshellitsō,</i>	different things;
mluvil jsem,	<i>mlüvıl sem,</i>	I have	dlouho,	<i>dloühō,</i>	long, a long time;
		spoken; I spoke;	onehdy,	<i>ōněh-de,</i>	the other day;
slyšel jsem,	<i>slíshell sem;</i>	I have	zdráv, a, o,	<i>zdráv,</i>	well, healthy;
		heard; I heard;	unaven, a, o,	<i>ūnăven,</i>	tired;
sednouti si,	<i>sednoüt si,</i>	to sit down;	takový, á, é,	<i>tăkovce,</i>	such;
tázati se,	<i>tízät sě,</i>	to ask, to in-	vedle,	<i>vě-dlě,</i>	next to; side by side;
		quire;	věru,	<i>vyěrū,</i>	indeed;

zůstati, zoostăt̄ , to stay, to remain;	pro	<i>prō</i>	for.
svlékni se, svlékñi sě , undress!	napřed,	<i>näprshed</i> ,	first, ahead;
lehł jsem si, lĕ-hl sem si , I lay down;			
se, sebe, sě, sěbě , oneself; myself thyself, himself, herself, itself;			ourselves, yourselves, themselves;
si, sobě, si, sôbyč̄ , to oneself: to myself, etc. etc.			
sebou, sěboū , by or with oneself; etc. etc.			

EXERCISES.

Já jel*) onelhy do Chicago; — mám tam bratra; — chtěl jsem ho vidět, — též jeho obydlí; — on čekal na mě v nádraží. — Já přijel po dráze C. & NW.

Pravil mi: "Rád tě vidím, bratře! — Čekal jsem tebe; — ukážu ti můj domov. — Dáme tobě naši největší ložnici.

Musiš zůstati u mě aspoň týden; — tak teda pjd' se mnou."

Řekl jsem mu, že já také rád ho vidím. — Jsi zdráv? tázal jsem se ho.

"Ano, jsem tuze zdráv", pravil on; "má žena je také zdráva

*) *Jeti, yeti* (commonly *yet*), to ride, to go by railroad or otherwise. *Já j-ěm jel, yá sem yell*, I rode, I went, — I have gone; *já jel, yá yell*, is the past tense with the auxiliary *jsem* left out, as explained in Lesson X. The same applies to *já přijel, yá prsh-i-yell* I came (by train or other means of conveyance). From the verb *jeti, yeti*, (or *yet*) to ride, or to go by some conveyance, about as many new verbs can be derived by prefixes as from *jít̄i, yeet̄i*, (or *yeet*) to go See Lesson XIII, Note 6.

I went the other day to Chicago; — I have a brother there; — I wanted to see him, — also his dwelling; — he waited for me at the depot. — I came by the C. & NW. railroad.

He said to me: "I am glad to see thee, brother! — I have been expecting thee; — I will show to thee my home. — We shall give (to) thee our largest bedroom.

Thou must stay with me (i. e. at my house) at least a week; — so, then, come with me."

I told him that I also was glad to see him? — Are you well? I asked him.

"Yes, I am very well", said he; "my wife is also well and the baby

a dítko je také zdrávo. — Jsme spokojeni a milujem se."

A věru, na něm neviděl jsem žádnou nemoc. — Švagrová psala pravdu o něm, že je zdráv.

Šel jsem s ním. — Za půl hodiny byli jsme u něho. — Já šel napřed, on za mnou. — Jeho žena též ráda mě viděla; — ona také mě čekala.

Přinesl jsem jí všelico; — něco pro ní, něco pro její dítko. — Mluvil jsem s ní dlouho o všeličem, — a slyšel jsem od ní mnoho nového. — Ono bylo skoro všecko nové pro mě.

Myslil jsem si: Mají pěkný dům, — pohodlný domov. — Tolik světnic! — Já si postavím takový dům; — malou ložnicí pro sebe a dvě veliké ložnice pro rodinu. — Postavím sobě též vedle písárnu.

At te stojí něco; — postavím to pro sebe. — Anebo koupím si pěkný dům.

Sedl jsem si na sofa, řka: Jsem unaven!

“Udělej si pohodlí, — svlékni se,” — pravil bratr.

Já se svlékl a lehl jsem si.

is well, too.—We are contented and we love each other.”

And indeed, on him I didn't see any sickness.—Sister-in-law wrote the truth abouthim that he was well.

I went with him.— In half an hour we were at his house.—I went in first, he (followed) after me. — His wife also was glad to see me; — she also expected me.

I brought to her different things; — something for her, something for her baby.—I spoke with her long about different things,—and I heard from her many news.—It was nearly all news to me.

I thought to myself: They have a nice house,—a comfortable home. — So many rooms!—I shall build me such a house;—a small bedroom for myself, and two large bedrooms for the family. — I shall build myself also next to it an office.

Let it cost something; — I shall build it for myself.—Or, I shall buy me a nice house.

I sat down on the sofa, saying: I am tired!

“Make thyself comfortable,— undress (thysel),” — said my brother.

I undressed and lay (myself) down.

Note 1. The personal pronouns **já, ty, on (ona, ono)**, show the following variation :

Já,	yá,	I;	ty,	te,	thou;
mě,	myě,	me;	tě tebe,	tě, těbě,	thee;
mi, mně,	me, mňe,	to me;	ti, tobě,	tí, tōbyě,	to thee;
se mnou,	sě mnoů,	with me;	s tebou,	stěboů,	with thee;
on, ono,	ǒn, ǒnō,	he, it;			
ho,	hō,	him it;	ona,	ǒnă,	she;
jeho,	yěhō,	his, its;	ji, jí,	ye, yee,	her, to her;
mu, jemu, němu, němu,	mū, yěmū, ńěmū,	to him, to it;	její,	yěyee,	her, hers;
		in him, in it;			
v něm,	vńěm,	in him, in it;	v ní,	vńee,	in her;
s nim,	sńim,	with him, with it;	s ní,	sńee,	with her.

Note 2. Adjectives sometimes take an indefinite form:

on je zdráv, ǒn yě zdráv, he is well (or healthy);

ona je zdráva, ǒnă yě zdrávă, she is well;

ono je zdrávo, ǒnō yě zdrávō, it is well;

but when placed before a noun, the adjective must always have its definite form: zdravý muž, zdrávee moož, a healthy man; zdravá žena, zdrává ženă, a healthy woman; zdravé dítě, zdrávě d'eeťe, a healthy child.

The following indefinite adjectives are of common occurrence:

nemocen,	němotsen,	instead of	nemocný,	němotsnee,	sick;
mrtev,	m ērtev,	" "	mrtvý,	m ērtvee,	dead;
stár,	stár,	" "	starý,	stăree,	old;
mocen,	mōtsen.	" "	mocný,	motsnee,	capable;
znám,	znám,	" "	známý,	známee,	known;
vesel,	vě-sell,	" "	veselý,	vesselee,	cheerful;
práv,	práv,	" "	pravý,	prăvee,	just;
bos,	bōs,	" "	bosý,	bosee,	barefoot,

Adjectives ending in vý and ný frequently take the indefinite form in the nominative case, changing their termination into v and en (va, na in the feminine, vo, no in the neutre gender).

Note 3. As observed in Note 2. Lesson XIII, the past tense of regular Bohemian verbs is formed from the infinitive by an **I** in place of the usual termination **ti** :

jeti,	<i>yeti</i> or <i>yet</i> ,	to ride;	jel,	<i>yell</i> ,	rode;
čekati,	<i>chekāt</i> ,	to wait;	čekal,	<i>chekāl</i> ,	waited;
mluviti,	<i>mlūvit</i> ,	to speak;	mluvil,	<i>mlūvil</i> ,	spoke;

But some verbs ending in **outi** show a slight deviation from this rule, changing **outi** into **ul**, and having besides a short form of the past tense, in which the letter **I** is substituted for the whole termination **nouti**, being attached immediately to the stem of the verb :

lehnouti,	<i>leh-noūťi</i> (or <i>leh-noūť</i>),	to lie down;	lehnul,	lehl,	<i>leh-nūl</i> ,
					<i>lē-hl</i> ,
					lay down;
sednouti,	<i>sednoūť</i> ,	to sit down,	sednul,	sedl,	<i>sednūl</i> ,
svléknouti,	<i>svlék-noūť</i> ,	to undress;	svléknul,	svlékl,	<i>svléknūl</i> ,
					<i>svlékl</i> ,
					undressed.

The verb **svléknouti** has also an irregular form of the infinitive : **svléci**, *svlét-si*. In common conversation we hear **sliknout**, **slíkl**, **slečený**, *sleeknoūť*, (to undress), *sleekl*, *sléchěnēe* (undressed, — as past participle and adjective).

LESSON XXIV.

At' jde,	<i>ăt' dě</i> ,	let him (her, it)	to je škoda,	<i>tă yě shko-lă</i> ,	that is a
		come, or go;			pity;
zůstanem,	<i>zoostānem</i> ,	we shall stay;	pohostění,	<i>pohostěñee</i> ,	hospi-
zůstaň,	<i>zoostāñ</i> ,	stay (thou);			tality;
ukaž,	<i>ükăsh</i> ,	show (thou), let see;	návštěva,	<i>náfsht'eva</i> ,	visit;
přijeti,	<i>prshī-yet</i> ,	to come (by rail-	často,	<i>chăstō</i> ,	often;
		way, etc);	bud' nebo,	<i>băd'...nebō</i> ,	either...or;
přijedem,	<i>prshī-yědem</i> ,	we shall	nemám co,	<i>nemám tsō</i> ,	I have no-
		come (by some conveyance);			thing (to....);

líví se mi, *leebee sě me*, I like it
(him, her); it pleases me;
bude se jim líbit, *bědě sě yim leebit*,
they will like it; it will please them;
bude jim milé, *bědě yim milé*, it will
please them;
doufám, *doúfám*, I hope;
v Chicago*), *fchicago*, in Chicago;

přijedou, *prshí-yědoú*, they will
come;
povídal jsem, *poveeděl sem*, I said,
slíbiti, *sleebit*, to promise;
tajiti, *tějít*, to hide;
ukrývati, *úkreevět*, to cover up;
nemůžem, *nemoožem*, we can not;

EXERCISES.

My zůstanem v Chicago, — pravil bratr; — pro nás je to dobré místo; — ukaž nám lepší! — Ať rodina jde sem, — a zůstaň zde s námi.

Já pravil: Vy máte zde pěkný dům; — líbí se mi u vás; — myslím že často přijedem k vám, —

We shall stay in Chicago, — said (my) brother: — for us it is a good place; — show (to) us a better one! — Let (your) family come here. — and stay here with us.

I said: You have here a nice house; — I like it here (i. e. at your house, with you, — u vás); — I think that we

*) If we insist upon declining **Chicago** like a Bohemian noun of the neutre gender (ending in *o*), we should say in the locative case; *v Chicagu*, *fchicagū*. However, this is rather an exception among the Bohemians in America, names of places of foreign origin being usually left unchanged, the same as in English. This may not exactly satisfy unyielding grammarians but it is a rule dictated by common sense, the inflection of such proper names being not only useless, but in many cases perfectly absurd, and often impossible. Hence we say: *do Milwaukee*, *v Milwaukee*, *za Milwaukee* (to Milwaukee, in M., beyond M.); *do Kewaunee*, *do Spring Valley*, *do Dubuque*, *do Des Moines*, etc. To attempt an inflection of such names, according to the rules of some declension of Bohemian nouns, would be an intolerable absurdity. The name of **Chicago**, indeed, yields easily to the Bohemian declension, and hence it is now and then declined, the same is true of some other names. There are also a few names of places well known throughout the world, which are always declined in Bohemian, presenting no difficulty to such a process; such are for instance: **New York**, — *v New Yorku*, *do New Yorku*, *za New Yorkem* (in New York, to N. Y., beyond N. Y.); **Boston**, — *v Bostonu*, *do Bostonu*, *za Bostonem*; **Washington**, *do Washingtonu*; and some others. — These names are masculine by force of their termination.

bud' já, nebo jeden z nás. — Ale zůstat s vámi nemůžem. — Náš domov je na venku.

Oni oba pravili: To je škoda!

Tázal jsem se jich, kdy přijedou k nám na návštěvu;— povídal jsem, že dáme jim také hezkou světnici; — že se jim bude líbit u nás, — jako se mně líbí u nich.

Slíbili přijeti na návštěvu. — Doufám že pohostění od nás bude milé jim, jako je milé mně od nich.

Ten den mluvil jsem s nimi dlouho; — nemám co tajiti před nimi; — nemáu co ukrývati. — Tak mluvili jsme, až nebylo už co mluvit.

Note. The personal pronouns **my, vy, oni** (ony f., ona, n.) show the following variation, which has already become somewhat familiar to the student from the preceding lessons :

my,	<i>me,</i>	we;	vy,	<i>ve,</i>	you;
nás,	<i>nás,</i>	us;	vás,	<i>vás,</i>	you;
nám,	<i>nám,</i>	to us;	vám,	<i>vám,</i>	to you;
s námi,	<i>snámi,</i>	with us;	s vámi,	<i>svámi,</i>	with you;
oni, (ony, ona,)	<i>ðní, (ðne, ðná),</i>	they;			
jich,	<i>yíkh,</i>		of them, them;		
jim,	<i>yím,</i>		to them;		
je,	<i>yě,</i>		them:		
v nich,	<i>vñíkh,</i>	in them, (o nich, about them; od nich,			
		from them; etc;)			
s nimi,	<i>sñíme,</i>	with them; (za nimi, behind or after			
		them, etc.)			

LESSON XXV.

Státi,	<i>státi</i> (<i>stát</i>), to stand; to	tisíc, m. <i>tiseets</i> , thousand;
	cost;	stát, m. <i>stát</i> , state;
stojí,	<i>stoyee</i> , stands; costs;	úcta, f. <i>ootstă</i> , respect;
stál,	<i>stál</i> , stood; cost;	rozprávka, f. <i>roz-práfkă</i> } talk, con-
mluví,	<i>mlüvce</i> , speaks;	hovor, m. <i>hōvor</i> , } hversation,
půjčil,	<i>püychil</i> , (colloquially : <i>püchil</i> , lent, loaned,	zoubek, m. <i>zoübek</i> , } little tooth;
snáší se,	<i>snáshee sě</i> , agrees;	něco, <i>ñetsō</i> , some;
smál se,	<i>smál sě</i> , he laughed;	než, <i>nesh</i> , than;
podívej se,	<i>pod'eerey sě</i> , look (thou):	rozen, a, o <i>rōzen</i> } born
podívejte se,	<i>pod'eeveytě sě</i> , look	narozen, a, o <i>närōzen</i> } born
	(you);	
sejde se,	<i>seydě sě</i> , (he, she, it) will	
	meet;	
		právě jako, <i>právyě yákō</i> , same as;
		nebyla u nás, <i>nebillă ünáss</i> , she was
		not at our house; she
		has not been to see us.

EXERCISES.

Můj bratr je posud mladý; — je mladší než já. — Já jsem o dvě leta starší než on.

Dům mého bratra stojí teprv rok; — stál pět tisíc*) dollarů; — sou sed půjčil něco peněz mému bratu.

On má rád mého bratra; — on mluví o mému bratu s úctou. — S mým bratrem každý se snáší dobře.

My brother is still young; — he is younger than I. — I am (by) two years older than he.

The house of my brother stands only a year; — it cost five thousand dollars:—the neighbor loaned some money to my brother.

He likes my brother: — he speaks of my brother with respect.— With my brother everybody agrees well

*) Jeden tisíc, *yeden tiseets*, one thousand; dva, *tři*, *čtyry tisíce*, *dvă*, *trshi*, *shtriri tiseetsé*, two, three, four thousand; pět tisíc, *pyět tiseets*, five thousand; šest tisíc, *shěst tiseets*, six thousand; and so forth,

Moje švagrová je ze státu Indiana*), — rozena v Terre Haute; — má žena je z Ohio.

Mojí švagrové) líbí se v Chicago tuze; — mé ženě líbí se více na venku.**

Rozprávka neb hovor s mojí švagrovou jest milý, — velmi milý, — právě jako s mojí ženou. — Nevím kdy sejde se s mou ženou zas; — nebyla u nás dávno.

Podívejte se na moje dítko, — má už zoubek! — pravila švagrová a smála se. — Hošík také smál se na mě. — To je mé dobré dítko! pravila matka.

Note 1. The so-called possessive pronoun **můj**, *můy* (my, mine), takes in the feminine gender the form **moje**, **má**, and in the neutre gender **moje**, **mé**. Hence we say: **můj bratr**, my brother; **moje sestra**, or **má sestra**, my sister; **moje dítě** or **mé dítě**, my child — The variation of this pronoun is shown in the following table:

můj , m.	<i>můy</i> ,	moje , f.	<i>moyě</i> ,	má ;	<i>má</i> ;	my, mine;
mého ,	<i>méhō</i> ;	mojí ,	<i>mé</i> ,	<i>moyee</i> ,	<i>mé</i> ;	of my;
mému ,	<i>mémū</i> ;	mojí ,	mé ,	“	“	to my;
v mému ,	<i>vmém</i> ;	v mojí ,	v mé ,	<i>v</i> “	<i>v</i> “	in my;
s mým ,	<i>smeem</i> ;	s mojí ,	s mou ,	<i>smoyee</i> ,	<i>smou</i> ,	with my;

*) Or **Indiany**. Se foot-note in Lesson XXIV.

) **Mojí švagrové, **mé ženě**, is the dative case, responding to the question **komu?** (to whom?) **Komu se líbí?** to whom is it pleasing? (whom does it please?) — **Líbí se mé švargové**; — **líbí se mé ženě**; — it pleases (to) my sister-in-law; it pleases (to) my wife.

My sister-in-law is from the state of Indiana, — born in Terre Haute; my wife is from Ohio.

My sister-in law likes it in Chicago very much: — my wife likes it more in the country.

A conversation or discourse with my sister-in-law is pleasant, — very pleasant,—the same as with my wife. —I don't know when she will meet (with) my wife again;— she has not been to see us a long time

Look at my baby,—he has already a tooth!— said my sister-in-law and laughed.—The little boy also smiled at me.—That is my good baby! said (his) mother.

The neutre gender **moje, mé**, shows in the other cases the same variation as the masculine **můj**, excepting the accusative (or objective) and the vocative case, which are like the nominative: **to je mé dítě**, this is my child; **vidím mé dítě**, I see my child; **ó mé dítě!** oh my child!

Note 2. The possessive pronoun *tvůj*, m., *twůy* (twoje or *tvá*, f., *twóyę*, *twá*; *tvoje* or *tvé*, n., *twé*., thy, thine, — agrees in its declension perfectly with *můj* (*moje*, *má*, *mé*).

The same is true of the possessive pronoun **svůj**, (**svoje**, **svá**, f.; **svoje**, **své**, n.), **svůj**, (**svůj**, **svá**, **své**), which means "one's own", but frequently stands for **můj**, **tvůj**, **jeho**, **její** (my, thy, his, her), **náš**, **váš**, **jich** (our, your, their).

Moji lidé,	<i>moye lidé,</i>	my folks;	radší jsem,	<i>ráchi sem,</i> I like better
půda, f.	<i>poodă,</i>	ground, soil;		to be;
krov, m.	<i>krof,</i>	roof;	nejradší jsem,	<i>nejráchi sem,</i> I like
příbuzný, á	<i>prshee-búznee,</i>	relative,		best to be;
		kinsman, relation;	nerad jsem,	<i>nerád sem,</i> I do not
vlastní,	<i>vlăst-nee,</i>	own;		like to be;
šťasten,	<i>shťăsten,</i>	happy:	sejdu se,	<i>seydă sě,</i> I meet;
nazpět,	<i>năspyět,</i>	back;	kolem sebe,	<i>kolem sěbě,</i> around me
spěchám,	<i>spyě-khám,</i>	I hasten, I		(him, her, us, etc.)
		hurry;		

EXERCISES.

Mí přátele*) v Chicagu všichni rádi mě viděli; — škoda že moji lidé nebyli se mnou.

Nerad jsem pryč od mých lidí; —
pokaždě spěchám nazpět k mým li-
děm.

Rád vidím své přátele; — rád se
sejdu se svými příbuznými — ale

My friends in Chicago all liked
(were glad) to see me; — it is a pity
that my folks were not with me.

I do not like to be away from my folks; — every time I hasten back to my folks.

I like to see my friends;—I like to meet (with) my relatives;—but I like

*) See foot-note in Lesson XXII.

radši jsem doma. — **Opravdu, nej-**
radši jsem doma s mými lidmi.

Nejradši vidím kolem sebe své
lidi. — **Jsem šťasten se svými lid-**
mi ve svém vlastním domově, — na
své vlastní půdě, — pod svým vlast-
ním krovem.

Ñote 2. The plural of **můj** m. **moje** or **má** f., and **moje** or **mé** n., is as follows : **moji**, **mí**, **moye**, **mee**, m
moje, **mé**, **moyě**, **mé**, f.
moje, **má**, **moyě**, **má**, n.

In common discourse **moje**, **mé** is used in the neutre as well as in the feminine gender. In English, we invariably employ *my* and *mine*.

In the plural number the following variation takes place :

moji, **mí**; **moje mé.** *moyi*, *mee*; *moyě*, *mé*; — **my**, **mine**;
mých, *meekh*, of my (**od mých**, from my; **v mých**, in my; etc.), of mine;
mým, *meem*, to my, to mine;
s mými, *smeeme*, with my, with mine; (**za mými**, after or behind mine, etc.)

The plural of **tvůj** m., **tvoje**, **tvá** f., **tvoje**, **tvé** n. (thy, thine) is perfectly analogous: **tvoji**, **tví** m., *twoji*, *twoee*; **tvoje**, **tvé** f. & n. *twoyě*, *twé* (thy, thine); **tvých**, *tweekh*, of thine; **tvým**, *tweem*, to thine; **s tvými**, *stweemi*, with thine.

LESSON XXVI.

Základ, m. *záklăd*, foundation;
kolik světnic, *kolik svyět-nits*, how
many rooms;
kuchyně, f. *kükhiňe*, kitchen
sklep, m. *sklep*, cellar

zahrada, f. *zăhrădă*, garden
zahrádka, f. *zăhrádka*, small garden
strom, m. *strom*, tree
stromy, pl. *stromy*, } trees
stromoví, n. *stromovée*, }

patro, n.	<i>pátrō</i> ,	story	ovoce, n.	<i>ovotsě</i> ,	fruit
studně, f.	<i>stüdñe</i> ,	well	ovocné,	<i>ovotsně</i> ,	fruit-bearing
cisterna, f.	<i>tsisternă</i> ,	cistern	nesou,	<i>nesoū</i> ,	they bear
altán, m.	<i>ältán</i> ,	bower	mrva, f.	<i>m'rvă</i> ,	manure
plot, m.	<i>plot</i> ,	fence	v letě,	<i>vlet'e</i> ,	in summer
docela,	<i>dotselă</i> ,	quite	v zimě,	<i>vzimyě</i> ,	in winter
úplně,	<i>oop'lnē</i> ,	perfectly	z jara,	<i>zyäră</i> ,	in the spring
dříve, <i>drshee-vě</i> (or <i>drsheev</i>)	<i>p'rvě</i> ,	be-	půda, f.	<i>poodă</i> ,	land
prve,		fore	akr, m.	<i>äk'rv</i> ,	acre
je-li pravda?	<i>yelli prăvdă</i>	isn't it	zbytek, m.	<i>zby-tek</i> ,	remainder
že ne?	<i>žě ně?</i>	so?	je, jest,	<i>yě</i> , <i>yest</i> ,	there is, there are;
			pouze,	<i>použě</i> ,	only.

EXERCISES.

Váš dům je nový, je-li pravda?

Ano, náš dům je docela nový.

Základ našeho domu je dobrý.

Ten velký lot patří k vašemu domu, že ne?

Ten lot patří k našemu domu; — je to zbytek akru půdy co jsme měli dříve.

Co je ve vašem domě? kolik světnic máte?

V našem domě je kuchyně, pět světnic a dobrý sklep, — studený v letě, teplý v zimě.

Doufám že jste spokojeni s vaším domem (or se svým domem).

Ano, jsme úplně spokojeni s naším domem.

Váš dům má dvě patra, že ne?

Ne; pouze jedno patro.

Your house is new, isn't it?

Yes, our house is quite new.

The foundation of our house is good.

That large lot belongs to your house, does it not?

That lot belongs to our house; — it is a remainder of the acre of land (what) we had before.

What is in your house? how many rooms have you?

In our house there is a kitchen, five rooms and a good cellar; — cold in summer, warm in winter.

I hope that you are satisfied with your house.

Yes, we are perfectly satisfied with our house.

Your house has two stories, hasn't it?

No; only one story.

Myslím že máte u vašeho domu malou zahradu a za vaším domem studni, též cisternu.

Ano, naše místo je pěkné; — na naší zahradě máme altán; — kolem naší zahrady je vysoký plot. — Je to příjemná zahrádka.

Naši lidé mají rádi stromoví*). — Naše stromy jsou ovocné. — Z jara dáváme**) mrvu k našim ovocným stromům. — Rád sedám**) s našimi lidmi ve stínu našich stromů.

Note 1. The possessive pronoun **náš**, (**naše**, f. and n.) shows the following variation:

(*Masculine and neutre gender.*)

náš , m. naše , n	<i>násh</i> , <i>náshě</i> ,	our, (ours),
našeho ,	<i>náshěhō</i> ,	of our; our (in the accus. or objective case);
našemu ,	<i>náshěmū</i> ,	to our;
v našem ,	<i>vnáshěm</i> ,	in our, (o našem , about our; etc);

(*Feminine gender.*)

naše ,	<i>náshě</i> ,	our, ours;
naši ,	<i>náshī</i> ,	our (in the accus. or objective case);
naší ,	<i>náshēe</i> ,	of our, to our; (v naši , in our; s naši , with our; etc.)

*) **Stromoví**, *stromovée*, is a collective noun and means trees (**stromy**) in general.

) **Dáti, *dáti*, to give: **dávati**, *dávātī*, to give repeatedly, to use to give; **dáváme**, *dávámē*, we use to give; we are giving. See Lesson XIII, Note 5. — **Seděti**, *sedětī*, to sit; **sedatī**, *sedātī*, to sit repeatedly, to use to sit; **sedám**, I use to sit.

I think that you have by your house a small garden and back of your house a well, also a cistern.

Yes, our place is nice; — in our garden we have a bower; — around our garden there is a high fence. — It is a pleasant little garden.

Our folks like trees. — Our trees are fruit-bearing. — In the spring we put manure to our fruit-trees. — I like to sit with our folks in the shadow of our trees.

(*Plural of all genders.*)

naši, m. **naše**, f. & n. *năshī*, *năshă*, our, ours;

našich, *năshikh*, of our; (**v našich**, in our; etc.)

našim, *năshim*, to our;

s našimi, *snăshimi*, with our: (**za našimi**, beyond or back of our; etc.)

Note 2. The pronoun **váš** (**vaše**, f. and n.) is perfectly analogous with **náš** in its declension. (Instrumental case m. & n. gender singular, omitted above: **s naším**, **s vaším**, *snăsheem*, *svăsheem*, with ours, with yours.)

The English words *their* and *theirs* are both expressed by **jich**, — in common discourse nearly always **jejich**; *yikh*, *yęyikh*. This is in fact the genitive of the personal pronoun **oni** (**ony**, **ona**), *they*, and naturally remains unchanged. For instance:

Jich dům, jich domy, or **jejich dům, jejich domy**; *yikh dům, dōmi*; *yęyikh dům, dōmi*; their house, their houses.

Ten dům jest jejich, ten dům yest yęyikh, that house is theirs. — **Ty domy jsou jejich, ty dōmi soū yęyikh**, those houses are theirs.

LESSON XXVII.

The student is already somewhat acquainted with the indicative pronouns **ten**, **ta**, **to**, this or that; plural: **ti**, **ty**, **ta**, **tī**, **ty**, **tă**, these or those (in common discourse **ty** for all genders). Hence, in a short practical review of their variations he will only meet old acquaintances.

Lidé ,	<i>lidé</i> {	people	kuželna ,	<i>kūželnă</i> , bowling-alley;
lidi ,	<i>lidī</i> {		zábava ,	<i>zábavă</i> , amusement;
stavěti ,	<i>stăvyět</i> ,	to build	bydlí ,	<i>bidlee</i> , lives; they live;
stavení ,	<i>stăvěñee</i> ,	building	co bydlí ,	<i>tsō bidlee</i> , who lives (lit. what lives);
zděný dům ,	<i>zděnēe dům</i> {	brick	nic nechybí ,	<i>ñits někhibee</i> , nothing
cihelný dům ,	<i>tsihelnee dům</i> {	house		is wanting;
střecha ,	<i>strshă-khă</i> ,	roof		

šindel, *shindell*, shingle
 učitel, *účhitell*, teacher
 pokojný, á, é, *pøkoynee*, quiet
 prázny, á, é, *práznee*, vacant
 jistě, *yistë*, surely, certainly;

může, *moožë*, can, may;
 býti za dobré, *beef'i zá dobré*, to be
 on good terms;
 na pravo, *ná právø*, to the right;
 na levo, *ná lëvø*, to the left.

EXERCISES.

Ten dům je věru pěkný; — je to zděný dům.

Střecha toho domu je ze šindele, není?

Myslím že je. — Nic nechybí tomu domu; — jest příjemno bydleti v tom domě; — s tím domem každý může býti spokojen.

That house is indeed nice; -- it is a brick house.

The roof of that house is of shingle (i. e. covered with shingles), is it not?

I think it is.— Nothing is wanting to that house; -- it is agreeable to live in that house;—with that house everybody can be satisfied.

Ta zahrada má velkou cenu. — V té zahradě je mnoho ovoceňho stromoví.

Tu zahradu mám radši než park. — Máme také kuželmu v té zahradě, pro naši (or pro svou) zábavu.

To místo s tím stavením a s touto zahradou má vysokou cenu.

That garden has a large value. — In that garden there are many fruit-trees.

That garden I like better than a park.— We have also a bowling-alley in that garden, for our amusement.

That place with the building and garden has a high value.

Ti lidé co bydlí vedle nás, jsou pokojní sousedé; — žádný z těch lidí nemí zlý; — se všemi těmi lidmi jsme za dobré.

Viděl jsem doktora jít k těm lidem na pravo od nás; — jistě někdo je nemoceu.

The people who live next to us, are quiet neighbors; — nobody (not one) of those people is bad;—with all those people we are on good terms.

I saw the doctor go to those people to the right of us;—surely somebody is sick.

Kdo jsou ti lidé na levo? — Na levo od nás bydlí učitel, pan Stanton, se svou (i. e. s jeho) rodinou.

Ty loty za námi jsou prázdné; — ale budou prý stavět na těch lotech.

Kolik těch lotů je? — Myslím že je šest těch lotů.

Who are those people to the left?
— To the left of us lives a teacher, Mr. Stanton, with his family.

Those lots back of us are vacant, — but, it is said, they will build on those lots.

How many of those lots are there?
— I think that there are six of those lots.

Note 1. The variation of the indicative pronouns employed in the foregoing is shown to be as follows :

ten, m. to, n. těn, tō, this, that;
toho, *tōhō*, of this, of that;
tomu, *tōmū*, to this, to that;
vtom, *ftōm*, in this, in that;
(o tom, about that; etc.).
s tím, *sťeem*, with this, with
that; **(za tím,** beyond that; etc.

ta, f. *tă*, this, that;
tu, *tă*, this, that (accus.
or objec. case);
té, *té*, to this, to that; **v té,** in
that; **o té,** about that, etc.
s tou, *stoū*, with this, with that;
za tou, behind that; etc.

Plural:

ti, ty, ta, these, those;
těch, *těkh*, of those; **v těch,**
ftěkh, in those; etc.
těm, *těm*, to those;
s těmi, *sťemi*, with those;
za těmi, behind those; etc.

These indicative pronouns often occur in a compound form: **tento, tato, toto**, always meaning "this one"; in the plural: **tito, tyto, tato, "these ones".** Their inflection remains the same, with the suffix **to** attached to the original pronoun in every case: **tohoto**, to this one; **tomuto**, of this one; and so forth.

Note 2. The numeral **jeden** (f. and n. **jedna, jedno**), *yěden*, *yědná*, *yědnō*, one, — agrees perfectly with **ten, (ta, to)** in its inflection:

jeden člověk tam byl, one man was there;

viděl jsem jen jednoho (accus. or objective case) I saw only one;

dal jsem to jednomu z nich (*z nich*)), I gave it to one of them;

v jednom z nich se mejlím*), in one of them I am mistaken;

šel jsem s jedním z nich, I went with one of them.

Jedna žena je zde, one woman is here; — **vidím jednu ženu**, I see one woman; — **mám to od jedné z nich**, I have it from one of them (f.); — **mluvil jsem s jednou**, I spoke with one (f.).

LESSON XXVIII.

Sem, *sěm*, hither, here;
sám, *sám*, alone;
čekáte, *čekátič*, you expect, you
 await (or you wait);
nečekám, *nečekám*, I do not ex-
 pect;
že přijde, *žě prshiy-dě*, that he will
 (or would) come;
na ulici, *nă ulitsi*, on the street,
že jste? *žě stě?* you say you are?
že s nikým? *žě s níkeem*, (literally:
 that with nobody?) you
 say with nobody?

lék, m. *lék*, medicine;
lahev, f. *lăhev*, bottle;
v láhvi, *vlăh-vi*, in the bottle;
dávka, s. *dáfkă*, dose;
po dávkách, *pō dáfkákh*, in doses;
nastuzen, *năstăzen*, having a cold;
jste nastuzen, *stě năstăzen*, you have
 a cold;
nastuzení, n. *năstăzeñee*, a cold;
kašel, m. *kăshell*, cough;
dáti vinu, *dăti vină*, to charge to;
 to blame (for);
mysliti, *myslit'i*, to think;

*) **Mejliti se, myliti se, meylit sě, meelit sě**, to be mistaken; **mejlím se, meyleem sě**, I am mistaken. — **Zmejliti se, zmýliti se, zmeylit sě, zmeeilit sě**, to make a mistake; **zmejlil jsem se, zmeylil sem sě**, I made a mistake.

neotevru. *něo-tev-rů,* I shall not open;
jindy, *yindý,* before; at other times;
tohle, *tôhlě,* this here:

mazati se, *măzătî sě,* to rub oneself;
užívat, *užeevăt,* to take medicine, 'otherwise: to use);
mazat se, *măzăt sě,* to rub one's self.

EXERCISES.

Myslím že někdo jde sem; — kdo je to?

Nevím; — koho čekáte?

Nečekám nikoho; — dnes chci být sám; nechci viděti nikoho.

Komu poslal jste to pozvání? — Nikomu.

O kom myslil jste včera, že přijde? — O nikom.

S kým mluvil jste dnes ráno na ulici? — S nikým.

Že s nikým? — Vy se mejlíte. — Viděl jsem vás státi s někým na ulici.

Pravda; ale dnes nečekám nikoho. — Je někdo zde; opravdu?

I ne; žádný tu není. — Nevidím žádného a neotevru žádnému. — Já vím, že dnes nechcete mluvit se žádným.

I think that somebody is coming here; who is it?

I do not know; — whom do you expect?

I do not expect anybody; — today I want to be alone; — I do not want to see anybody.

To whom did you send that invitation? — To nobody.

Of whom did you think yesterday, that he would come? — Of nobody.

With whom did you speak this morning on the street? — With nobody.

You say, with nobody? — You are mistaken. — I saw you standing with somebody on the street.

That is true; but to day I do not expect anybody. — Is somebody here, really?

O no; nobody is here. — I do not see anybody, and I shall not open to anybody. — I know that to-day you do not want to speak with anybody.

Zde něco máte; — co to je?	Here you have something;—what is it?
To je lék.	That is medicine.
Jste nemocen?	Are you sick?
Mám nastuzení a zlý kašel.	I have a cold and a bad cough.
Že jste nastuzen? — od čeho to je?	You say you have a cold?—what is it from?
Nevím čemu dáti vinu.	I do not know, to what I should charge it.
K čemu je ten lék?	What is that medicine for?
Budu ho užívat po dávkách.	I shall take it in doses.
A co je v tom? — V čem? — V té malé lahvi. — To je liniment.	And what is in that?—In what?—In that small bottle. — That is a liniment.
Co s tím budete dělat? — S čím?	What will you do with that? —
S tím linimentem.	With what?—With that liniment.
Tím se budu mazat.	With that I shall rub myself.
Čím jste se jindy mazal? — Ničím.	With what did you rub yourself before?—With nothing.

Note. The student is, by this time, quite familiar with the interrogative pronouns **kdo**, **co**, *gdő*, *tső*, (who, what). This lesson is designed simply to serve as a review of their variation, already shown in Note 5, Lesson XVIII.

Kdo , co ,	<i>gdő</i> , <i>tső</i> ,	who, what;
koho , čeho ,	<i>kőhő</i> , <i>chěhő</i> ,	whose, whom; of what; od koho , (čeho), from whom (what);
komu , čemu ,	<i>kőmű</i> , <i>chěmű</i> ,	to whom, to what; k čemu , <i>kehěmű</i> , what for;
v kom , v čem ,	<i>fkom</i> , <i>fchem</i> ,	in whom, in what; o kom , o čem , about whom (what); etc.
kým , čím ,	<i>keem</i> , <i>cheem</i> ,	by whom, by what; s kým , s čím , with whom, with what,

LESSON XXIX.

Číslo, n.	<i>cheeslō</i> ,	number;	zdálo se,	<i>zdálō sě</i> ,	it seemed;
pověra, -f.	<i>povyērā</i> ,	superstition;	stěhovat se,	<i>stěhovāt sě</i> ,	to move;
u stolu,	<i>u stolū</i> ,	at (or by) the table;	vystěhovat se,	<i>vy-stěhovāt sě</i> ,	to emi-
roku,	<i>rōkū</i> ,	in the year;			grate;
po roce,	<i>pō rotsě</i> ,	after a year;	přestěhovat se,	<i>prshē-stěhovāt sě</i> ,	to
		in a year;			remove;
všecko,	<i>fshētsko</i> ,	everything, all;	usadit se,	<i>ušād'it sě</i> ,	to settle;
nynější,	<i>nyñeyshē</i> ,	present;	odtud	<i>otūd</i>	} from here,
sousední,	<i>soúsedñee</i> ,	neighboring;	odsud,	<i>otsūd</i>	} from there;
společně,	<i>spolechñe</i> ,	jointly,	odtamtuď,	<i>otāmtūd</i> ,	from there;
		together;	kolik je,	<i>kōlik yě</i> ,	how many
přes,	<i>prshēs</i> ,	over;			are; how much is;
před,	<i>prshēd</i> ,	before, ago;	vám je,	<i>vám yě</i> ,	you are;
teda,	<i>tēdā</i> ,	therefore;	že je,	<i>žē yě</i> ,	(that) there is,
o to více,	<i>o tō veetsě</i> .	so much more;			(that) there were;
pouhý, á, é,	<i>poúhee</i> ,	pure, mere;	to prý je,	<i>tō pree yě</i> ,	that is said
nešťastný, á, é	<i>něshťastnee</i> ,	un-			to be.
		lucky, unfortunate;			

Jedenáct,	<i>yědenátst,</i>	eleven	čtyrycet,	<i>shtíritset,</i>	forty
dvanáct,	<i>dwěnátst,</i>	twelve	padesát,	<i>păděsát,</i>	fifty
třináct,	<i>tršinátst,</i>	thirteen	šedesát,	<i>shěděsát,</i>	sixty
čtrnáct,	<i>sht[े]rnátst,</i>	fourteen	sedmadesát,	<i>seděmděsát,</i>	seventy
patnáct,	<i>pătnátst,</i>	fifteen	osmadesát,	<i>osěmděsát,</i>	eighty
šestnáct,	<i>shěstnátst.</i>	sixteen	devadesát,	<i>děvěděsát,</i>	ninety
sedmnáct,	<i>seděmnátst,</i>	seventeen	sto jeden,	<i>stō yěden,</i>	one hundred
osmnáct,	<i>osěmnátst,</i>	eighteen			and one

devatenáct, *děvětadváct*, nineteen
dvacet, *dvacet*, twenty
dvacet jeden, *dvacet yeden*, twenty
dvacet dva, *dvacet dvě*, twenty two
třicet, *trhátset*, thirty
třicet jeden, *trhátset yeden*, thirty
třicet dva, *trhátset dvě*, thirty two

sto dva, *sto dvě*, one hundred
and one
sto dvacet, *sto dvacet*, one hundred
and twenty
dvě stě, *dwyě stě*, two hundred
tři sta, *trhi stá*, three hundred
čtyry sta, *shtiri stá*, four hundred
pět set, *pyět set*, five hundred
šest set, *shest set*, six hundred; etc.

tisíc, *tiseets*, a thousand
tisíc jedno sto, *tiseets yednō sto*, one thousand one hundred;
tisíc pět set, *tiseets pyět set*, one thousand five hundred;
dva tisíce, *dvě tiseetsě*, two thousand;
tři tisíce, *trhi tiseetsě*, three thousand;
čtyry tisíce, *shtiri tiseetsě*, four thousand;
pět tisíc, *pyět tiseets*, five thousand; etc.
tisíc osm set devadesát, *tiseets osüm set děvěděsát*, one thousand eight hundred and ninety;
milion, *milliōn*, a million;
dva miliony, *dvě miliony*, two millions;
tři miliony, *trhi miliony*, three millions;

čtyry miliony, *shtiri miliony*, four millions;
pět milionů, *pyět milionoo*, five millions;
šest milionů, *shest milionoo*, six millions; etc.

—
Jednotka, *yědnotkă*, a unit;
dvojka, *dwoykă*, a two; the figure two;
trojka, *troykă*, a three;
čtyrka, čtverka, *shtirkă, shtverka*, a four;
pětka, *pyělkă*, a five;
desítka, *dě-seetkă*, a ten;
dvacítka, *dvětseetkă*, a twenty;
třicítka, *trhátseetkă*, a thirty;
čtyrycítka, *shtiritseetkă*, a forty;
padesátka, *păděsatkă*, a fifty; etc.
stovka, *stofkă*, a hundred;
tisícovka, *tiseetsofkă*, a thousand.

EXERCISES.

Kolik je nás u stolu? — Je nás dvanáct. — To je dobré; já myslí že je nás třináct a to prý je něštastné číslo.

I, to je pouhá pověra!

Kolik akrů má vaše farma? — Sto šedesát akrů. — A farma vaše-ho otce? — Otec má tři čtyrycítky; já mám o čtyrycet akrů více.

Moje farma stála o tisíc dollarů více, nežli farma otcova.

Oba máte dobré farmy; — obě farmy jsou dobré. — To jsou dvě pěkné farmy.

Jaká je asi nynější cena těch dvou farem? — Asi devět tisíc dolarů.

Nám dvoum*) také patří osmdesátka lesa v sousedním townshipu.

Vám oboum*)? — Ano, nám dvoum*) společně.

Kdy jste se tu usadili?

Otec usadil se tu před čtyrmi lety; — já též; strýc před dvouma*) nebo třemi lety.

How many are we at the table? — There are twelve of us. — That is right; I thought there were thirteen of us, and that is said to be an unlucky number.

O, that is a mere superstition.

How many acres has your farm? — One hundred and sixty acres. — And the farm of your father? — Father has three forties; I have forty acres more.

My farm cost one thousand dollars more than my father's farm.

Both of you have good farms; — both farms are good. — Those are two nice farms.

What is about the present price of those two farms? — About nine thousand dollars.

To us two also belongs an eighty of forest in the neighboring township.

To both of you? — Yes, to us two jointly.

When did you settle here?

Father settled here four years ago; — I also; uncle two or three years ago.

*) In ordinary discourse always : **dvoum, oboum, dwořm, obořm**, to the two, to both; **před dvouma, před obouma, prshěd dwořmā, prshěd obořmā**, before two, before both. — The precise grammatical form is: **dvěma, oběma, dwyřmā, obyřmā; před dvěma, před oběma**.

Čím třem zdálo se, že musíme bydleti pohromadě.

My vystěhovali se z Evropy²⁾ do Ameriky²⁾, — usadili se v Ohio, — po roce přistěhovali jsme se do státu Illinois, odtud po dvou nebo třech letech do Nebrasky²⁾, a odtud po pěti letech do Kansasu.

Kdy jste narozen? — Roku tisíc osm set padesát dva. — Teda je vám třicet osm let.

Jak starý je váš otec? — Můj otec je přes šedesát; můj strýc je skoro sedmdesát let stár; — je o pět let starší než můj otec.

Já jsem jen o rok starší než má sestra a o tři leta starší než můj bratr.

To us three it seemed that we must live together.

We emigrated from Europe to America, — settled in Ohio, — after a year we removed to the state of Illinois, from there after two or three years to Nebraska, and from there after five years to Kansas.

When were you ("are you") born? — In the year one thousand eight hundred fifty two. — Then you are thirty eight years.

How old is your father? — My father is over sixty; — my uncle is nearly seventy years old; — he is five years older than my father.

I am only one year older than my sister and three years older than my brother.

Note 1. We have seen that the numeral **jeden** is declined (Note 2, Lesson XXVII). The same is true of the numerals **dva**, **tři**, **čtyry** and **oba**. The feminine and neutre gender of **dva** and **oba** is **dvě**, **obě**; but the inflected cases are the same in all three genders. **Čtyry** is used in the feminine and neutre gender, and in connection with *inanimate* nouns of the masculine gender: **čtyry ženy**, **čtyry děti**, **čtyry domy** (four women, four children, four houses); whereas the masculine inanimate use **čtyři**; for instance: **čtyři muži**, **čtyři hoši** (four men, four boys). Colloquially, however, **čtyry** is used without any discrimination.

2) **Evropa**, **Amerika**, **ěvropă**, **amerikă**; **z Evropy do Ameriky**, **zěvropy dō āmeriky**, from Europe to America. **Nebraska**, **do Nebrasky**, to Nebraska. **Kansas**, **do Kansasu**, to Kansas. — **Evropa**, **Amerika**, **Nebraska**, are feminine, **Kansas** is masculine, by reason of their termination. See also foot-note in Lesson XXIV.

The variation of these numerals is set forth in the following exposé.

dva, oba m., dvě, obě, (f. & n.) *dwǎ, obǎ, dwyě, obyě*, two, both;
dvou, obou, *dwoǔ, oboǔ*, of two, of both;
dvěma, oběma, (colloq. dvoum, oboum), *dwýěmǎ, obýěmǎ, (dwoǔm, oboǔm)*,
 to two, to both; **se dvěma, s oběma, (se dvouma,** *se dvěma, s oběma, (se dvouma,*
s obouma) with two, with both; etc.

tři, čtyři (čtyry), *trshǐ, stirshǐ (shǐrǐ)*, three, four;
tří, třech; čtyr, čtyrech; *trshee, trskek, shtir, shtirek;* of three, of
 four; **ve třech, ve čtyrech,** in three, in four; etc.
třem, čtyrem, *trshem, shtirem*, to three, to four;
se třemi, se čtyrmi, *sě trshěmi, sě shtirmi* (colloq. **se třema, se čtyrma,**
 with three, with four.

Note 2. The adverbial numerals *once, twice, three times, four times, etc.*, are formed in Bohemian by adding the suffix **krát** to the cardinal number: **jedenkrát, dvakrát, třikrát, čtyrykrát, etc.**

In place of **jedenkrát, yědenkrát**, (once), the shorter form **jednou, yědnoǔ**, is generally employed:

Kolikrát jste tam byl? how many times have you been there? —
Jen jednou; only once.

Kolikrát se to stalo? how many times has it happened? — **Myslím že dvakrát;** I think (that) twice.

Note 3. The ordinal numbers are as follows:

první,	<i>p^{er}rvěe,</i>	first	šestý,	<i>shěstee,</i>	sixth
druhý,	<i>drūhee,</i>	second	sedmý;	<i>sedmee,</i>	seventh
třetí,	<i>trshětēe,</i>	third	osmý,	<i>osmee,</i>	eighth
čtvrtý,	<i>shtv^{er}tēe,</i>	fourth	devátý,	<i>děvátee,</i>	ninth
pátý,	<i>pátee,</i>	fifth	desátý,	<i>dessátee,</i>	tenth

From eleven to nineteen they are formed by appending **ý** to the cardinal number (corresponding with the English *th*): **jedenáctý, yedenáctstee**, eleventh; etc.

Dvacet, třicet, čtyryceet have **dvacátý, třicátý, čtyrycátý, dvátsáty, trshitsátee, shtritsátee** (twentieth, thirtieth, fourtieth). The rest of the tens are regular: **padesátý, păděsátee**, fiftieth, etc. — **Stý, stee**, one hundredth; **tisící, tiseetsee**, one thousandth.

Dvacátý první, twenty first; **dvacátý druhý**, twenty second; etc. Both tens and units take the ordinal form.

There is also a distinction of gender, the feminine terminating in **á** and the neutre in **é** (in place of the masculine **ý**), corresponding exactly with the adjectives: **dobrý, á, é** (see Note 2, Lesson VI).

Hence we say: **druhý muž, druhá žena, druhé dítě**, the second man, the second woman, the second child;

The plural form **druzí, druhé, druzeetee, druhé**, means “the others”.

První, třetí, have the same termination in every gender, like adjectives ending in **í**. (See Note 1, Lesson XXI.)

Ordinal numbers are declined like adjectives of a corresponding termination: **prvního muže**, of the first man; **druhého dne**, of the second day (or: on the next day); **druhé ženy**, of the second woman (or wife); **druhého dítěte**, of the second child; **druhému**, to the second; **v druhém**, in the second; **s druhým**, with the second.

Note 4. The adverbs formed from cardinal numbers by means of the suffix **fold**, denoting multiplication, are in Bohemian called special numerals and formed as follows:

dvojí,	<i>dwoyee,</i>	twofold	paterý,	<i>pătřree,</i>	fivefold
trojí,	<i>troyee,</i>	threefold	šesteryý,	<i>shěstřree,</i>	sixfold
čtverý,	<i>shtrvřree,</i>	fourfold	sedmerý,	<i>sedměree,</i>	sevenfold;

and so forth, always appending **erý** to the cardinal number (in the feminine gender **erá**, in the neutre **eré**).

From these there is derived a distinct class of multiplicative numerals by changing **erý** into **ero** and appending **násobný** (which in English also means *fold*), only the first three forming an exception:

dvojnásobný,	<i>dwoy-násobnee,</i>	twofold (double);
trojnásobný,	<i>troy-násobnee,</i>	threefold (treble);
čtvernásobný,	<i>shwer-násobnee,</i>	fourfold (quadruple);
pateronásobný,	<i>páterö-násobnee,</i>	fivefold (quintuple): etc.

LESSON XXX.

Všecek,	<i>fshětsek</i> , m.	all, whole)	silný,	<i>silnee,</i>	strong
všecka,	<i>fshětskă</i> , f.		silně,	<i>silñe,</i>	strongly
všecko, vše,	<i>fshětsko, fshě</i> , n.		silněji,	<i>silñeyi,</i>	more strongly
prodej, m.	<i>proděy,</i>		nejsilněji,	<i>neysilñeyi,</i>	most strongly
výprodej, m.	<i>veeproděy,</i>	sale	pěkně,	<i>pyékñe,</i>	nicely
zásoba, f.	<i>zásobă,</i>	stock	hluboký,	<i>hlubokee,</i>	deep
látka, f.	<i>látkă,</i>	stuff	hluboko,	<i>hlübökö</i>	deeply
látka na šaty,	<i>látkă nă shăte,</i>	dress- goods;	hluboce,	<i>hlübotsë</i>	
známka, f.	<i>známkă,</i>	label	velice,	<i>vělitsë,</i>	greatly
kupec, m.	<i>küpets,</i>	buyer, purchaser, (<i>kupci</i> , pl. <i>küpsti</i>)	hezký,	<i>hesskee,</i>	nice, pretty, fine;
odkupník, m.	<i>odküpñeek,</i>	customer	hezky,	<i>hesske,</i>	nicely, prettily, finely
věc, f.	<i>vyěts,</i>	thing, article;	český,	<i>chesskee,</i>	Bohemian
výdělek, m.	<i>veed'elek,</i>	profit	česky, (adv.),	<i>chesske,</i>	"
vůle, f.	<i>voolě,</i>	will	po česku,	<i>pø chesskū,</i>	in Bohemian
základ, m.	<i>záklăd,</i>	foundation	anglicky, (adv.),	<i>ănglitske,</i>	English
základní,	<i>záklădñee,</i>	fundamental	francouzsky,	<i>frántsouške,</i>	French
kámen, m.	<i>kámen,</i>	stone	španělsky,	<i>shpăñelski,</i>	Spanish
zármutek, m	<i>zármütek,</i>	sorrow	německy,	<i>ñemetske,</i>	German
			pozdě,	<i>pozd'e,</i>	late
			později,	<i>pozd'eyi,</i>	later

psati, *psát'i, psát*, to write
 učiti se, *účit sě*, to learn
 vyprodán, a, o, *veprodán*, ě, õ, sold
 kladli jsme, *klădli smě*, we were
 položili jsme, *položili smě*, we lad;

dal jsem, *áǎl sěm*, I gave, I put;
 ručím (za), *rúcheem* I warrant;
 dojat, *doyát*, moved
 trápilo*), *trápilō*, it grieved
 zbylo*), *zbylō*, remained, was left
 zemřel, *zemrshel*, died
 vál, *vál*, blew

EXERCISES.

Měl jsem výprodej. — Můj krám je všecek vyprodán; — všecka zásoba je vyprodána; — prodal jsem všecko zboží lacino. — Vyprodal jsem všecko za hotové.

Ze všeho zboží zbylo jen něco látky na šaty.

Ke všemu zboží dal jsem ceny; — známky byly na všem. — Jsem teď hotov se vším.

Všichni kupci, doufám, budou spokojeni; — všecky věci byly dobré; — na všech věcech měl jsem jen malý výdělek.

Všem svým odkupníkům ručím za zboží; — chci mít se všemi dobrou vůli.

I had a selling out. — My store is all sold out; — the whole stock is sold out; — I sold all goods cheaply. — I sold out every thing for cash.

Of all the goods there only remained some dress goods.

To all the goods I put (i. e. attached) prices; — labels were on every thing. — I have now done with every thing.

All the buyers, I hope, will be satisfied; — all articles were good; — on all articles I had only a small profit.

To all my customers I warrant my goods; — I want to have with all a good will.

*) **Trápiti**, *trápit'i* (*trápit*), to grieve, to trouble, to torment: **trápil**, a, o, (he, she, it) grieved, troubled, etc.

Zbýti, *zbeet'i* (*zbeet*), to remain, to be left; **zbyl**, a, o, (he, she, it) remained, was left; **zbylo**, there remained. — See Note 2, Lesson IX.

Dnes je hezký den. — **Ano, dnes je hezky;** — slunce svítí hezky.

Doufám že zítra bude také pěkný den a že slunce bude pěkně svítit.

Včera byl silný vítr. — **Ráno vítr vál silně, odpoledne ještě silněji a nejsilněji k večeru.**

Váš dům má hluboký základ. — **Ano, položili jsme základy hluboko.**

Když jsme kladli základní kámen, náš hošák zemřel a byl jsme hluboce dojat.

Byl to veliký zármutek; — trápilo nás to velice.

Kolik let mu bylo?*) — Bylo mu dvanáct let.

Mluvil anglicky i česky, — také psal po anglicku i po česku.

Později chtěl učiti se též francouzsky, španělsky i německy, — aspoň čísti a psáti trochu.

Note 1. *Grammarians call všecek (all) an indefinite numeral; it also takes the form of všechen or všecken (feminine, všechna, všeckna, neutre, všechno, všeckno).* The plural is všickni, všecky, všecka, všitskni, vshětski, vshětskă. In common discourse všecky or všeci is used in the plural in all three genders.

To-day is a fine day.—Yes, 'o-day it is nice;—the sun is shining nicely.

I hope that to-morrow will be also a nice day, and that the sun will shine nicely.

Yesterday there was a strong wind. — In the morning the wind blew strongly, in the afternoon more strongly yet, and most strongly toward evening.

Your house has a deep foundation.—Yes, we laid the foundations deep.

When we were laying the foundation stone, our little boy died, and I was deeply moved.

It was a great sorrow;— it grieved us greatly.

How old was he?—He was twelve years

He spoke English and Bohemian.—He also wrote in English and in Bohemian.

Later he wanted to learn also French, Spanish and German, — at least to read and write a little.

*) **Kolik let mu bylo?** (*literally: how many years was it to him?*) the same as: **jak byl star?** how old was he? **Bylo mu,** the same as **byl,** he was.

This numeral is also declined and presents the following variation of form :

Singular :

všeho, m. & n. *fshěhō*, (**vší**, f. *fshee*) of all (of the whole, of everything); **všemu**, *fshěmū*; to all; **ve všem**, *vě fshěm*, in all; **se vším**, *sě fsheem*, with all.

Plural :

všech, *fshěkh*, of all; **ve všech**, *vě fshěkh*, in all; **všem**, *fshěm*, to all; **se všemi**, *sě fshěmi* with all.

Note 2. Adverbs (qualifying verbs) are often derived from adjectives, qualifying nouns. This rule obtains in Bohemian as well as in English.

Such adverbs are formed in English by adding *ly* to the adjective : *strong*, *strongly*; *nice* *nicely*. In Bohemian, the terminal *ý* of the adjective is changed into an *ě* :

silný, silně; pěkný, pěkně.

In some cases, however, the final *ý* changes into an *o*, or the final syllable *ký* into *ce*: **hluboký**, *hluboko*, *hluboce*, *deep*, *deeply*; **veliký**, *velice*, *great*, *greatly*. In a few cases the formation of adverbs is wholly irregular : **dobrý**, *good*; **dobře**, *well*.

Sometimes the long *ý* simply changes into a short *y* : **hezký**, *hezky*, *nice*, *nicely*. This is generally the case, when the adjective is derived from the name of a nation : **anglický národ**, *the English nation*; **mluvím anglicky**, *I speak English*;—**český jazyk**, *the Bohemian tongue*; **mluvím česky**, *I speak Bohemian*. In these cases we can also use the form: **po anglicku**, **po česku**.

In common discourse, the distinction between such adjectives and adverbs as **hezký** — **hezky**, **český** — **česky**, etc., is obliterated, their pronunciation being the same.

Note 3. Many adverbs of quality have a comparison, like adjectives, in order to express various degrees of quality. In regular com-

parison, the second degree is formed by adding **ji** to the adverb, and the third degree by prefixing **nej** to the second degree: **silně**, *strongly*; **silněji**, *more strongly*; **nejsilněji**, *most strongly*. Some adverbs have an irregular comparison, which must be learned and remembered. The following are mostly in use :

dobře, *dobrshě*, well; **lépe**, *lépě*, better; **nejlépe**, *neylépě*, best; **líp**, *leep*, “ ; **nejlíp**, *neyleep*, “ ;

zle, *zle*, bad!y; **hůře**, *hoorshě*, worse; **nejhůře**, *neyhoorshě*, worst; **hůř**, *hoorsh*, “ ; **nejhůř**, *neyhoorsh*, “ ;

brzo, *b^{er}zō*, soon; **dříve**, *drsheevě*, sooner; **nejdříve**, *neydrsheevě*, soonest; **dřív**, *drsheef*, “ ; **nejdřív**, *neydrsheef*, “ ;

dlouhō, *dloúhō*, long; **déle**, *délě*, longer; **nejdéle**, *neydélě*, longest; **dýl**, *deel*, “ ; **nejdýl**, *neydeel*, “ ;

blízko, *bleeskō*, near; **blíže**, *bleežě*, nearer; **nejblíže**, *neybleežě*, nearest; **blíž**, *bleež*, “ ; **nejblíž**, *neybleež*, “ ;

daleko, *dălēkō*, far; **dál**, *dál*, farther; **nejdál**, *neydál*, farthest;

vysoko, *vysökō*, high; **výše**, *veeshě*, higher; **nejvýše**, *neyveeshě*, highest;

hluboko, *hlübökō*, deep, deeply; **hloub**, *hloúb*, deeper; **nejhloub**, *neyhloúb*, deepest;

snadno, *snădnō*, easily; **snáz**, *snáz*, more easily; **nejsnáz**, *neysnáz*, most easily;

mnoho, *mnōhō*, much. **víc**, *více*, *veets*, *veetsě*, more; **nejvíce**, *nejvíce*, *neyveets*, *neyveetsě*, most;

málo, *málō*, little; **méně**, *míñ*, *méñe*, *meeñ*, less; **nejméně**, *nejmíñ*, *neymíñ*, *neymeeñ*, least;

draho, **draze**, *drăhō*, *drăzě*, dear, dearly; **dráže**, *drážě*, dearer; **nejdráže**, *neydrážě*, dearest.

LESSON XXXI.*)

Nesti (or **néstii**), *to carry, to bear*, is a verb denoting a CONTINUOUS action.

By means of prefixes numerous other verbs are derived from it (see Note 6, Lesson XIII), denoting a FINITE or finished action, or a solitary act of that nature :

přinesti ,	<i>prshinestī</i> , or <i>prshinest</i> ,	to bring, to fetch;
přenesti ,	<i>prshě-nest</i> ,	to carry over, to transplace;
naneсти ,	<i>nānest</i> ,	to bring a heap; to pile on;
odnesti ,	<i>ōdnest</i> ,	to carry away; to take away;
děnesti ,	<i>dōnest</i> ,	to carry to a place; to carry to somebody;
pōnesti ,	<i>pōdnest</i> ,	to carry under;
přednesti ,	<i>prshed-nest</i> ,	to carry before; (hence: to lay before, to submit, to deliver);
pronesti ,	<i>prōnest</i> ,	to carry through; pronesti se , to grow heavy, to tire out (said of a burden which is carried);
roznesti ,	<i>rōznest</i> ,	to carry round; to scatter or spread; to deliver;
unesti ,	<i>ūnest</i> ,	to carry off, to kidnap; (also: to be able to carry);
vynesti ,	<i>vinest</i> ,	to carry out;
zanesti ,	<i>zānest</i> ,	to carry behind, away, i. e. out of sight; (also: to enter in a book or list).

*) We bespeak the student's particular attention for this Lesson, designed as a systematic but easy and popular introduction to a complete mastery of the Bohemian verb, which is the most important and the most complicated part of the language. To a great extent, this introduction will not appear as a review of what has already been learned about the verb in the preceding lessons, and hence will be the more readily mastered by the student. There being only a few hundred verbs used in the ordinary intercourse of any language, their acquisition for practical every-day purposes is, after all, only a matter of a few weeks' application.

As before observed, the meaning of these derivatives becomes in most cases self-evident, when we bear in mind the signification of the prefixes, which constantly recur in this process of formation of new verbs:

do , <i>dō</i> , to;	pře , <i>prshē</i> , over;	pod , <i>pōd</i> , under;
od , <i>ōd</i> , from, off;	při , <i>prshi</i> , to, by, at;	nad , <i>nād</i> , over, up, above;
na , <i>nā</i> , on;	před , <i>prshed</i> , before;	pro , <i>prō</i> , through;
ve , <i>vē</i> , in;	ob , <i>ōb</i> } round,	roz , <i>rōz</i> , apart, asunder;
vy , <i>vy</i> , out;	o , <i>o</i> } about;	za , <i>zā</i> , behind, away, into;

The prefix **za** very often denotes a solitary action or sudden manifestation; for example :

pěti, *zpívati*, *pyěti*, *speevati*, to sing; **zapěti**, *zazpívati*, *zăpyět*, *zăspeevăt*, to sing a song.

zvoniti, *zwōñit*, to ring; **zazvoniti**, *zăzwōñit*, to give a ring; to pull the bell once.

The prefix **u** denotes: 1. an action separating a part from the whole: **seknouti**, *seknoūti*, to make a cut; **useknouti**, *ūseknoūti*, to cut off; — 2. a diminutive, momentary, or solitary action : **šklebiti** *se*, *shklēbiti* *sē*, to frown; — **ušklebiti** *se*, to make a frown; 3. a progressive destruction or disappearance: **páliti**, *páli**ti*, to burn; **upáliti**, to burn up. to burn at the stake; — 4. a completion or carrying out of something: **dělati**, *d'elāti*, to do, to make, to work: **udělati**, to make or finish something; to do a certain act.

These are the main modifications due to the prefix **u**, connected with verbs; there are, besides, two or three minor or incidental ones, which it is not necessary to mention.

The principal parts of a Bohemian verb, from which the entire conjugation may easily be formed by means of the proper endings, are the following:

The infinitive: **nesti**, to carry; | the perfect indicative: **nesl**, carried; the present indicative: **nesu**, I carry; | the imperative: **nes**, carry (thou),

Nesu,	<i>nessū,</i>	I carry,	nesl*) jsem,	<i>nessl sem,</i>	I carried,
neseš,	<i>nessesh,</i>	thou carriest,	nesl jsi,	<i>nessl si,</i>	thou carriedst,
nese,	<i>nessě,</i>	(he,she,it) carries,	nesl,	<i>nessl,</i>	he carried,
neseme,	<i>nessěmě,</i>	we carry,	nesli**) jsme,	<i>nessli smě,</i>	we carried,
nesete,	<i>nessětě,</i>	you carry,	nesli jste,	<i>nessli stě,</i>	you carried,
nesou,	<i>nessoū,</i>	they carry;	nesli,	<i>nessli,</i>	they carried:
nes,	<i>ness,</i>	carry (thou),			
at' nese,	<i>at' nessě,</i>	let him (her, it) carry,			
nesme,	<i>nessmě,</i>	let us carry,			
neste,	<i>nesstě,</i>	carry (you),			
at' nesou,	<i>at' nessoū,</i>	let them carry.			

Note 1. The future tense of **nesti** is usually not formed by means of the auxiliary **býti** (to be) in connection with the infinitive: **budu nesti**, **budeš nesti**, etc.; but by means of the prefix **po**, connected with the present tense: **ponesu**, **pōnessū**, I shall carry; **poneseš**, **pōnessesh**, thou wilt carry; and so forth.

The derivatives mentioned above, formed by means of prefixes, have in fact no present, but only a past and a simple future tense; for example:

přinesti, to bring; **přinesl jsem**, I brought; **přinesu**, I shall bring; — **odnesti**, to carry away; **odnesl jsem**, I carried away; **odnesu**, I shall carry away. (See Notes 4 and 7, Lesson XIII.)

*) Feminine **nesla**, *nesslă*; neutre **neslo**; — see Note 2, Lesson IX. — **Já jsem nesl**, **já nesl**, I carried; **ty jsi nesl**, **ty's nesl**, thou carriedst; **vy jste nesli**, you carried. See Lesson X.

As already mentioned in Note 1, Lesson IX, the distinction between the perfect tense, so difficult and puzzling for the student of the English language, does not exist in Bohemian. **Nesl jsem** means both *I carried* and *I have carried*; it also means *I did carry* and *I was carrying*, — when the latter relates to a separate action.

Likewise the present, **nesu**, means not only *I carry*, but also: *I am carrying*, *I do carry*; or, if used interrogatively: **nesu?** *do I carry?*

The same observations apply to all other verbs, there being *only one form* of the present tense, and of the past tense, in Bohemian.

) Feminine **nesly; neutre **nesla**; see Note 2, Lesson IX.

The verbs **lezu**, I crawl; **vezu**, I carry; **jedu**, I ride; **kvetu**, I blossom; **rostu**, I grow, — and some others, usually form their future in the same way as **nesu**, I carry. Hence we do not say **budu lezti**, etc: but we say :

polezu, **polězřu**, I shall crawl; **povezu**, **povězřu**, I shall carry; **pojedu**, **poyědřu**, I shall ride; **pokvetu**, **pokvetřu**, I shall blossom; **porostu**, **porostřu**, I shall grow.

In the sequel we shall give the principal parts of every verb, from which the student can form the whole conjugation without any difficulty. There being a slight irregularity in the formation of the present tense from the infinitive in some cases, this course will obviate any confusion which might arise therefrom, for a beginner.

Vezti , <i>vězti, vest*</i>), to carry (in a vehicle);	plesti se , <i>p. sě</i> , to be mistaken, confused; etc.**)
vezti se , <i>vězti sě</i> , to ride;	másti , <i>mástři</i> , to confuse;
vesti , <i>vesťi</i> , to lead;	másti se , <i>mástři sě</i> , to be mistaken;
lezti , <i>lězti</i> , to crawl, to climb;	méstí , <i>městři</i> , to sweep;
kvesti , <i>kwesti</i> , to blossom;	klásti , <i>klástři</i> , to lay;
čísti , <i>cheesti</i> , to read;	krásti , <i>krástři</i> , to steal;
růsti , <i>roostři</i> } to grow;	pásti , <i>pástři</i> , to herd, to tend, to pasture.
rosti , <i>rostři</i> } to grow;	
plesti , <i>plesťi</i> , to twist, to knit; to confuse, to mix up;	pásti se , <i>p. sě</i> , to graze, to browse;
vezu , <i>vězřu</i> , I carry; vezl jsem , <i>vězřl sem</i> , I carried, or I have carried;	
	vez , <i>věz</i> , carry (thou)***);

*) See Note 1, Lesson XI.

**) This and many other verbs have a variety of significations, which cannot here be explained. We refer the student to the Dictionary of the Bohemian and English languages, by Charles Jonas, *second edition*.

***) The reflexive form of a verb is conjugated in the same way as the ordinary form, with **se** added: **vezu se**, I ride; **vezl jsem se**, I rode; **povezu se**, I shall ride; **vez se**, ride (thou)!

The student is already well aware that negation is always expressed by the prefix **ne**, which stands for the English *do not*, *does not*, *did not*; **nevezu**, I do not carry; **nevezl jsem**, I did not carry; **nepovezu**, I shall not carry; **nevez!** do not carry!

vedu, *vědū*, I lead; **vedl sem**, *vědl sěm*, I led; **ved'**, *ved'*, lead;
lezu, *lězū*, I crawl; **lezl jsem**, *lězl sěm*, I crawled; **lez**, *lěz*, crawl;
kvete, *kwětě*, it blooms; **kvetl**, *kwětl*, it bloomed; **květ**, *kwět'*, bloom:
čtu, *chtū*, I read; **četl jsem**, *chětl sěm*, I read; **čti**, *chěti*, read;
rostu, *rostū*, I grow; **rostl jsem**, *rostl sěm*, I grew; **rost'**, *rost'*, grow;
pletu, *pletū*, I knit; (pletu se, I get mixed up, etc.); **pletljsem**, I knit-
 ted; **plet'**, *plet'*, knit;
matu, *mătū*, I confuse; **matljsem**, *mătl sěm*, I confused; **mat'**, *măt'*, con-
 fuse;
metu, *metū*, I sweep; **metljsem**, *metl sěm*, I swept; **met'**, *met'*, sweep;
kladu, *klădū*, I lay; **kladljsem**, *klădl sěm*, I laid; **klad'**, *klăd'*, lay;
kradu, *krădū*, I steal; **kradljsem**, *krădl sěm*, I stole; **krad'**, *krăd'*, steal;
pasu, *păsū*, I herd; **pasljsem**, *păsl sěm*, I herded: **pas**, *păs*, herd.

Pasák, m. *păssák*, the cowboy,
 the herdsman;
dobytek, m. *dăbytek*, the cattle
chodník, m. *khodníek*, th sidewalk
zloděj, m. *zlod'ey*, the thief
červ, m. *cherf*, the worm
jablon, m. *yăblon*, the apple-tree
ptáci, pl. *ptátsi*, the birds
dějepis, m. *d'eyěpis*, the history
cestopis, m. *tsestōpis*, the book of
 travels;
stádo, n. *stádō*, the herd
ovce, f. s & pl. *oftsě*, the sheep
sotva, *sotwă*, hardly, scarcely;
snadno, *snădnō*, easily
nikam, *ñikām*, nowhere

datum, n. *dătūm*, the date
škola, f. *shkolă*, the school
novela, f. *novellă* } the novel
román, m. *rōmán* } the novel
zem, f. *zem* } the floor
podlaha, f. *podlăhă* } the floor
pastva, *păstwă*, the pasture
ruka, f. *răkă*, the hand
noha, f. *năhă*, the foot
mléko, n. *mlékō*, the milk
zeleniny, f. pl. *zélěñiny*, the vegetables;
zaméstí, *zăměst'i*, to sweep up;
dočísti, *dăcheest'i*, to finish reading;
může, *moožě*, he (she, it) can
zábavný, á, é, zábăvnee, entertaining.

EXERCISES.

Co neseš? (co to neseš?)

Nesu oběd pro otce*).

Co vezete na trh? — Vezu trochu obilí.

Co veze váš soused? — On veze brambory.

Kam vedete toho chlapce*)? — Vedu ho do školy. — Ze školy povedu ho zas domu.

Nelez na strom! — Já nelezu. — Nelezl jsem nikam. — Viděl jsem tě lezti.

Co to zde leze? — Červi zde lezou.

Všecko kvete. — Stromy už kvetou. — Loni náš jabloň kvetla krásně; — nevím jak pokvete letos.

Co to čteš? — Já čtu zábavnou knihu; — a co vy čtete? — Dějepis Spojených Států).**

What doest thou carry? (what is it thou carriest?)

I carry dinner for my father.

What do you carry to market? — I carry some grain.

What does your neighbor carry? — He carries potatoes.

Where do you lead (or “take”) that boy? — I lead him to school. — From school I shall lead him home again.

Do not climb (on) the tree! — I do not (climb). — I did not climb anywhere. — I have seen thee climb.

What is that crawling here? — Worms are crawling here.

Everything blossoms. — The trees are blooming already. — Last year our appletree blossomed beautifully: — I don’t know how it will bloom this year.

What is it thou readest? — I read an entertaining book; — and what do you read? — A history of the United States.

*) The rule stated in Note 2, Lesson XVIII, applies also to nouns ending in *ec* (declined like *muž*), the vowel *e* being dropped in the inflected cases: *otec*, *otets*, the father (or “my father”); *otce*, *otsě*, of the father; *pro otce*, *for the father*; *oteové*, *otsové*, the fathers; — *chlapec*, *khlápet*, the boy; *chlapce*, *khláptse*, of the boy (or “the boy”, in the objective case).

**) *Spojené Státy*, *spoyěné státy*, the United States: *Spojených Států*, *spoyěneekh státoo*, of the United States; *ve Spojených Státech*, *vě spoyěneekh státech*, in the United States.

Včera četl jsem román; — večer jsem ho dočetl; — zítra budu čísti nějaký cestopis.

Když je teplo, všecko roste rychle. — Ty zeleniny rostou rychle; — po dešti porostou ještě rychleji.

Já často se pletu v datum. — Člověk snadno se plete; — já také často se matu.

Zamet krám. — Zametl jsem ho už; — chodník zametu hned.

Ptáci nyní kladou vejce.

Zloděj krade kde může. — Zloději kradou vše.

Pasák pasé stádo. — Dobytka se pase. — Ovce se pasou.

Rád pasu krávy, kde je dobrá pastva.

Bíti, *beet'i*, to beat, to strike;
 pít, *peet'i*, to drink;
 líti, *leet'i*, to pour;
 síti, *seet'i*, } to sow, to seed;
 seti, *set'i*, }
 mytí, *meet'i*, to wash;

Yesterday I read a novel; — in the evening I finished reading it; — to-morrow I shall read some book of travels.

When it is warm, everything grows fast.—Those vegetables grow fast; — after a rain they will grow still faster.

I am often mistaken in the date. — One is easily mistaken; — I also am frequently mistaken.

Sweep the store. — I have swept it already; — the sidewalk I shall sweep presently.

The birds now lay eggs.

The thief steals where he can. — Thieves steal everything.

The cowboy tends the herd. — The cattle are grazing —The sheep are browsing.

I like to pasture cows where there is a good pasture.

krýti, *kreet'i*, to cover;
 tříti, *trsheat'i*, to rub;
 příti se, *prsheet'i sě*, to dispute;
 šíti, *sheet'i*, to sew;
 žíti, *žeet'i*, to live*).

*) Notes 1 and 2, Lesson XIII, explain that in common discourse the final *i* of the infinitive is nearly always dropped. Consequently we hear: *beet*, instead of *beet'i*; *peet*, instead of *peet'i*; and so forth. *Mýti* is often pronounced *meyt*, *krýti* — *kreyt*. (See Note 3, Lesson VI.)—There is no difference of pronunciation between **bíti** (to beat), and **býti** (to be), except when the latter is vulgarly pronounced *beyt*.

biju (or **biji**), *biyū*, I beat; **bil jsem**, *bill sem*, I beat (have beaten);
bij, *biy* or *be*, beat (thou);
piju (or **piji**), *piyū*, I drink; **pil jsem**, *pill sem*, I drank; **pij**, *piy*
(or *pee*), drink;
iju or **leju**, *liyū* or *leyū*, I pour: **lil jsem**, *lil sem*, I poured; **lij** or
lej, *liy*, *ley*, pour;
siju or **seju**, *siyū*, *seyū*, I sow; **sil jsem**, *sil sem*, I sowed; **sej**, *sey*, sow;
myju*), *miyū*, I wash; **myl jsem**, *mill sem*, I washed; **myj**, *miy*, wash;
kryju, *kriyū*, I cover; **kryl jsem**, *krill sem*, I covered; **kryj**, *kriy*, cover;
tru*), *trū*, I rub; **třel jsem**, *trshell sem*, I rubbed; **tři**, *trshi*, rub;
pru se*), *prū sě*, I dispute; **přel jsem se**, *prshell sem sě*, I disputed; **při se**,
prshi sě, dispute;
šiju, *she-yū*, I sew; **šil jsem**, *shil sem*, I sewed; **šij**, *shiy* (or *she*), sew;
žiju, *žiyū*, I live; **žil jsem**, *žil sem*, I lived; **žij**, *žiy*, (or *ži*), live;

Note 2. The paradigm of the present indicative of **bíti** would be: **biju**, **biješ**, **bije**, **bijeme**, **bijete**, **bijou** (I beat, thou beatest, he beats, we beat, you beat, they beat). In the written language, the forms **biji** and **bijí** (*biye*, *biyee*) are frequently employed in the first person singular and third person plural, in place of **biju**, **bijou** (*biyū*, *biyoū*), which are always used in conversation. The same is true of the other verbs of this class.

EXERCISES.

Proč biješ to dítě? — Nebij ho! — Já ho nebiju.	Why do you beat that child? — Do not beat him! — I do not beat him.
Hodiny**) bijou deset. — Už bilo deset.	The clock strikes ten. — It has already struck ten.

*) Colloquially also **meju**, **kreju**, **třu**, **přu se**, *meyū*, *kreyū*, *trshū*, *prshū sě*; **mej**, **krej**, *mey*, *krey*, (do) wash, (do) cover.

) **Hodiny (the clock) is a plural noun; the following verb must therefore be put in the plural: **bijou** or **bijí** (they strike).

Co pij-š? — **Piju pivo;** — **co vy pi-jete?** — **Pijeme víno;** — **děti pi-jou vodu.** — **Ráno všichni pili jsme mléko.**

Lijeme mléko do kávy.

Služka myje zem. — **Kryjeme pod-lahu kobercem.**

Lil jsem liniment na ruku a třel jsem nohu.

Seju pšenici; — **soused sil ječmen.** — **Sejeme časně.** — **Cojste vy se-li?** — **Nic ještě;** — **budeme síti oves.**

What doest thou drink? — I drink beer; — what do you drink? — We drink wine; — the children drink water. — In the morning we all drank milk.

We pour milk in coffee.

The servant-girl washes the floor. — We cover the floor with a carpet. I poured the liniment on (my) hand and rubbed (my) foot.

I sow wheat; — (my) neighbour sowed barley. — We sow early. — What have you sowed? — Nothing as yet; — we shall sow oats.

Note 3. All verbs consisting of a simple *root* or *stem*, to which the termination **ti** is directly attached, belong to the first conjugation.

They may be divided in two leading classes, slightly diverging in their inflection, but following the same general principle, as shown in the preceding two groups of examples; namely, 1. those terminating generally in **sti**, and 2. those terminating generally in **íti**:

1. **nesti**, to carry (**nes** in the root or stem); — **nesu, neseš, nese**, I carry, thou carriest, he carries; **neseme, nesete, nesou**, we carry, you carry, they carry; — **nesl jsem**, I carried; — **nes**, carry;
2. **píti**, to drink (**pí** is the root or stem); — **piju, piješ, pije**, I drink, thou drinkest, he drinks; **pijeme, pijete, pijou**, we drink, you drink, they drink; — **pil jsem**, I drank; — **píj**, drink.

Note 4. A few exceptional verbs of this conjugation, with the grammatical termination of **ci** (but popularly **cti**) in their infinitive, show a slight deviation from the above paradigms. For instance:

peci, *petsi*, to bake; — **peku**, **pečeš**, **peče**, **pečeme**, **pečete**, **pekon**, **pěkū**, **pěchesh**, **pěchě**, **pěchěmě**, **pěchětě**, **pěkoū** (I bake, thou bakest, he bakes, we bake, you bake, they bake); **pekl** **jsem**, **pěkl** **sem**, I baked; **peč**, **pěch**, bake;

teci, *tetsi*, to flow; **teče**, **tekou**, **tekl**, **teč**, **těchě**, **těkoū**, **tekł**, **těch** (it flows, they flow, it flowed, flow).

But colloquially, the forms **peču**, **pečou**, **tečou** (I bake, they bake, they flow) are used in place of **peku**, **pekon**, **tekou**.

LESSON XXXII.

Minouti, *minoūťi*, to pass by; — **minu**, *minū*, I pass by; (**minueš**, mine, *minesh*, *mině*, thou passest by, he passes by; **mineme**, **minete**, **minou**, *miněmě*, *minětě*, *minoū*, we, you, they pass by; — **minul***) **jsem**, *minūl sem*, I passed by or I have passed by; **miñ**, *miñ*, pass (thou) by.

hynouti, *hynoūťi*, to perish (or rather: to be perishing); — **hynu**, *hynū*, I am perishing; **hynul** **jsem**, I was perishing; **hyñ**, *hyñ*, perish.

zdvihnouti, *zdvihnoūťi*, to pick up, to raise; — **zdvihnu**, *zdvihnū***), I shall pick up; I shall raise; **zdvihnul** **jsem** (also **zdvihl** **jsem**, like the first conjugation), *zdvihnūl sem* (*zdvihl sem*), I picked up, I raised; **zdvihni**, *zdvihñi*, pick up, raise.

kopnouti, *kopnoūťi*, to kick; — **kopnu****), I shall kick; **kopnul** **jsem** (also **kepl** **jsem**), *kopnūl sem*, I kicked; **kopui**, *kopñi*, kick.

Dálka, f. *dálkă*, the distance | **osení**, n. *osseñee*, growing crops;
planina, f *pláñină*, the plain | **takto**, *tăktă*, in this way;

*) Feminine **minula**, *minūlă*; neutre **minulo**, *minūlă*; — see Note 2, Lesson IX.

) The present tense having a *future* meaning, **zdvihnu, **kopnu**, is in fact the simple future tense of these verbs. See Note 7, Lesson XIII.

hruška, f. *hrušhkă*, the pear
jablko, n. *yăblkō*, (colloq. *yăbkō*), the apple
sucho, n. *sŭkhō*, drought (as an adverb: dry);

než, *nesh*, before;
hleděti, *hled'et*, to look;
pes, m. *pess*, the dog; **psa**, *psă*, of the dog, the dog (obj. case).

EXERCISES.

Než hodina mine, budu zde, — pravil.

Before an hour passes by, I shall be here, — he said.

Hodina minula, — dvě hodiny minuly, — pět hodin minulo (i. e. it passed), — den minul, — a nebyl zde.

An hour passed, — two hours passed, — five hours passed, — the day passed by, — and he was not here.

Až mineme ten les, budeme viděti více.

When we pass that forest, we shall see more.

Jak brzy minuli jste les?

How soon did you pass the forest?

Minuli jsme ho za hodinu; — pak viděli jsme celou planinu.

We passed it in an hour; — then we saw the whole plain.

Ti lidé nás brzy minou*). — **Mineš mnoho lidí** (*lid'ee*, gen. case).

Those people will soon pass us. — Thou wilt pass many people.

Je sucho; — všecko hyne; — osení hyne; — zeleniny hynou.

It is dry; — everything is perishing; — the crops are perishing; — the vegetables are perishing.

Bylo sucho a všecko hynulo.

There was a drought, and everything was perishing.

Takto všecko bude hynouti.

In this way everything will be perishing

Zdvihni to jablko. — Už jsem ho zdvihнул (or zdvihl). — Zdvihnula (or zdvihla) jsem dvě jablka a hrušku.

Pick up that apple. — I have picked it up already. — I picked up (*fem.*, two apples and a pear).

*) It is self-evident that this present tense of the verb **minouti** also has a *future* meaning, denoting an action which is expected to take place.

Zdvihli jsme se a hleděli do dálky.

— Zdvihni se! — Zdvihně se!

-- Zdvihněte ruku (plural ruce, růtsč).

Kopni toho psa! -- Kopnul jsem ho trochu.

We raised ourselves and looked into
the distance — Raise thyself! —
Raise yourself! — Raise your hand
(your hands).

Kick that dog! — I kicked him a little.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **minouti** is **min**, to which the termination **outi** is attached. All verbs ending in **outi** belong to the second conjugation.

Some of the verbs of this class are derived from adjectives, and their imperative is always formed like that of **zdvihnuti** : **zdvihni**. For example :

bled-ý, *bledee*, pale; **bled-nouti**, *blednoǔťi*, to grow pale; (**blednau**, I grow pale; **blednul jsem**, I grew pale; **bledni**, do grow pale);

bohat-ý , <i>bohátee</i> , rich;	bohat-nouti , <i>bohátnoúťi</i> ,	to grow rich;
chud-ý , <i>khúdee</i> , poor;	chud-nouti , <i>khúdnoúťi</i> ,	to grow poor;
mlad-ý , <i>mládee</i> , young;	mládnouti , <i>mládnoúťi</i> ,	to grow young;
star-ý , <i>stáree</i> , old;	stár-nouti , <i>stárnouťi</i> ,	to grow old;
slab-ý , <i>slábee</i> , weak;	sláb-nouti , <i>slábnoúťi</i> ,	to grow weak;
měk-ký , <i>myěkee</i> , soft;	měk-nouti , <i>myěknouťi</i> ,	to grow soft;
tvrd-ý , <i>tv̄rdee</i> , hard;	tvrd-nouti , <i>tvrdnoúťi</i> ,	to grow hard.

Viděti,	<i>vi'dět'i,</i>	to see:	slyšeti,	<i>slíshět'i,</i>	to hear;
seděti,	<i>se'dět'i,</i>	to sit;	slušeti,	<i>slúshět'i,</i>	to fit, to become;
běžeti,	<i>byěžet'i,</i>	to run, to go hurriedly;	styděti se,	<i>stúděti sě,</i>	to be ashamed;
držeti,	<i>d[े]ržet'i,</i>	to hold;	uměti,	<i>úmyět'i,</i>	to know; can;
mlčeti,	<i>m[े]lchet'i,</i>	to be silent;	rozuměti,	<i>rozúmyět'i,</i>	to understand;
hořeti,	<i>horshět'i,</i>	to burn;	házetí,	<i>házeť'i,</i>	to throw (con- tinually);
pršeti,	<i>p[े]rshět'i,</i>	to rain:	poroučeti,	<i>poroúchet'i,</i>	to command.

Vidím, *riđ'eem*, I see; — **vidíš,** *vidí*, *viđ'eesh*, *viđ'ee*, thou seest, he sees; **vidíme,** *vidíte,* *vidí*, (colloq. also *vidějí*) *viđ'eemě*, *viđ'eetě*, *viđ'ee*, colloq. *viđ'eyee*, we (you, they) see; — **viděl jsem,** *viđ'el sem*, I saw, or I have seen; **viz,** see (being an irregular imper.).

sedím, *sed'eem*, I sit; **seděl jsem,** *sed'el sem*, I sat; **sed'**, sit.

běžím, *byěžeem*, I run; **běžel jsem,** *byěžel sem*, I ran; **běž,** *byěž*, run; **držím,** *d'řeem*, I hold; **držel jsem,** *d'řel sem*, I held; **drž,** *d'ř*, hold; **mlčím,** *m'lc̄eem*, I am silent, **mlčel jsem,** *m'lc̄el sem*, I was silent; **mlč,** *m'lc̄h*, be silent;

hoří, *horshee*, it burns; **hořel,** *horshel*, burned; **hoř,** *horsh*, burn; **prší,** *p'rshee*, it rains; **pršelo,** *p'rshełd̄*, it rained; **prš,** *p'rs̄h*, rain; **slyším,** *slisheeem*, I hear; **slyšel jsem,** *slisheł sem*; I heard; **slyš,** *slis̄h*, hear;

sluší, *slūshee*, it fits; **slušelo,** *slūshel*, it fitted.

stydím se, *stiđ'eem sě*, I am ashamed; **styděl jsem se,** *stiđ'el sem sě*, I was ashamed; **styd' se,** shame on thee!

umím, *ümeen*, I know, I can; **uměl jsem,** *ümyěll sem*, I knew; **uměj,** *ümyěy*, know;

rozumím, *rozümeem*, I understand; **rozuměl jsem,** *rozümyěll sem*, I understood; **rozuměj,** *rozümyěy*, understand;

házím, *házeem*, I throw (I am throwing); **házel jsem,** *házel sem* I was throwing; **házej,** *házey*, throw;

poroučím, *poroǔcheem*, I command; **poroučel jsem,** *poroǔchel sem*, I commanded; **poroučej,** *poroǔchey*, command.

Vlak, m.	<i>vlăk</i> ,	the train;	pevně,	<i>pevñe</i> ,	tightly, fast;
opráťe, f. pl.	<i>opráťe</i> ,	the lines;	silně,	<i>silñe</i> ,	strongly, hard;
povyk, m.	<i>povik</i> ,	the cry;	výborně,	<i>veeborñe</i> ,	very well, excellently;
jazyk, m.	<i>yazik</i> ,	the tongue;	špinavý, á, é	<i>shpinăvee</i> ,	dirty;
prádlo, n.	<i>prádlđ</i> ,	the linen;	jiný, á, é	<i>yinee</i> ,	other, different;
šaty, pl.	<i>šaty</i> ,	suit of clothes;	zapomněl jsem,	<i>zăpom-ñel sem</i> ,	I forgot;
kamení, n.	<i>kămeñee</i> ,	stones (collectively);			

před tím, *prshed t'hem*, before that;
 za něj, *ză ňey*, for him, of him,
 (for it, of it);

hráti, *hráťi*, to play;
 už ne, *úsh ně*, not any more.

Vidíš něco? — Co vidíš? — Nevidím nic*).

Doest thou see something? — What doest thou see? — I do not see anything.

Vidíte dobře? — Ano, vidím všecko. — Oni to vidí dobře.

Do you (or can you) see well? Yes, I can see all. — They see it well. We have seen a train; — have you seen it too?

Viděli jsme vlak; — viděli jste ho také?

We have not seen it; — the children saw it.

Neviděli jsme ho; — děti ho viděly.

Here we shall see all. — Our friends will see us immediately.

Zde budeme viděti všecko. — Naši přátelé budou viděti nás hned.

Who sits here? — It is I. — Why doest thou sit here? — Run out: — go out both (of you).

Kdo tu sedí? — To jsem já. — Proč tu sedíš? — Běž ven; — běžte ova ven.

You have been sitting all the time; — in the evening you will sit again.

Seděli jste pořád; — večer budete seděti zas.

Hold (thou) the horse and keep still. — Hold (you) the lines and keep still. — Do you hold fast? — We hold fast.

Drž koně a mlč. — Držte opratě a mlčte. — Držíte pevně? — Držíme pevně.

They hear us. — Nobody hears us. — That girl has heard us. — They have heard us.

Oni nás slyší. — Žádný nás neslyší. — Ta holka nás slyšela. — Slyšeli nás.

It rains; I hear it. — Do you hear the rain?

Prší; slyším to; — Slyšíte dešť?

It does not rain yet; but it will rain. — Yesterday it rained hard; — before that it had not rained for a long time.

*) There is a double negation in Bohemian, similar to the vulgar English way of speaking: *I don't see nothing*, See Note 1, Lesson V.

Ty šaty sluší vám výborně.

Ten klobouk mi nesluší; stydím se za něj.

Nestyd' se; sluší ti dobrě dost.

Tvé prádlo je špinavé; nestydíš se?
Styd' se!

Umíš česky? — Ano já umím česky.

Umíte anglicky? — Trochu.

Umíte německy? — Uměl jsem dobrě; ale zapomněl jsem trochu.

Umíš hráti na piano? — Neumím.
— Umíte zpívat? — Neumím.

Naše děti umějí česky a anglicky, — a žádný jiný jazyk.

Rozumějí německy? — Nerozumějí.

Házej kamení za plot. — Neházej kamení na cestu.

Házejte ty pytle dolu. — Neházejte tak rychle.

Házeli jsme dříví na hromadu. — a budeme házeti zas. — Otec to poroučí.

Házejí ty hoši kamení? — Neházejí. — Už neházejí.

Už dávno neházejí.

That suit of clothes fits you very well.
That hat does not fit me; I am ashamed of it.

Do not be ashamed; it fits thee well enough.

Thy linen is dirty; art thou not ashamed? — Shame on you!

Doest thou know Bohemian? — Yes, I know Bohemian.

Do you know English? — A little.

Do you know German? — I knew it well: but I have forgotten it somewhat.

Doest thou know how to play on the piano? — I do not. — Can you sing? — I can not.

Our children know Bohemian and English, — and no other tongue.

Do they understand German? — They do not (understand).

Throw (thou) the stones behind the fence. — Do not throw the stones on the road.

Throw (you) the sacks down. — Don't throw so fast.

We have been throwing the wood on a heap, — and we shall throw again. — Father commands it.

Are those boys throwing stones? — They are not. — They are not throwing any more.

They have not been throwing for a long time (i. e. they stopped throwing long since).

Note 2. The root or stem of the verb **viděti** is **vid**, to which the termination **ěti** is attached. All verbs ending in **ěti** or **eti** belong to the third conjugation.

The root of the verb is the usual form of the imperative: **běž**, run (thou); **sed**, sit; **drž**, hold; etc; — The third person singular and plural of the present tense are alike: **vídí**, he (she, it) sees; **vídí**, they see. But in colloquial usage it commonly takes the longer form: **vidějí**, **se-dějí** (they see, they sit).

In some cases the imperative is formed by cutting off the terminal **ti** and adding **j** : **uměti**, — **uměj**, know; **házeti**, — **házej**, throw; etc. These verbs always use the long form in the third person plural: **umí**, he (she, it) knows; **umějí**, **umyěyee**, they know, — **házejí**, **házeyee**, they throw.

LESSON XXXIII.

Činiti , <i>chiňiti</i> , to do;	souditi , <i>soúditi</i> , to judge;
choditi , <i>khod'iti</i> , to walk; to go (frequently).	platiti , <i>plăt'iti</i> , to pay; to rule, prevail, be in force;
mluviti , <i>mlüvit'i</i> , to speak, to tell;	svítiti , <i>svet'iti</i> , to shine;
věřiti , <i>vyérshiti</i> , to believe;	buditi , <i>bud'iti</i> , to wake;
učiti , <i>úchit'i</i> , to teach;	blázniti , <i>blázñit'i</i> , to fool; to be crazy;
učiti se , <i>úchit'i sě</i> , to learn (i. e. to teach one's self);	modliti se , <i>modlit'i sě</i> , to pray.
Činím , <i>chiňeem</i> , I do; — činiš , <i>chiňeesh</i> , thou doest; činí , <i>chiňee</i> , he (she, it) does; činíme , činite , činí (colloquially also činějí) čiňeemě , <i>chiňeetě</i> , <i>chiňee</i> or <i>chiňeyee</i> we, you, they do; — činil jsem , <i>chiňil sem</i> , I did, or I have done; čin , do (thou); čínte , <i>chiňte</i> , do (you);	
chodím , <i>khod'eeem</i> , I walk; chodil jsem , <i>khod'il sem</i> , I walked; chod , walk;	

mluvím, *mlüveem*, I speak; **mluvil jsem**, *mlüv'il sem*, I spoke; **mluv**, *mlüf*, speak;
věřím, *vyěrsheem*, I believe; **věřil jsem**, *vyěrshil sem*, I believed; **věř**, believe;
učím, *ücheem*, I teach: **učil jsem**, *üchil sem*, I taught; **uč**, teach;
učím se, *ücheem sě*, I learn; **učil jsem se**, *üchil sem sě*, I learned; **uč se**, learn;
soudím, *soüd'eeem*, I judge; **soudil jsem**, *soüd'il sem*, I judged: **sud'**, *süd'*, judge;
platím, *pläťeeem*, I pay; **platil jsem**, *pläťil sem*, I paid; **plat'**, pay;
svítím, *sweeťeeem*, I shine (I light); **svítil jsem**, *sweeťil sem*, I shined (lighted); **svít'**, shine (light);
budím, *büd'eeem*, I wake; **budil jsem**, *büd'il sem*, I waked; **bud'**, wake;
blázním, *blázñeeem*, I am crazy; **bláznil jsem**, *blázñil sem*, I was crazy;
blázni, *blázñi*, be crazy;
modlím se, *modleem sě*, I pray; **modlil jsem se**, I prayed; **modli se**, pray.

Učitel*), m.	<i>üchitel</i> ,	the teacher;	kresliti ,	<i>kresslit'i</i> ,	to draw;
učitelka , f.	<i>üchitelkă</i> ,	a female teacher:	živý, á, é	<i>živee,</i>	living;
žák , m.	<i>žák</i> ,	the scholar;	nahlas ,	<i>nähläš</i> ,	aloud;
soudce , m.	<i>soütsě</i> ,	the judge;	pilně ,	<i>pilñě</i> ,	diligently;
zákon , m.	<i>zákon</i> ,	the law;	právě ,	<i>právyě</i> ,	rightly;
kostel , m.	<i>köstel</i> ,	the church;	křivě ,	<i>krshivyě</i> ,	wrongly;
lámpa , f.	<i>lämpă</i> ,	the lamp:	podle ,	<i>pödlě</i> ,	according to;
			dříve ,	<i>drsheevě</i> ,	formerly.

*) **Učitel**, the teacher; **učitele**, *üchitellě*, of the teacher; **učiteli**, *üchitelli*, to the teacher; (plural) **učitelé**, *üchitellé*, the teachers; — like **přítel**, **přátelé** (see foot-note on page 97).

EXERCISES.

Čiň dobré a budeš šťasten.

Co jsi učinil? Nenčinil jsem nic.
— **On to učinil.**

Chlapec chodí do školy; — obě děti chodí do školy.

Chodíte často do města? — Dříve chodil jsem tam často; — nyní tam nechodím.

Proč nechodíte? — Nemám čas.

Mluv nahlas; já tě neslyším.

Mluvil jsi s učitelem? — Nemluvil; ale mluvil jsem s učitelkon.

Věří ti učitel? — On vždy mi věří, protože mluvím pravdu. — To rád slyším.

Učitel učí nás mluviti pravdu. — Učil nás tomu vždycky.

Uč se pilně. — Učte se dobře. — Učme se společně.

Co se učíš*)? — Zeměpis. — Co vy se učíte? — Kresliti. — Kreslité dobře. — Žák kreslil pěkně.

Soudil jsem křivě. — Vy jste soudili právě. — Soudce soudil podle zákona.

Do good and thou shalt be happy.
What hast thou done? — I have not done anything — He has done it.
The boy goes to school. — both children go to school.

Do you often go to town? — Formerly I went there often; — now I do not go there.

Why do you not go? — I have no time.

Speak loud; I do not hear thee.
Hast thou spoken with the teacher?
— I have not (spoken); but I spoke with the lady teacher.

Does the teacher believe you? — He always believes me, because I speak the truth. — I like to hear that.

The teacher teaches us to speak the truth. — He has taught us that always.

Learn (thou)diligently. — Learn (you) well. — Let us learn together.

What doest thou learn? — Geography — What is it you learn? — To draw. — You draw well. — The scholar drew nicely.

I judged wrong. — You judged right. — The judge judged according to law.

*) This is the colloquial expression. In the written language, **učiti** and **učiti se** govern the dative case, responding to the question **čemu?** (See page 82). Hence we should write: **čemu se učíš?** what doest thou learn? **čemu učíte?** what do you teach? And the answer would be: **zeměpisu.**

Zákon platí, vždy platil a musí vždy platit.

Budil jsem každé ráno celou rodinu časně.

Myslím že blázníš. — Ten člověk blázní. — Neblázní! — Bláznil jsi? — Ba bláznil jsem!

Měsíc ještě svítí; svítil celou noc. — Ta lampa svítí špatně; včera svítila dobře.

Modli se! — Modleme se! — Lidé modlí se v kostele. — Kněz modlil se za živé*) i za mrtvé.

The law rules, always ruled, and must always rule.

I waked up every morning the whole family early.

I think that thou art crazy. — That man is crazy. — Don't be crazy! Wast thou crazy? — Surely, I was crazy!

The moon still shines; it has been shining all night. — That lamp shines badly; yesterday it shined well.

Pray! — Let us pray! — People pray in church. — The priest prayed for the living and for the dead.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **činati** is **čin**, to which the termination **iti** is attached. All verbs ending in **iti** belong to the fourth conjugation.

The root of the verb is the common form of the imperative: **čin**, do; **chod'**, walk; **mluv**, speak; etc. In some cases, however, only the final **ti** is thrown off to form the imperative: **blázní**, be crazy; **modli se**, pray.

Note 2. The verbs **bydliti**, **mysliti**, **musiti** (to reside, to think, must) are also written **bydleti**, **mysleti**, **museti**, and in popular language this form is always employed. This does not materially modify their inflection, as the third and fourth conjugation are essentially almost identical. For instance :

*) **Živý**, living; plural: **živí**, in the objective case **živé**. These distinctions, however, disappear in common discourse. This adjective also has an indefinite or short form (see Note 2, Lesson XXIII): **živ**, a, o, For instance; **je posud živ**, he is still living; **matka je živa**, the mother is living; **dítě je živo**, the child is living. The expression **živ a zdráv**, pronounced **žif a zdráf**, is frequently heard.

(Third conjugation)		(Fourth conjugation)	
seděti, <i>sed'et'i</i> , to sit		činiti, <i>chiñit'i</i> , to do	
sedím, <i>sed'eem</i> ,	I sit	činim, <i>chiñeem</i> ,	I do
seděl jsem, <i>sed'el sem</i> ,	I sat	činil jsem, <i>chiñil sem</i> ,	I did
sed', <i>sed'</i> ,	sit (thou)	čiñ, <i>chiñ</i> ,	do (thou)
budu seděti, <i>büdü sed'et'i</i>	I shall sit	budu činiti, <i>büdü chiñit'i</i>	I shall do.

The above three verbs, in colloquial discourse, always take in the third person plural the form: **bydlejí**, **myslejí**, **musejí**, *bidlëyee*, *mislëyee* (they reside, they think, they must); whereas the proper grammatical form is like the third person singular: **bydlí**, **myslí**, **musí**.

LESSON XXXIV.

Volati, <i>vuläťi</i> ,	to call;	prodati, <i>prodäťi</i> ,	to sell;
běhati, <i>byěhăťi</i> ,	to run (about);	prodávati*), <i>prodávăťi</i> ,	to be sell-
čekati, <i>chekăťi</i> ,	to wait;		ing;
dělati, <i>d'elăťi</i> ,	to do, to make, to	povídati, <i>poveedăťi</i> ,	to say, to tell;
	work;	trestati, <i>trestăťi</i> ,	to punish;
hledati, <i>hlědăťi</i> ,	to seek, to look	znáti, <i>znáťi</i> ,	to know;
	for;	ptáti se, <i>ptáťi sě</i> ,	to ask, to inquire;
doufati, <i>doúfăťi</i> ,	to hope;	plovati, <i>plovăťi</i> ,	to swim.
Volám, <i>volám</i> ,	I call; voláš, <i>volášh</i> ,	thou callest; volá, <i>volá</i> ,	he (she, it) calls;
	thou callest;	he (she, it) calls;	
voláme, voláte, volají, <i>volámě</i> ,	<i>volátě</i> ,	<i>voláyee</i> ,	we, you, they
call; — volal jsem, <i>volăl sem</i> ,	I called;	call (thou);	call;
volajte, <i>voleytě</i> ,	call (you);		
běhám, <i>byěhám</i> .	I run; běhal jsem, <i>byěhăl sem</i> ,	I was running; běž,	
			byěž, run;
čekám, <i>chekám</i> ,	I wait; čekal jsem, <i>chekăl sem</i> ,	I waited; čekej, <i>chekey</i> ,	
			wait;
dělám, <i>d'elám</i> ,	I do, I make; dělal jsem, <i>d'elăl sem</i> ,	I did, I made; dělej,	
			d'elej, do, make;

*) Reiterative form of **prodati**; see Note 5, Lesson XIII.

hledám, *hlědám*, I seek; **hledal jsem,** *hlědál sem*, I sought; **hledej,** *hlědej*, seek;
doufám, *doúfám*, I hope; **doufal jsem,** *doúfál sem*, I hoped; **doufej,** *doúfey*, hope;
prodám, I shall sell (having a future meaning; see Note 7, Lesson XIV; **prodal jsem,** *prodál sem*, I sold; **prodej,** *prodey*, sell; **prodávám,** I am selling: **prodával jsem,** *prodávál sem*. I was selling: **prodávej,** *prodávey*, sell; **povídám,** *poveedám*, I say; **povídal jsem,** *p'veedál sem*, I said; **povídej,** *poveedey*, tell; **trestám** (also **tresci,** *trestsi*), I punish; **trestal jsem,** *trestál sem*, I punished; **tresej,** *trestey*, punish; **znám,** I know; **znal jsem,** *znál sem*, I knew; **znej,** *zney*, know; **ptám se,** I ask; **ptal jsem se,** *ptál sem sě*, I asked; **ptej se,** *ptey sě*, ask.

Květina, f. <i>kwyětina</i>	{	flower
kvítko, n. <i>kweetko</i>		
kytka, f. <i>kitkă</i> ,		bouquet;
majetek, m. <i>măyětek</i> ,		property;
na přesrok, nă <i>prshěsrok</i> ,		next year
před lety, <i>prshed lety</i> ,		years ago;
druzí, <i>drůzee</i> ,		the others;
naši, <i>năshi</i> ,		our folks;

spatřiti, <i>spătrshťi</i> ,	to see (or to meet);
věděti, <i>vyědeti</i> ,	to know;
poslušný, á, é <i>poslúshnee</i> ,	obedient;
neposlušný, <i>neposlúshnee</i> ,	disobedient;
tento (f. tato , n. toto), <i>tentō</i> ,	this one, this here.

EXERCISES.

Voláš mě? — Koho voláš? — Koho jsi volal?

Volám hocha; kde je? — Běhá venku; všechny děti běhají venku.

Volal jsem tě; kde's (abbrev. of kde jsi) byl?

Doest thou call me? — Whom doest thou call? — Whom didst thou call? I call the boy; where is he? — He is running outside (i. e. out of doors); — all the children are running outside.

I called thee; where hast thou been?

Běhal jsem na zahradě; — čekal jsem až mě budete volati.

Co jsi dělal na zahradě? — Nedělal jsem nic; hledal jsem květiny.

Je tam mnoho květin? — Ano.

Co druzí dělali na zahradě? — Hledali květiny se mnou.

Hledej pěkné květiny a dělej kytky. — Jděte*) oba, ty a Karel, a hledejte kvítky.

Doufám že napřesrok budeme živí a zdrávi. — Doufejme!

Doufal jsem spatřiti vás zde. — Všichni doufali sme sejíti se s vámi.

Prodám svůj majetek. — Prodejte ho brzy. — Můj bratr prodal svůj majetek lacino.

Naši prodali farmu a povídají že půjdou do města.

Povídal jsem mu, že mám dům na prodej. — Prodávám všecko co mám.

Tento majetek není na prodej. — Kdo to povídal? — Kdo vám to povídal?

Každý to povídá. — Všichni to povídají.

Znáš mě? — Znám tě dobře; — znal jsem tě už před lety.

I was running in the garden,—I was waiting until you would call me.

What wast thou doing in the garden? — I was not doing anything; — I was looking for flowers.

Are there many flowers there?—Yes.

What have the others been doing in the garden?— They were looking for flowers with me.

Look for nice flowers, and make bouquets. — Go both of you, — thou and Charles, and look for flowers.

I hope that next year we shall be alive and well. — Let us hope!

I hoped to see (or meet) you here.— We all hoped to meet you.

I shall sell my property. — Sell it soon. — My brother sold his property cheap.

Our folks have sold the farm, and they say that they will go to the city.

I told him that I had a house for sale. — I am selling everything I have.

This property is not for sale. — Who said so? — Who told you so?

Everybody says so. — They all say so.

Doest thou know me?—I know thee well; — I knew you already years ago.

*) The infinitive is **jíti**, *yeeti*, to go; See Lesson XIII.

Každý mě zná; — všichni mě znají.	Everybody knows me; — they all know me.
Znáte mého otce? — Neznám ho. — Znal jste mou matku? — Neznal jsem ji.	Do you know my father? — I do not know him. — Did you know my mother? — I did not know her.
Proč se ptáš? — Ptám se, protože chei věděti.*)	Why doest thou ask? — I ask because I want to know.
Ptáte se po mě? — Ptal jsem se kde bydlíte; — povídali mi, že prodal jste svůj dům. — Neprodal jsem ho ještě.	Do you ask for me? — I asked where you lived; — they told me that you had sold your house. — I have not sold it yet.
Neptám se co učitel povídal; já to vím.	I do not ask what the teacher said; I know it.
Věděl jsem, že chlapec je neposlušný; — víte že musel jsem trestati ho.	I knew that the boy was disobedient; — you know that I was obliged to punish him.
To víme. — Všichni víme, že trestali jste ho často.	We know that. — We all know that you punished him often.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **volati** is **vol**, to which the termination **ati** is attached. Verbs ending in **ati** belong to the fifth conjugation.

Note 2. Some verbs ending in **áti** form their present like the verbs of the first conjugation ending in **íti**, (**bíti**, to beat; **biju**, **biješ**, **bije**, etc.); for example:

hráti, **hráťi**, to play: **hraju***), **hraješ**, **hraje**, **hráyū**, **hráyesh**, **hráyě**, I play, thou playest, he plays; **hrajeme**, **hrajete**, **hrajou****) **hráyemě**, **hráyetě**, **hráyoū** we, you, they play; — **hrál jsem**, **hrál sem**, I played; **hraj**, **hráy**, play.

*) **Věděti** (to know) is one of the thoroughly irregular verbs: **vím**, **víš**, **ví**, **veem**, **veesh**, **vee**, I know, thou knowest, he (she, it) knows; **víme**, **víte**, **vědí**, **veemě**, **veetě**, **vyěd'ee**, we, you, they know; — **věděl jsem**, **vyěd'el sem**, I knew; **věz**, **vyěz**, know thou; **vězte**, **vyězte**, know you.

) **Hraji, **hrají**, (I play, they play) are considered the pure grammatical forms of the first person singular and third person plural; but **hraju**, **hrajou**, are exclusively used in the popular language.

However, this verb also follows the rule of the fifth conjugation in the present tense: **hrám, hráš, hrá;** **hráme, hráte, hrají** (I play, thou playest. he plays; we, you, they play).

A few verbs modify the letter **á** in the present tense:

Hráti, hrsháti, to warm; — **hřeju** (or **hřeji**) **hřeješ, hřeje;** **hřejeme, hřejete, hřejou** (or **hřejí**); I warm, thou warmest, he warms; etc. — **hřál jsem, hrshál sem**, I warmed; **hřej, hrshey**, warm;

práti, prsháti, to wish; — **přeju** (or **přeji**), I wish; **přál jsem,** I wished; **přej,** wish;

smáti se, smáti sě, to laugh; — **směju se** (or **směji se**), **smyčy sě**, I laugh; **smál jsem se, smál sem sě**, I laughed; **směj se, smyčy sě**, laugh.

Note 3. There are some verbs essentially belonging to this conjugation, which show a considerable deviation in the present tense and imperative. The following are most frequently met with:

bráti, to take; — **bern, bereš, bere, bereme, berete, berou,** **berů, beresh,** **berě, berěmě, berětě, beroů,** (I take, thou takest, etc.); **bral jsem, bräl sem,** I took; **ber,** take;

práti, to wash; — **peru, perů, I wash;** **pral jsem, präl sem,** I washed; **per,** wash;

psáti, to write; — **píšu, peeshů,** I write; **psal jsem, psäl sem,** I wrote; **piš, pish,** write;

kázati, to preach (or to command); — **kážu, kážů,** I preach; **kázal jsem,** I preached; **kaž,** preach;

tázati se, to ask; — **tážu se, tážů sě,** I ask; **tázal jsem se, tázäl sem sě,** I asked; **taž se,** ask;

plakati, to weep; — **pláču, pláchů,** (but also **plakám,)** I weep; **plakal jsem, plákäl sem,** I wept; **plač, plách,** weep.

skákat, to jump; — **skáču, skáchů,** (but also **skákám,)** I jump; **skákal jsem, skákäl sem,** I was jumping; **skáej, skákey,** jump;

stonati, to be sick; — **stůñu, stooñů,** (but also **stonám; stõnám,**) I am sick; **stůněš, stooñesh,** thou art sick; **stůně, stooñě,** he is sick, etc.; **stonej, stõney,** be sick.

LESSON XXXV.

Milovati , <i>milovat̄i</i> ,	to love;	pracovati , <i>pr̄ats̄ovat̄i</i> ,	to work;
děkovati , <i>d̄ek̄ovat̄i</i> ,	to thank;	radovati se , <i>r̄ad̄ovat̄i s̄e</i> ,	to rejoice;
litovati , <i>lit̄ovat̄i</i> ,	to be sorry, to regret;	opakovati , <i>op̄ak̄ovat̄i</i> ,	to repeat;
jmenovati , <i>men̄ovat̄i</i> ,	to name, to call;	pamatovati , <i>p̄am̄at̄ovat̄i</i> ,	to remem- ber;
jmenovati se , <i>m̄ s̄e</i> ,	to be called;	podporovati , <i>p̄odporovat̄i</i> ,	to sup- port, to assist;
kupovati , <i>k̄up̄ovat̄i</i> ,	to be buying;	ztravovati , <i>str̄av̄ovat̄i</i> ,	to board.
Miluju (or miluji *) <i>mil̄ȳȳ</i> ;	I love; miluješ , <i>mil̄ȳyesh</i> ,	thou lovest; miluje ,	<i>mil̄ȳe</i> ,
	he (she, it) loves; milujeme , <i>mil̄ȳem̄e</i> ,	milujete , <i>mil̄ȳet̄e</i> ,	milujou (or milují *) <i>mil̄ȳem̄e</i> ,
	<i>mil̄ȳet̄e</i> , <i>mil̄ȳōȳ</i> ,	<i>mil̄ȳōȳ</i> ,	we, you, they love; —
	miloval jsem , <i>mil̄v̄al sem</i> ,	I loved; miluj , <i>mil̄y</i> ,	love, milujte ,
	mil̄ȳt̄e , love (you);		
děkuju (or děkuji), <i>d̄ek̄ūȳȳ</i> ,	I thank; děk̄oval jsem , <i>d̄ek̄ov̄al sem</i> ,	I thank- ed; děkuj , <i>d̄ek̄ūy</i> .	thank;
lituju (or lituji), <i>lit̄ūȳȳ</i> ,	I regret; litoval jsem , <i>lit̄ov̄al sem</i> ,	I regretted;	
	lituj , <i>lit̄ūy</i> ,	regret;	
jmenuju (or jmenuji), <i>men̄ūȳȳ</i> ,	I nam	; jmenoval jsem , <i>men̄ov̄al sem</i> ,	I named; jmenuj , <i>men̄ūy</i> ,
jmenuju se , <i>men̄ūȳ s̄e</i> ,	I am called; jmenoval jsem se , <i>men̄ov̄al sem s̄e</i> ,		
	I was called; jmenuj se , <i>men̄ūy s̄e</i> ,	call yourself;	
kupuju (or kupuji), <i>k̄up̄ūȳȳ</i> ,	I am buying; kupoval jsem , <i>k̄up̄ov̄al sem</i> ,		
	I was buying; kupuj , <i>k̄up̄ūy</i> ,	buy (or rather: keep buying);	

*²) **Miluju**, **milujou** (I love, they love) is always used in ordinary conversation: **miluji**, **miluji**, *mil̄ȳi*, *mil̄ȳee*, (I love, they love) prevails in the written language, being considered the proper grammatical form. This applies to all verbs of this conjugation: **děkuju**, **děkujou**, or **děkuji**, **děkují** (I thank, they thank); **lituju**, **litujou**, or **lituji**, **litují** (I regret, they regret); etc.

pracuju (or **pracují**, *prátsy*), I work; **pracoval jsem**, *prátsvál sem*, I worked; **pracuj**, *prátsy*, work;
raduju se (or **raduji se**), *rádý sě*, I rejoice; **radoval jsem se**, *rádovál sem sě*, I rejoiced; **raduj se**, *rádý sě*, rejoice;
opakuju (or **opakuji**), *opáký*, I repeat; **opakoval jsem**, *opákovál sem*, I repeated; **opakuj**, *opáký*, repeat;
pamatuju (or **pamatuji**), *pámáty*, I remember; **pamatoval jsem**, *pámátvál sem*, I remembered; **pamatuj**, *pámáty*, remember;
podporuju (or **podporuji**), *podporý*, I support; **podporoval jsem**, *podporvál sem*, I supported; **podporuj**, *podporý*, support;
žaluju (or **žaluji**), *žálý*, I complain; **žaloval jsem**, *žálovál sem*, I complained; **žaluj**, *žálý*, complain.

Bůh*, m. *booh*, God;
blížní** m. *bleežnee*, the fellow man, (neighbor);
král, *král*, the king;
královna, *králóvná*, the queen;
žebrák, m. *žebrák*, the beggar;
kamarád, m. *kámárád*, the comrade;
objevitel, m. *obyě-vitel*, the discoverer;
svět, m. *swyět*, the world;
země, f. *zemyě*, the country, the earth;
vlast, f. *vlăst*, one's country;
dávati, *dávati*, to give, to offer;
život, m. *živót*, life;
válka, f. *válkă*, war;

osud, m. *osúd*, fate;
vychování, n. *vykhováñee*, education;
díl, m. *d'eel*, a part;
výdělek, m. *veed'elek*, earnings. wages, profit;
který, á, é *kteree* or *keree*, which, what, who;
vespolek, *vespōlek*, { all together; one another;
nazpamět, *năspamyět*, by heart;
z paměti, *spamyěti*, from memory;
svobodný, á, é *swobodnee*, free; single;
Řimané, *rshimáné*, the Romans;
Václav, *vátslav*, Venceslaus, Wencel.

* **Bůh**, **Boha**, **Bohu**, **s Bohem** (*booh*, *bóh*, *bóh*, *sbóhem*), God of God (God's), to God, with God.

** Nouns having the termination of adjectives are declined like adjectives of the corresponding termination. Hence we decline: **blížní**, — **blížního**, of (our) fellow man or neighbor; **blížnímu**, to (our) neighbor; **s blížním**, with (our) neighbor. See Note 1, Lesson XXI.

EXERCISES.

Miluj blížního svého*). — **Milujte se vespolek.** Love thy neighbor. — Love (you) one another.

Miluješ rodiče své? — Miluju je velmi. Doest thou love thy parents? — I love them greatly.

Matka miluje své dítě. — Děti milují matku svou. The mother loves her child. — The children love their mother.

Washington miloval svou vlast. — Římané milovali válku. Washington loved his country; — The Romans loved war.

Co kupuješ? — Kupuji obilí. — Co kupoval jsi onehdy? — Kupoval jsem pár koní. What art thou buying? — I am buying grain.— What wert thou buying the other day?—I was buying a pair of horses.

Kdo kupoval tento dům? — Naši kupovali ten dům; — dávali za něj dva tisíce. Who has been buying this h use?— Our folks were buying that house; —they offered for it two thousand.

Chceš něco jísti? — Nechci nic, děkuju. Doest thou want something to eat? — I do not want anything, thank you.

Dal jsem žebráku pět centů a on děkoval mi. I gave to) the beggar five cents and he thanked me.

Děkujme Bohu, že jsme zdrávi. — Děkuj svému osudu, že jsi rozen ve svobodné zemi. Let us thank God that we are healthy. — Thank thy fate that thou wast born in a free country.

Děkujte rodičům za dobré výchování. Thank (your) parents for a good education.

Lituju že musím pryč. — Litoval jsem, že musil jsem odejít. Zůstaň zde, povídali všichni, nebo budeš litovati. I am sorry that I must (go) away.— I was sorry that I had to leave.— Stay here, they all said, or thou wilt be sorry.

* This is the objective case, responding to **koho?** *whom?* It agrees with the possessive case; see Remark on page 86.

Jak se jmenuješ? — Jmenuju se Václav Zeman. — A jak vy se jmenujete? — Já se jmenuju Staněk. Jmenuj mi pět dílů světa.

Jak se jmenoval objevitel Ameriky? — Krištof Kolumbus.

Jak se jmenoval král, který ho podporoval? — Ferdinand. — A královna? — Isabella.

Pracuj pilně a budeš radovati se nad výdělkem.

Rád pracuješ? — Ano, ale můj komárad nerad pracuje; — on pořád žaluje, že musí pracovati.

Pracovali jsme celý den.

Učitel žaloval mi, že jsi neposlušný; — opakuju, že musíš býtí poslušný; — pamatuj si to!

Pamatuj co se učíš; — pamatuješ si to? — Pamatuju to dobře; — učím se to nazpamět.

Pamatujme na chudé; — podporujme je. — Pamatujto že život jest krátký.

What is thy name? — My name is Wencel Zeman.—And what is your name? My name is Staněk. — Name (to me) the five parts of the world.

What was the name of the discoverer of America? — Christopher Columbus.

What was the name of the king who assisted him?—Ferdinand.—And of the queen? — Isabella.

Work diligently, and thou wilt rejoice over (thy) earnings.

Doest thou like to work?—Yes; but my comrade does not like to work; — he always complains that he must work.

We worked (or have been working) all day.

The teacher complained to me that thou art disobedient; — I repeat that thou must be obedient;—remember that!

Remember what thou learnest; — doest thou remember it? — I remember it well;—I learn it by heart.

Let us remember the poor; — let us support them. — Remember (you) that life is short.

Note. The root or stem of the verb **milovati** is **mil**, to which the termination **ovati** is attached. Verbs ending in **ovati** (when the termination is attached to the root) belong to the sixth conjugation.

LESSON XXXVI.

(Já) bych	<i>bikh</i>	I should	Abych (já)	<i>ăbikh</i> that I should
(ty) bys	<i>bis</i>	thou wouldst	abys (ty)	<i>ăbis</i> that thou shouldst
(on) by	<i>bi</i>	he would	aby (on)	<i>ăbi</i> that he should; etc.
(my) bychom	<i>bikhōm</i>	we should	Kdybych	<i>gdibikh</i> if I should
“ bysme	<i>bismě</i>		kdybys	<i>gdibis</i> if thou wouldst
(vy) byste	<i>bistě</i>	you would	kdyby	<i>gdibi</i> if he would (or simply “if”).
(oni) by	<i>bi</i>	they would		
Byl*) bych	<i>bill bikh</i>	I shou'd be	Abych byl	<i>ăbikh bill</i> that I shou'd be
byl bys	<i>bill bish</i>	thou wouldst be	abys byl	<i>ăbis bill</i> that thou shouldst be
byl by	<i>bill bi</i>	he would be; etc.	aby byl	<i>ăbi bill</i> that he should be; etc.
Byl bych byl,	I should have	Kdybych byl,		if I were,
byl bych býval,		kdybys byl,		if thou wert,
byl bys býval,	thou wouldst have been; etc.	kdyby byl,		if he were; etc.
Nesl bych,	<i>nessl bikh</i> , I should (or “would”) carry;	nesli bychom (or bysme)	<i>nessli bikhōm</i> , we should (or “would”) carry	
minul bych,	<i>miněl bikh</i> , I should pass	minuli bychom,	<i>miněli bikhōm</i> , we should pass	
viděl bych,	<i>viděl bikh</i> , I should see	viděli bychom,	<i>viděli bikhōm</i> , we should see	
činil bych,	<i>činěl bikh</i> , I should do	činili bychom,	<i>činěli bikhōm</i> , we should do	
volal bých,	<i>völäl bikh</i> , I should call	volali bychom,	<i>völäli bikhōm</i> , we should call	
miloval bych,	<i>milöväl bikh</i> , I should love	milovali bychom,	<i>milöväli bikhōm</i> , we should love.	

*) In the feminine gender **byla bych**, **byla bys**, **byla by**; third person neutre: **bylo by**, it would be. See Lesson IX.

Byl bych nesl, I should have carried.
byl bych minul, I should have passed.
byl bych viděl, I should have seen;

byl bych činil, I should have done;
byl bych volal, I should have called.
byl bych miloval, I should have loved.

Kdyby, *gdibi*, if
kterýkoli, *ktřeekoli*, whichever, any
kdož (same as **kdo**), *gdőž*, who
či, čili, *chi, chilli*, or
říci, *rsheetsi*, to say, to tell
řekni, *rshěkñi*, say, tell (thou)
řekněte, *rshěkñetě*, say, tell (you)
těžký, á, é *teshkee*, heavy, hard

kufr, m. *kuff'er*, the trunk
košík, m. *kosheek*, the basket
list, m. *list*, the letter
vodopád, m. *rđdōpád*, a waterfall
krajina, f. *krayină*, a section of
počasí, n. *pochassee*, the weather
štěkatí, *shťekăti*, to bark.

EXERCISES.

Nesl bych ten kufr, kdyby nebyl tak těžký.

I would carry that trunk, if it were not so heavy.

Byl bych nesl ten kufr, kdybyste byli chtěli.

I should have carried that trunk, if you had wanted it.

My bysme nesli košík a vy byste nesli pyteln.

We should carry the basket, and you would carry the sack.

Četl bys tu knihu? — Četl bych ji rád, kdybych ji měl.

Wouldst thou read that book? — I would like to read it, if I had it.

My bychom (or my bysme) rádi četli dnešní noviny.

We should like to read today's newspaper.

Které noviny byste rádi četli? — Kterékoliv.

What newspaper would you like to read? — Any newspaper.

Byli bychom (or byli bysme) četli ten list, ale byl tuze dlouhý.

We should have read that letter, but it was too long.

Pil bych pivo, kdybych ho měl. — Pil byste*) čaj? — Nepil bych nic.

I should drink beer, if I had it. — Would you drink tea? — I would not drink anything.

*) Speaking to one person and using the second person plural: **vy**, *you*; speaking to several persons, we should say: **pili byste** (would you drink).

**Kdyby bylo pěkně, sil bych pšenici.
Kdyby pes štěkal, kopnul bych ho.
Viděl bych rád vodopád Niagara.
Na cestě do Iowy viděli bysme řeku
Mississippi.**

**Kdybyste přijeli k nám, viděli by-
ste hezkou krajinu.**

**Kdybych věděl, jaké počasí bude,
řekl bych vám.**

Chodil bych k tobě, kdybys chtěl,

**On by chodil k vám často. — Proč
by nechodil? — Jen ať chodí!**

**Věřil bys tomu? — Věřil byste
že nemám čas? — Nevěřil bych
te**). —**

**Věřili by nám? — Myslím že věřili
by vám to.**

**Prodal bych rád můj obchod. —
Těžko byste prodal nyní.**

**Litoval bych, kdybyste prodal ten
obchod. — Já bych nelitoval nic.**

**Je čas, abych šel. — Řekni mu
aby šel.**

**Chej abys přišel brzy. — Chej aby-
ste odešli.**

Chcete abych to koupil?

If it were nice*), I should sow wheat.
If the dog barked, I should kick him.
I should like to see the Niagara Falls.
On (our) way to Iowa we should see
the river Mississippi.

If you would come to us, you would
see a nice country.

If I knew what kind of weather it
will be, I should tell you.

I should come to thee (i. e. "come
to see thee often", if thou wouldst
wish it.

He would come to you often.—Why
should he not come?—Do let him
come!

Wouldst thou believe it? — Would
you believe that I have no time?
— I should not believe it.

Would they believe us?—I think that
they would believe you (it).

I would like to sell my business. —
You would find it hard to sell now.

I should be sorry, if you would sell
that business. — I should not be
sorry at all.

It is time that I should go.—Tell him
to go or to come (i. e. tell him that
he should go).

I want thee to come soon.—I want
you to leave.

Do you want me to buy that?

* That is, "if the weather were nice".

) **Věřiti to (accus. case), **věřiti tomu** (dative case); both are used
with equal propriety.

Kdybys byl zde býval, byl bys viděl
všelico.

Kdybych tam byl, bylo by dobré.—

Kdybych tam byl býval, byl bych
rád.

If thou hadst been here, thou wouldst
have seen different things.

If I were there, it would be well.—If
I had been there, I should be glad.

Note 1. The English conjunctions *if*, *whether*, used to introduce a conditional sentence, are expressed in Bohemian by the suffix **li**, or by **jestli**, **zdali**, **pakli**, **yestli**, **zdáli**, **pákli**:

Jsem-li, *sem-li* } if I am,
jestli jsem, *yestli sem* } whether I
zdali jsem, *zdáli sem* } am;

byl-li jsem, *billi sem* } if I
jestli jsem byl, *yestli sem billi* } was,
zdali jsem byl, *zdáli sem billi* } if I
pakli jsem byl, *pákli sem billi* } have
budu-li *büdü-li* } if I shall
jestli budu, *yestli büdü* } be; etc.

nesu-li, *nessü-li* } if I carry;
jest-li nesu, *yestli nessü* }

jsme-li, *smě-li* } if I am,
jestli jsme, *yestli smě* } whether
zdali jsme, *zdáli smě* } we are;
byli-li jsme, *billi-li smě* } if we
jestli jsme byli, *yestli smě billi* } were,
zdali jsme byli, *zdáli smě billi* } if we
pakli jsme byli, *pákli smě billi* } have
budeme-li, *büděmě-li* } if we
jestli budeme, *yestli büděmě* } shall
be; etc

nesl-li jsem, *nesslli sem* } if I
jestli jsem nesl, *yestli sem nessl* } car-
ried

Arci (že), *artsi* } of course,
ovšem (že), *ofshém* } to be sure;
nikam, *níkám*, nowhere;
nikdo jiný, *nigdö yinee*, no one else;
ani my, *áñi me*, not even we,
neither we;
zač je, *zách yě*, what is it worth;
zač jsou, *zách soü*, what are they
worth;
mouka, f. *moúkă*, the flour;
tuna, f. *túnă*, a ton;
přijeti *prshiyět'i*, to arrive (by
some conveyance);

směti, *smyět'i*, to be allowed,
to dare;
smím-li, *smeemli*, if I may;
víte-li, *veetěli*, if you know;
slibiti, *sleebit'i*, to promise;
pověděti, *povyéd'et'i*, to tell;
pověz, *povyěz*, tell (thou);
utratiti, *üträt'it'i*, to spend;
vzíti si, *vzeet'i si*, to take (to
one's self);
vezmu si, *vězmü si*, I shall take
(to myself).

Note 2. The pronoun **si** has the same meaning as **sobě**, *sobyč*, “to one’s self”, for one’s self”. It often accompanies verbs, denoting the closest relation between the subject and its predicate, somewhat after the manner of reflexive verbs (connected with **se**, the same as **sebe**, one’s self). For instance:

Vzíti means simply “to take”; **vzíti si** means, “to take to one’s self”, — to take for one’s own use or exclusive possession. — **Vzíti kytku**, to take a flower; **vzíti si kytku**, to take (and keep for one’s self) a flower. — **Vzíti si ženu**, to take to one’s self a wife; **vzal si ženu**, he took unto himself a wife.

Vezmi si peníze, take (to thyself) money, *or* the money; **vezměte si piva**, take (yourself) some beer; **vezměme si vína**, let us take (ourselves) some wine.

Koupím klobouk, I shall buy a hat; **koupím si klobouk**, I shall buy (myself) a hat, — I shall buy me a hat; **kup si klobouk**, buy (thyself) a hat.

Dej udělat obraz, (*děj udělat obráz*), let (hou) a picture be made; order a picture to be made; **děj si udělat obraz**, let a picture be made for thyself. — **Dejte udělat šaty**, have a suit of clothes made; **dejte si udělat šaty**, have a suit of clothes made for yourself.

Note 3. The *finite* verb **vzíti** (to take) has only a past and future tense, — the *continuous* verb **bráti** (to take) supplying the present: **beru**, I take. See Note 3 on page 153.

Vzal jsem, **vzal jsi**, **vzal**, I took, thou tookest, he took; **vezmu**, **vezmeš**, **vezme**, I shall take, thou wilt take, he will take; **vezmi**, **vezměte**, take (thou, you).

In common discourse we often hear **vemu**, **vemeš**, **veme**, **věmū**, **věmesh**, **věmě**, in place of **vezmu**, **vezmeš**, **vezme**; and **vem**, **vemte**, **věm**, **věmtě**, in place of **vezmi**, **vezměte**.

EXERCISES.

Ptáte se, jsem-li rád? — Ovšem že jsem rád.	You ask if I am glad? — Of course I am glad.
Ptal jsem se, jsou-li naši zde. — Ar- ci že jsou , — pravil pan Hronek.	I asked if our folks were here. — Of course they are, — said Mr. Hronek.

Rád bych věděl, jestli sestra přijela.

Ráda bych věděla (f.), zdali bratr přijel.

Rád bych slyšel, je-li můj syn živ nebo mrtev.

Co myslíte, bude pršet? — Kdož ví, bude-li pršet čili nebude.

My slíte-li že bude pršet, nepůjdu nikam.

Chci vědět má-li peníze; — nemá-li, ať odejde.

Dám-li mu peníze, utratí je. — Dáme-li mu dollar, bude spokojen. — Dáte-li mi něco, budu rád.

Podívám se, zdali je otec doma. — Pověz mi pak, je-li doma nebo není.

Povězte mi, musím-li jít domu nebo ne. — Ať poví ti, musíš-li jít do školy.

Povězte mi, smím-li vzít si růži. — Smíš; ale nikdo jiný nesmí.

Vezmi si tu kytku. — Já nesmím.

Proč nesmíš? — Nesmíš-li ty, ne smím já.

Nesmí-li nikdo, nesmíme ani my.

Nevím smíme-li, nebo nesmíme.

To nesmíš dělat! — Jestli nesmím, teda nebudu.

Otec slíbil mi dollar, budu-li hodný.

I should like to know, if sister has arrived.

I should like to know if brother has arrived.

I should like to hear whether my son is alive or dead.

What do you think, will it rain? — Who knows if it will rain or not.

If you think that it will rain, I shall not go anywhere.

I want to know if he has money; — if he has not, let him go away.

If I give him money, he spends it. — If we give him a dollar, he will be satisfied. — If you give me something, I shall be glad.

I shall see if father is at home. — Tell me then if he is at home or not.

Tell me whether I must go home or not. — Let him tell thee, whether thou must go to school.

Tell me if I may take a rose. — Thou mayest; but nobody else may.

Take that flower. — I dare not (I must not).

Why must thou not? — If thou must not, I must not.

If nobody is allowed, then we too are not allowed.

I don't know whether we may or not.

Thou must not do that! — If I must not, than I shall not.

Father promised me a dollar if I am (i. e. shall be) good.

Jestli ti ho slíbil, dá ti ho.

If he has promised it (to thee), he will give it to thee.

Povězte mi, vite-li zač je tuna se-na. — Vite-li pak, zač jsou pra-sata?

Tell me if you know what is a ton of hay worth. — Do you know what hogs are worth?

Znáte-li pak mě? — Vite-li*) pak, že jsem zde dávno?

Do you know me? — Do you know that I have been here a long time?

Note 4. The present participle *being* varies in Bohemian according to gender and number:

jsa, sá, m. — jsouc, soúts, f. and n. — jsouce, soútsé, pl. of all three genders.

The past, *having been*, is rendered thus:

byv, bif, m. — byvši, bifshí, f. and n. — byvše, bifshé, pl. of all three genders.

The following models will amply suffice for the verbs of all conjugations :

nesa	<i>nessá</i> , m.	carrying	sedě	<i>sed'e</i> , m.	sitting
nesouc	<i>nessoúts</i> , f. & n.	"	sedíc,	<i>sed'eets</i> , f. & n.	"
nesouce	<i>nessoútsé</i> , pl.	"	sedíce,	<i>sed'eetsé</i> , pl.	"
pije	<i>piyě</i> , m.	drinking	volaje,	<i>voláyě</i> , m.	calling
pijíc	<i>piyeets</i> , f. & n.	"	volajíc,	<i>voláyeets</i> , pl.	"
pijíce	<i>piyeetsé</i> , pl.	"	volajíce,	<i>voláyeetsé</i> , pl.	"
miluje	<i>millüyě</i> , m.	loving	piv	<i>pif</i> , m.	having drank
milujíc	<i>millüyeets</i> , f. & n.	"	pivši	<i>pifshí</i> , f. & n.	"
milujíce	<i>millüyeetsé</i> , pl.	"	pivše	<i>pifshé</i> , pl.	"
seděv,	<i>sédef</i> , having sat;	volav,	<i>voláf</i> , having called; etc.		

*) We may ask, for instance : **víte zač je mouka?** "do you know what flour is worth?" But if we ask : **víte-li pak zač je mouka?** or **zdali pak víte, zač je mouka?** there is a peculiar emphasis in the question, as if we say in English : "I wonder if you know what flour is worth?" — **Zná-te mě?** "do you know me?" **Znáte-li pak mě?** or **zdali pak mě znáte?** "I wonder if you know me!"

Viděti, “to see”, is irregular, forming its partic. like **nesti** : **vida** m. **vidouc** f. & n., **vidouce**, pl. (*vidě*, *vidoučs*, *vidoučsě*), seeing.

These participles occur in the written language and sometimes in solemn discourse, but are never used in ordinary conversation. Expressions may be greatly shortened and made incisiye by their use; for instance :

“As he was going away from here, he fell down”, — may be translated into Bohemian: **Jda odsud, upadl.** In common discourse, however, people would say: **Když šel odsud, upadl** (or **upadnul.***)

A verbal adjective is formed in Bohemian by adding an **i** to the present participle (f. and n.). **jsoucí, soūtsee**, being; **nesoucí, nessoūtsee**, carrying; **pijící, piyeetsee**, drinking; **volající, volāyeetsee**, calling; **milující, millüyeetsee**, loving. — They are rarely employed in common conversation, but frequently in writing:

Muž nesoucí kufr minul mě; a man carrying a trunk passed me. — **Rodiče milující své děti jsou starostliví o ně**; parents loving their children are anxious about them.

LESSON XXXVII.

THE PASSIVE VERB. In English the “past participle” is also the *passive participle*, employed to form the “passive voice” or passive verb-phrases : *I am carried; I was carried; I shall be carried.*

In Bohemian there is a special “passive participle”, ending in **n** (**na** in the feminine, **no** is the neutre gender, — **ni, ny, na** in the plural), by which the passive voice of transitive verbs is formed :

Jsem nesen, sem nessěn (**nesena, nessěna** f., **neseno, nessěnō** n.), I am carried; **jsme neseni, y, a, smě nesseñi**, we are carried;

byl jsem nesen, bill sem nessěn, I was carried;

budu nesen, bědū nessěn, I shall be carried.

*) **Padnouti, pădnoūt'i**, to fall; **upadnouti, ūpădnoūt'i**, to fall down. As repeatedly stated in preceding lessons, the colloquial usage drops the final **i** of the infinitive, and the letter **t** has its ordinary hard sound : *pădnōt*, *ūpădnōt*.

Jsem viděn, sem viděn, I am seen; **jsem učen, sem učen, I am taught;** **jsem volán, sem volán, I am called;**
jsem milován, sem milován, I am loved;

The passive participle of verbs of the first conjugation ending in **iti**, and of verbs of the second conjugation (ending in **outi**) terminates in **it** and **ut**; for instance, — **bíti**, **minouti** (to beat, to pass):

Jsem bit, sem bit, I am beat (whipped or punished); byl jsem bit, I was beat; budu bit, I shall be beat :

jsem minut, *sem minut*, I am passed; **byl jsem minut**, I was passed;
buda minut, I shall be passed.

The imperative of the passive voice is expressed in Bohemian by **at**, which is already familiar to the student as an equivalent of the English "let":

Ať jsem nesen, a, o,	ăť sem nessěn,	let me be carried;
ať jsem bit, a, o,	ăť sem bit,	let me be whipped;
ať jsem volán, a, o,	ăť sem volán,	let me be called;
ať jsem milován, a, o,	ăť sem milován,	let me be loved.

In English the past or passive participle is often used as an adjective; for example: "An *invited* guest."

In Bohemian every passive participle may be changed into an adjective by adding ý (and changing a into á in the feminine, o into é in the neutre gender). For instance :

nesen, a, o : nesený, á, é, carried	viděn, a, o : viděný, á, é, seen
bit, a, o : bitý, á, é, beaten	volán, a, o : volaný, á, é, called
minut, a, o : minutý, á, é, passed	milován, a, o : milovaný, á, é, loved, beloved.

In the termination **án**, **ána**, **áno** the long vowel **á** is shortened when the participle changes into an adjective :

volán m., **volána** f. **voláno**, n. } **volaný** m. **volaná** f. **volané**, n. } called (as past participle and adjective).

POTENTIAL FORMS.

The potential mood employing the auxiliary *may* is formed in Bohemian by means of the verb **moci**, *motsi* (commonly **möcti**, vulgarly **möct**, *mötst*), which has an irregular inflection :

Mohu,	<i>mōhū,</i>	I may	můžeme,	<i>moožěmě,</i>	we may
můžeš,	<i>moožesh,</i>	thou mayest	můžete,	<i>moožětě,</i>	you may
může,	<i>moožě,</i>	he (she, it) may	mohou,	<i>mōhōu,</i>	they may;
mohl, (a, o) bych,	<i>mōhl, (o, o), bikh,</i>				
		I might			
mohl bys,	<i>mōhl bis,</i>	thou mightest	mohli, (y, a) bychom	<i>(or bysme;</i>	
mohl by,	<i>mōhl bi,</i>	he might		<i>mōhl bismě,</i>	we might
Mohu býti nesen,	I may be carried		mohli byste,	<i>m. bistě,</i>	you might
mohu býti bit,	I may be whipped		mohli by,	<i>m. bi,</i>	they might
mohu býti viděn,	I may be seen		mohl bych býti nesen,	I might be	
mohu býti milován,	I may be loved			carried	
			mohl bych býti bit,	I might be	
				whipped	
			mohl bych býti viděn,	I might be	
				seen	
			mohl bych býti milován,	I might be	
				loved.	

Mohl jsem býti nesen, *mōhl sem beet'i nessěn,* I might have been carried;
mohl jsem býti bit, *mōhl sem beet'i bit,* I might have been whipped.

Otherwise **moci** has the meaning of "can" or "to be able":

Mohu to udělati; — nemohu to u-	dělati;	I can do it; — I cannot do it;
mohl jsem to udělati; — nemohl	jsem to udělati;	I could do it (or: I could have done it):
budu moci to udělati; — nebudu	moci to udělati.	— I could not do it;
Můžete přijíti? — Nemůžeme přijíti.		I shall be able to do it; — I shall not be able to do it;
Mohou choditi? — Nemohou choditi.		Can you come? — We cannot come. Can they walk? — They cannot walk.

In common discourse **mohu** (I can), and **mohou** (they can) are displaced by **můžu** and **můžou**, *moožū*, *moožou*, making the present tense consistent, if not regular.

REITERATIVE FORM.

The English reiterative form of "used to" is rendered in Bohemian:
 1. — By reiterative verbs derived from simple verbs as explained in Note

5, Lesson XIII; for instance: **hráti** means “to play”; **hrávati** means “to play often”, to use to play;

hrál jsem tam; hrával jsem tam; | I played there; I used to play there;
— hráli tam; hrávali tam. | — they played there; they used to
 play there.

2; — By verbs having in themselves a reiterative meaning; for instance : **přicházeti**, *prshikházět'i*, means “to come often” (also “to be coming”); **docházeti**, *dökházět'i*, means “to go often somewhere”, to make frequent calls, (also “to be on the decline”);

on přichází k nám; on přicházel k nám; — my docházeli k němu; budeme docházeti k němu. | he often comes to us; he used to come to us; — we used to go to him; we shall often go to him.

LESSON XXXVIII.

English participles may be used substantively, or changed into nouns; for instance :

speaking, — *the speaking*; sitting, — *the sitting*; calling, — *the calling*.

In Bohemian, nouns are derived from verbs in two different ways, illustrated by the following examples :

1.

bíti,	<i>beet'i,</i>	to beat; — bití,	<i>bit'ee,</i>	the beating;
píti,	<i>peet'i,</i>	to drink; — pití,	<i>pit'ee,</i>	the drinking;
šíti,	<i>sheet'i,</i>	to sew; — štíti,	<i>shit'ee,</i>	the sewing;
žíti,	<i>žeet'i,</i>	to live; — žtíti,	<i>žit'ee,</i>	the living;
bod-nouti,	<i>bodnoúťi,</i>	to stab; — bod-nutí,	<i>bodnúťee,</i>	the stabbing;
				a stab;

hyn-outi, *hynoúťi*, to be perishing; — **hyn-utí**, *hinúťee*, the perishing; **kop-nouti**, *kopnoúťi*, to kick; — **kop-nutí**, *kopnúťee*, the kicking, a kick

2.

nes-ti,	<i>nesst'i,</i>	to carry; — nes-ení,	<i>nesseñee,</i>	the carrying;
pás-ti,	<i>pásst'i,</i>	to herd; — pas-ení,	<i>pásseñee,</i>	the herding;
vid-ěti,	<i>vid'et'i,</i>	to see; — vid-ění,	<i>vid'eñee,</i>	the seeing; the vision;
slyš-eti,	<i>slíshět'i,</i>	to hear; — slyš-ení,	<i>slíshéñee,</i>	the hearing;
mluv-iti,	<i>mlúvít'i,</i>	to speak; — mluv-ení,	<i>mlúvěñee,</i>	the speaking;
volati,	<i>voláti,</i>	to call; — vol-ání,	<i>voláñee,</i>	the calling or call;
milov-ati,	<i>milováti,</i>	to love; — milov-ání,	<i>milováñee,</i>	the loving.

The simple rules of derivation are apparent from the above list.

1. Verbs terminating in **íti** (forming a subdivision of the first conjugation; Note 3, p. 138;) are changed into nouns by a simple transfer of the long **í** : **pítí**, to drink, — **pítí**, the drinking.

2. Verbs ending in **outi** (which belong to the second conjugation) become nouns by a change of its termination into **utí** : **bodnoutí**, to stab, (**bodnu**, I shall stab), — **bodnutí**, the stabbing, or “a stab”.

3. Verbs ending in **ěti**, **eti**, **iti** (which form the third and fourth conjugations) become nouns by changing their termination into **ění** or **ení** : **viděti**, to see, — **vidění**, the seeing, or “the vision”; **mluviti**, to speak, — **mluvení**, the speaking.

4. Verbs ending in **ati** (which form the fifth and sixth conjugations) become nouns by changing that termination into **ání** : **volati**, to call, — **volání**, the calling, or “the call”.

When the long vowel **á** occurs in the root of a simple verb, it is shortened in the process of deriving a noun :

pásti, *pásst'i*, to herd (or “to pasture”); **pas-ení**, *pásseñee*, the herding; **psá-ti**, *psáti*, to write; **psa-ní**, *psáñee*, the writing.

In some cases the derivation of nouns from verbs of the first conjugation is somewhat irregular, the same as the formation of the tenses for instance :

čísti, *cheest'i*, to read; (**čtu**, *čteš*, **čte**, *chtū*, *chtěsh*, *chtě*, I read, thou readest, he reads); — **čte-ní**, *chtěñee*, the reading;

plesti, *plest'i*, to twist; (**pletu**, *pleteš*, **plete**, I twist, thou twistest, he twists); — **plete-ní**, *plětěñee*, the twisting;

klásti, *klást'i*, to lay; (**kladu**, *kladeš*, **klade**, I lay, thou layest, he lays); — **klade-ní**, *kláděñee*, the laying;

másti, *mást'i*, to confuse (to mix up); **mate**, he confuses; — **matení**, *mětěñee*, the confusion or mixing up;

městi, *mest'i*, to sweep; — **mete**, he sweeps; — **metení**, *mětěñee*, the sweeping; **vesti**, *vesst'i*, to lead; **vede**, he leads; — **vedení**, *věděñee*, the leading.

LESSON XXXIX.

VERBS CLASSIFIED.

1. — As before observed (in Lesson XXXI) **nesti**, “to carry” or “to be carrying”, is a verb denoting a **CONTINUOUS** action.

2. — By means of prefixes other verbs are derived therefrom, which denote a limited or **FINISHED** action and are called **FINITE** verbs; for example :

donesti, *dōness't'i*, to carry somewhere or to somebody ;

přinesti, *prshinesst'i*, to bring, to fetch.

3. — Many continuous verbs have a corresponding form denoting a **REPEATED** or reiterated action; for instance :

nesti ,	<i>ness't'i</i> ,	to carry;	nositi ,	<i>nossit'i</i> ,	to carry repeatedly;
vezti ,	<i>vezt'i</i> ,	to carry (in a vehicle);	voziti ,	<i>vozit'i</i> ,	“ “ “
vesti ,	<i>vesst'i</i> ,	to lead;	voditi ,	<i>vodit'i</i> ,	to lead repeatedly;
čísti ,	<i>cheest'i</i> ,	to read;	čítati ,	<i>cheetăt'i</i> ,	to read repeatedly;
pásti ,	<i>pásst'i</i> ,	to herd;	pásati ,	<i>pássăt'i</i> ,	to herd repeatedly;
letěti ,	<i>letět'i</i> ,	to fly;	lítati ,	<i>leetăt'i</i> ,	to fly repeatedly;
jeti ,	<i>yet'i</i> ,	to ride;	jezditi ,	<i>yerdit'i</i> ,	to ride repeatedly.

There are, besides, reiterated verbs derived in the manner explained in Note 5, page 61, and denoting so to say a **CUSTOMARY** action; for instance:

nositi,	to carry repeatedly,	nosí-va-ti, <i>nosseerăt'i</i> , to use to carry,
voziti,	to carry repeatedly (in a (vehicle),	vozí-va-ti, <i>vozeevăt'i</i> , to use to carry,
voditi,	to lead repeatedly,	vodí-va-ti, <i>vod'eevăt'i</i> , to use to lead,
čítati,	to read repeatedly,	čítá-va-ti, <i>cheedávăt'i</i> , to use to read.
pásati,	to herd repeatedly,	pásá-va-ti, <i>pássávăt'i</i> , to use to herd,
lítati,	to fly repeatedly,	lítá-va-ti, <i>leetávăt'i</i> , to use to fly.
jezditi,	to ride repeatedly;	jezdí-va-ti, <i>yezd'eevăt'i</i> , to use to ride.

4. -- Certain verbs denote an action which is simply MOMENTARY. As a rule they terminate in **iti**, belonging to the fourth conjugation. For instance : **skočiti**, *skočit'i*, to jump, to leap, — that is, to make a jump or leap.

From these are derived FINITE verbs in the same manner as from continuous verbs (1.), namely by prefixes. For instance :

kročiti , to make a step,	zakročiti , <i>zákročit'i</i> , to step between, to in-
	terfere;
skečiti , to jump,	vyskočiti , <i>vyskočit'i</i> , to jump out <i>or</i> up;
střeliti , to shoot (once),	zastřeliti , <i>zastřeshelit'i</i> , to shoot dead;
strčiti , to push,	vystrčiti , <i>vist'rchit'i</i> , to push out;
pustiti , to let go,	vypustiti , <i>vypuštit'i</i> , to let out;
chyttiti , to catch,	zachytiti , <i>zákhitit'i</i> , to catch up, to snatch;
chybiti , to err,	pochybiti , <i>pókhbit'i</i> , to commit an error.

Note 1. Such is the general classification of Bohemian verbs in regard to the duration of the action or process they denote. But for practical purposes it is sufficient to distinguish two great classes of verbs, namely:

1. CONTINUOUS VERBS, denoting a continued or repeated action. This class comprises the simple verbs of all conjugations except some ending in **outi** and **iti**. For instance: **nesti**, to carry; **plouti**, to float; **viděti**, to see; **činiti**, to do; **volati**, to call; **milovati**, to love.

2. FINITE VERBS, denoting a finished or momentary action or process. This class comprises many verbs of the second and fourth conjugations.

tions, ending in **outi** and **iti**; for instance: **minouti**, to pass; **bodnouti**, to stab; **skočiti**, to leap; **střeliti**, to shoot (to discharge a shot).

Most of the verbs derived from others by prefixes also belong to this class; for example: **vyskočiti**, to jump up; **donesti**, to carry somewhere; **pominouti**, to pass over; **uviděti**, to catch a sight; **učiniti**, to do a certain act; **zavolati**, to call out or up; **pomilovati**, to fondle a little.

The finite verbs have in fact only a past and a future tense, and no present, because their present *form* denotes a *future action*:

donesu , I shall carry somewhere;	uvidím , I shall see;
minu , I shall pass;	učiním , I shall do;
udělám , I shall make;	skočím , I shall jump;
zavolám , I shall call;	vyskočím , I shall jump up;
pomiluju (or pomiluji) I shall fondle;	střelím , I shall shoot.

LESSON XI.

Every language has peculiar ways or modes of expression, which cannot be taken literally; or translated closely into another language. They are called idiomatic expressions or **IDIOMS**. Many of them are of frequent occurrence in ordinary intercourse.

The student will naturally desire to know the Bohemian equivalents of such English expressions as are in constant use in common conversation. He will find most of them in the following list, the English expression always preceding in Bohemian, in order to facilitate their study. The beginner should often peruse these phrases until he has a perfect command of them, or — to use an English idiom — until "he has them at his fingers' ends."

All along,	venkencem ,	veskrze ,	<i>venkōntsěm</i> ,	<i>vesk'rzě</i> ;
all over,	všude ,		<i>vshūdě</i> ;	
all is over,	je po všem ,		<i>yě pofshěm</i> ;	
all in all,	vůbec ,		<i>voobets</i> ;	
all one,	vše jedno ,		<i>fshě yednō</i> ;	
all the same,	" "	" "	" "	" "

all the time,
all the better,
all hollow,
all of a sudden,
along-side,
as far as I can,
as far as possible,
as far as I am concerned
as far as that is con-
cerned.

at any rate,
at all events,
at last,
at length,
at once,
all at once,
at large,

Be it as it may,

be perfectly easy,
by and by,
by the bye,
by the way,
by day,
by night,
by the day,
by the week,
by the piece,
by all means,

Call for me,
can it be possible?
can't do it !

stále, pořád,
tím líp,
na dobro,
najednou, z nenadání,
vedle,
pokud mohu,
pokud možná,
co se mě týče,
co se toho týče,

{ bud' jak bud',

{ konečně,

{ hned, najednou,
vůbec, celkem,

bud' jak bud', at' je
jakkoli;
bud'te bez starosti,
hnedle, znenáhla,
{ mimo to,
{ apropos,
za dne,
v noci,
na den,
na týden,
od kusu,
na všecken spůsob,

stavte se pro mě,
je-li možná?
nejde to !

stálě, pörshád;
ťeem leep;

nă dōbrō;

năyednoū, zněnădáñi;

vědlě;

pōkūd mōhū;

pōkūd možná;

tsō sě myč teechě;

tsō sě tōhō teechě;

büd' yäk büd';

kōnechñě;

hněd, năyednoū;

voobets, tselkem.

büd' yäk büd'; at' yě
yäkkoli;

büdtě bestäröst'i;

hnedlě, zněnáhla;

mimō tō,

äpropo,

ză dně;

vnotsi;

nă den;

nă teeden;

öd küsü;

nă fshěkhen spoosob.

stăftě sě pro myč;

yelli možná?

něydě tō!

come on,
come along,
come and see us,

{ pojď ! pojďte !
přijďte nás navštívit,

poyd', poyd'te*);
prshid'tě nás náfsht'ee-vit.

Don't you hear?
don't you see?
don't you know it?
don't mention it!
dear me !
day and night,
day by day,
do as you please,
drop me a line.

což neslyšíte?
což nevidíte?
což to nevíte?
to nestojí za řeč,
o jemine !
ve dne v noci,
den co den,
dělejte jak myslíte,
pište mi pár rádek,

tsdšh něslisheetě?
tsdšh něvid'eetě?
tsdšh tō něveetě?
tō nestoyee ză rshěch;
o yěmině;
vě dně vnotsi;
den tsd den;
děleytě yák misleetě;
pishtě me pár rsháděk.

Excuse me !
very now and then,
Farewell !
Good-bye !
get up !
get out !
get ready !
give me a rest !
go ahead !
go on !

odpustě !
každou chvíli,
{ s bohem—na zdar !
zhůru !—vstaňte !
ven !—pojd'te ven !
připravte se !
dejte mi pokoj !
{ jen dál !

odpustě !
kăždoǔ khweeli;
sbřhem ! — nă zdăr !
zhoorū !—fstiňtě!
ven !—pöd'tě ven !
prshipräftě sě !
deytě me pökoy !
yen dál !

Help yourself !
here an l there,
hurry up !
he is good at it !

poslužte si ! vemte si !
račte !
sem tam,
hónem !
on to umí ! on to zná !

poslūšhtě si ! věmtě si !
rěchtě !
sem tām,
hōnem !
ōn tō ūmee ! ūn tō zná !

*) Colloquially *pöd'*, *pöd'tě*, (thou, you) come on. — I *pojd'te už!*
i pöd'tě ūsh! come on, now! do come along!

he is good for nothing;
he is on the lookout;
he is well off;
he means no harm;
he took a hint;
he keeps out of sight;
he has a head of his
own;
how do you do ?
how are you ?

není k ničemu;
on číhá;
on se má dobrě;
on to zle nemyslí,
dovtípil se;
on se straní;
on má vlastní hlavu;
} jak se máte ?

neyñi kñichémü;
ðn cheehá;
ðn së má döbrshë;
ðn tø zlë némislee;
döftéepil së;
ðn së sträñee;
ðn má vlästñee hlävü;
yäk së mätë?

I am glad of it !
I bet, — I guess,
I don't care;
I have a mind.
I made up my mind,
I can't afford it;
I can't stand it (*meaning*: I hate it);
I can do without it;
I have taken a fancy
to it;
I have no hand in it;
I had some words with
him;

to mě těší !
vsadím se, — myslím,
nedbám; to je mi jedno;
hodlám,
odhodlal jsem se,
nejsem s to;
nemohu to vystát (vy-
stati);
mohu být bez toho;
zalíbilo se mi to;

tø myë tëshee !
fsäd'eeem së, — misleem,
nëdbám; tø yë mi yednø
hodlám,
ödhodläl sem së,
neysem stö;
nëmöhü tø vistát;
möhü beet bes töhö;
zäleebilö së mi tø;

I had rather
I would sooner
I am no match for him;
I am very anxious;
I am sorry for it;
I will make him do it;

} raději bych
já s něho nejsem;
mám starost;*) — tuze
rád bych**)
lituju toho;
já ho denutím;

räd'ey bikh
yá sñého neysem;
mám stärost; — toozë
rád bikh;
litüyü töhö;
yá hö dönußeem;

*) When it means an anxiety, care or suspense about something.

**) When it means an impatience to do or to know something.

I will see you paid;
I am in no hurry;
I must be off;
I think much of him;
if you please;
indeed;
it is all over;
it is of no use;

it is none of your business;
it is your turn;
it is a bargain;
it is a pity;
it grew into a habit;
it wears well (of a dress
or stuff);

Keep still!
keep in line!
Let it go: — let go !
let me alone;
let me in;
let me know;
look here;
look out!
Mind you;
No doubt; — no mat' er;
no matter how it is;
no matter who it is;
never mind;

postarám se o váš plat;
nemám na spěch;
musím pryč;
já si ho moc vážím;
prosím; — račte;
opravdu; — skutečně;
je po všem;
není to nic platné

(meaning: it will do
no good); — není to
k ničemu (meaning:
it is of no service);

vám po tom nic není;

ted' je na vás;
zůstane při tom;
to je škoda;
stalo se zvykem;
dobře se nese;

Ticho! — Bud' te zticha!
do řady!
nechte to být; — pusťte;
nechte mě;
pusťte mě tam;
dejte mi vědět;
hled' te;
pozor!
pamatujte;
zajisté; — nic nedělá;
at' je to jakkoli;
at' je to kdokoli;
nic nedělá; — co na
tom;

postárám se o váš plát;
němám ná spyékh;
můseem prich;
yá si hře mots vážem;
proseem; — rächtě;
oprávdě; skútechňě;
yě pofshem;
neyňi tō nits plátné; —
neyňi tō kňichěmě;

vám pō tōm nits neyňi;

ted' yě ná váss;
zoostaně prshitōm;
tō yě shkodā;
stalo sě zwikem;
dobrshě sě nessě;

tíkhř! — břd' te stíkhř!
dř rshády!
nekhtě tō beet! — pustě!
nekhtě myě;
pustě myě tām;
deylě mi vyědět;
hled' te;
pozor!
pámětě;
zāyisté; nits nědělā;
áť yě tō yáckoli;
áť yě tō gděkoli;
nits nědělā; — tsř ná
tōm;

not yet; — not at all;	ještě ne, — dokonce ne;	<i>yeshtě ně; — dökontsě ně;</i>
now and then; now we are even;	časem, — chvílemi; ted' jsme kvit;	<i>chássem; — khweelemi ted' smě kwit;</i>
Of course; on a sudden; on purpose; on the contrary; on the wing; once for all; one by one;	ovšem; — to se rozumí; náhle; — z nenadání; schválně; — naschvál. naopak; v letu; jednou na vždy; po jednom; — jeden za druhým; po kusu; dost času!	<i>ofshém; — tō sě rozumee; náhlě; zněnádáñí; skhwálñě; náskhwál; năopák; vletū; yednoú nă vždy; pō yědnom; — yěden ză drúheem; pō kúsú; dost chăssú!</i>
Piece by piece; plenty time !	zkažte mi;	<i>skăshtě me;</i>
Send me word; served him right !	dobře tak !	<i>dobrshě tăk!</i>
Take care ! the more the better; the other day; the time is up; that's it! — that will do;	pozor! — dejte pozor!	<i>pōzor! — deytě pōzor!</i>
that's right !	čím víc tím líp;	<i>cheem veets ūeem leep;</i>
that is out of my way: they like to show off;	onehdy;	<i>ōněhdy;</i>
to be short about it;	čas prošel;	<i>chăss proshell;</i>
to be sure !	to je to! — to je dost;	<i>tō yě tō; — tō yě dost;</i>
to call and see, (to pay a visit);	to dostačí;	<i>tō dōstăčhee;</i>
to find fault;	to je dobré!	<i>tō yě dobrshě!</i>
to get rid (of some- thing);	to je mi z ruky;	<i>tō yě me z růky;</i>
to give a blowing;	rádi se ukazuji;	<i>rádi sě ūkăzúyee;</i>
to come about;	krátce řečeno;	<i>krátsě rshěchěnō;</i>
to no purpose;	zajisté!	<i>zăyisté!</i>
	navštívit;	<i>năfshěevit;</i>
	vytýkat;	<i>vyteekăt;</i>
	zbavit se (ěcho);	<i>zbăvit sě;</i>
	vymluvit,	<i>vymlăvit;</i>
	státi se,	<i>státi sě;</i>
	zbytěchně,	<i>zbytěchñě;</i>

Well?— Very well.
 well to do, well off;
 what of that? — what
 does it matter?
 what is the matter?
 what is the question?
 what is the matter with
 you?
 what next?
 what will become of
 us?
 we had better go;
 we had better go and
 see;

You are right;
 you are wrong,
 you are mistaken;
 you are late;
 you are safe;
 you are gone up!
 you are welcome to it;
 year by year;
 you must not find fault;
 you ought to be glad;
 — you ought to be
 gone;

nužel? — dōbrě;
 zámožný,
 co na tom? co z toho?
 co se děje? (i. e. what
 is happening)?
 oč se jedná? oč běží?
 co je vám?
 co dále?
 co z nás bude? co se s
 námi stane?
 abysme raději šli;
 abysme se raději podí-
 vali (i. e. šli podívat);

máte pravdu;
 { mejlít se;
 jdete pozdě;
 jste v tom dobře;
 s vámi je konec!
 vemte si to; — přeju
 vám to;
 rok co rok;
 nesmíte dělat výčitky;
 měl byste být (or býti)
 rád; — měl byste být
 pryč;

nůžel? — dōbrshě;
 zámožnee;
 tsř nř tom? tsř střhř?
 tsř sř dřeyě?
 řch sř yedná? — řch byř-
 žee?
 tsř yř vám?
 tsř dálě?
 tsř znáss břdě? tsř sř
 snámi střně?
 ābysmř rřdřey shli;
 ābysmř sř rřdřey po-
 dřeváli;

mátě prřavdř;
 meyletě sř;
 dřetě pozdř;
 stř flom dōbrshě;
 svámi yř křnets!
 vemtě si tř; — prřshřyř
 vám tř;
 rřk tsř rřk;
 nesmeetě dřelat veechitky
 m' yell bystř beet rád; —
 m' yell bystř beet prich.

PART III.

Bohemian conversation.

Note 1. In the following conversations we shall invariably observe the common rule of politeness, which requires the use of the personal pronoun **vy** (you) in addressing another person. Hence all verbs employed in the same will appear in the second person plural (for instance: **jste, máte**, (you are, you have), and not in the second person singular **jsi***), **máš**, (thou art, thou hast), which is properly confined to familiar or very intimate intercourse, as fully set forth in Section 9, Part I; otherwise the use of the second person singular (**ty**, thou) is out of place and in fact vulgar, although freely indulged in by some ill-informed or ill-bred persons among the Bohemians in America.

Throughout these conversations we give the Bohemian pronunciation in full**). It is true that the student, having advanced so far, may be supposed to be able to pronounce every word and to read Bohemian without difficulty; but the pronouncing column will nevertheless continue to be an aid, especially welcome in such cases as may appear to be somewhat obscure and doubtful.

*) In common discourse we frequently hear **ty jseš, ty sěsh**, in place of **ty jsi**. — **Ty jseš velký, ty sěsh velkee**, thou art tall. — **Jseš rád** (instead of **jsi rád?**) **sěsh rád?** art thou glad? — **Jseš zdráv, sěsh zdráf?** (f. **jseš zdráva?** **sěsh zdrávā?**) art thou well? — **Jseš hotov? sěsh hōtof?** (f. **jseš hotova?** **sěsh hōtovā?**) art thou ready?

**) The rules given in Sections 2 and 4, Part I, are supposed to have been thoroughly digested and practiced by the student, as well as the forty introductory lessons contained in Part II. Unless that is done, it will be useless and disappointing to proceed with this eminently practical part of our Bohemian Course.

In regard to the pronunciation of Bohemian infinitives (for instance: **míti**, to have; **činiti**, to do; **dělati**, to make) we again remind the student of the explanation given in Note 1, Lesson XI. In the pronouncing column of these conversations we shall as a rule follow the colloquial custom of dropping the final **i**, to simplify matters and to present the sentences as they are generally heard in actual intercourse.

The student will always bear in mind that Bohemian orthography and pronunciation are on the whole governed by the rule which appears to be the ideal of many would-be reformers of English orthography, namely:

A sound for every letter and a letter for every sound, and no silent letters. —

In regard to capital letters the rules in Bohemian are the same as in English, excepting that adjectives derived from names of nations or countries are not written with a capital letter; for example: English, Bohemian, European, **anglický**, **český**, **evropský** (*ănglitskee*, *cheskee*, *ĕvropskee*).

Bohemian and English.

ČEŠTINA a ANGLIČINA.

The Bohemian language;—the Bohemian tongue.

Do you know Bohemian? — do you speak Bohemian?

Yes, I speak Bohemian well.

Do you speak English?

Perfectly; — a little; — not much.

Do you understand English? — I do.

Česká řeč; — **český jazyk.**

Umíte česky? — **mluvíte česky?**

Ano, mluvím česky dobrě.

Mluvíte anglicky?

Dokonale; — **trochu;** — **ne mnoho.**

Rozumíte anglicky? — **Rozumím.**

chesská rshěch; — *chess-kee yázyk.*

ümeetě chesske? — *mlü-veetě chesske?*

ănă, mlüveem chesske döbrshě.

mlüveetě ănglitske?

dökönălă; — *trokhă;* — *nă mnăhă.*

rozümeetě ănglitske? — *rozümeem.*

In America everybody has to know English.	V Americe každý má u- měti*) anglicky.	vämeritsě každee má ū- myet ānglitske.
I am learning English.	Učím se anglicky.	ūcheem sě ānglitske.
Do you learn Bohemi- an?	Učíte se česky?	ūcheetě sě chesske?
I want to learn Bohe- mian.	Chci se učiti česky.	khtsi sě ūchit chesske.
I want to know (i. e. to acquire) Bohemian.	Chci uměti česky.	khtsi ūmyet chesske.
I would like to learn Bohemian.	Rád bych učil se čes- ky.	rád bikh ūchil sě chess- ke.
I would like to know Bohemian.	Rád bych uměl česky.	rád bikh ūmyell chess- ke.
I must learn (i. e. ac- quire) Bohemian.	Musím se naučiti čes- ky.	müseem sě năřchit chesske.
Yes, do learn Bohemian	Ano, naučte se česky.	ăno, năřuchte sě chesske
I am learning Bohemi- an.	Učím se česky.	ūcheem sě chesske.
How long have you been learning**) Bo- hemian?	Jak dlouho učíte se česky?	yăk dloŭhō ūcheetě sě chesske?
I have been learning Bohemian since last year.	Učím se česky od lon- ska.	ūcheem sě chesske od lonskă.
How long did you learn English?	Jak dlouho učil jste se anglicky?	yăk dloŭhō ūchil stě sě ānglitske?
I learned (or: I was learning) English one year.	Učil jsem se anglicky rok.	ūchil sem sě ānglitske rök.

*) **Míti** (to have) often in connection with another verb signifies obligation or necessity, the same as in English: **Mám uměti**, I have to know, I am obliged or expected to know: **mám jítí**, I have to go; — **má uměti**, he has to know; **každý má uměti**, everybody has to know.

) The present tense in Bohemian is also used for the English perfect tense: **(jak dlouho) učíte se, — (how long) have you been learning. See second foot-note on page 98.

I learned (i. e. acquired) English in one year.

To learn English is not difficult.

Neither is Bohemian. How soon shall I learn Bohemian?

If you will be (*or* if you are) diligent, you will learn it soon.

About how soon?

In a few months.

I have been learning Bohemian only two months, and already I know a good deal.

I am getting along well. Already I understand nearly all.

It is not difficult; — it is easy.

Only plenty of exercise! then you make good progress.

Do you understand Bohemian?

✓ I understand a little.

I understand already a good deal.

I understand already nearly all.

Do you understand German?

Naučil jsem se anglicky za rok.

Naučiti se anglicky není těžké.

Česky také ne.

Jak brzo naučím se česky?

Budete-li pilný, naučíte se brzo.

Jak brzo asi?

Za pár měsíců.

Učím se česky teprv dva měsíce, a už umíme hezky.

Jde to dobře.*)

Už rozumím skoro všecko.

Není to těžké; — je to lehké.

Jen hodně cviku! pak to jde*!

Rozumíte česky?

Rozumím trochu.

Rozumím už hodně.

Rozumím už hnedle všecko.

Rozumíte německy?

nářchil sem sě anglické za rok.

nářchit sě anglické neyňi těškké.

chesske tāké ně.

yák b^erzo nářcheem sě chesske?

břdětě li pilnee, nářcheetě sě b^erzō.

yák b^erzō ási?

zā pár myěseetsoo.

úcheem sě chesske tep^erf dva myěseetsě, a ūsh úmeem hesske.

dě tō dobrshě.

úsh rozumeeem skorō fshětskō.

neyňi tō těshkké; — yě tō lehké.

yen hodňě tswikū! pák tō dě!

rozumíte chesske?

rozumímeem trokhū.

rozumímeem úsh hodňě.

rozumímeem úsh hnedle fshětsko.

rozumíte němetske?

*) **Jde to dobře;** literally: it goes well. **Pak to jde;** then it goes.

I do not.—I understand a little bit.

Do you know (how) to write Bohemian?

Not yet; but I shall learn) it.

I shall know (it) soon.

I must know both to read and to write Bohemian.

You will learn that easily.

I expect to learn it in half a year.

Why does not John learn English?

He is going to learn;— he must learn it well.

When will he commence to learn?

Shortly.

My neighbor's boy speaks English perfectly and understands also Latin.

Annie is learning to read and write Bohemian.

Have you a Bohemian newspaper? — lend me it.

Lend me a Bohemian book.

What book? — Any book.

Nerozumím. — Rozumím něco málo.

Umíte psáti po česku?

Ještě ne; ale budu se učiti.

Budu uměti brzo.

Musím uměti čísti i psáti po česku.

To se naučíte snadno.

Hodlám se to naučiti za půl leta.

Proč se Jan neučí anglicky?

On se bude učiti;—musí se naučiti dobře.

Kdy se začne učiti?

Co nevidět.

Sousedův hoch mluví anglicky dokonale a rozumí také latinsky.

Anna učí se česky čísti a psáti.

Máte české noviny? — půjčte mi je.

Půjčte mi českou knihu.

Jakou? — Jakoukolí.

něrozůmeeem — *rozů-
meem nětsd̄ mál̄o.*

úmeete psít pō chesskū?

*yeshťe ně; āl̄e būdū se
úchit.*

būdū úmyet b̄ eřzō.

*můseem úmyet cheest i
psát pō chesskū.*

tō sě năúcheetě snădnō.

*hodlám sě tō năúchit ză
pool letă.*

*prōch sě yān něúchee
ānglitske?*

*ón se būdē úchit;—mū-
see sě năúchit dobrshē.
gdy sě zăchně úchit?*

*tsō něvidět.
soúsedooof hōkh mlūvee
ānglitske dōkonäl̄e a
rozumee tăké lăt̄in-
ske.*

*ānă úchee sě chesske
cheest a psát.*

*mátě chesské nōviny? —
půchtě me yě.*

*půchtě me chesskou kñi-
hū.*

yăkoū? — yăkoúkoli.

This is Bohemian, is it not?

What is it in English?

— Tell me it in English.

How is it in English? I don't know how to pronounce it.

How is it in Bohemian? How do you call it in Bohemian? — how in English?

Speak Bohemian; — speak Bohemian with me; — speak only Bohemian.

Speak as you wish. Do you like to speak Bohemian? — Why do you not speak English?

Because I cannot; — because I know it only a little. — Do speak; you will get along.

Speak English or Bohemian, as you please; — I understand both;

You speak Bohemian very well.

Speak slowly, that I may understand you;*)

Tohle je česky, není?

Co je to po anglicku?

— Povězte mi to po anglicku.

Jak je to po anglicku? Nevím jak to vyslovit.

Jak je to po česku?

Jak se to jmenuje česky? — jak anglicky?

Mluvte česky: — mluvte se mnou česky; — mluvte jenom česky.

Mluvte jak chcete.

Mluvíte rád česky? — Proč nemluvíte anglicky?

Protože neumím; — protože umím jen málo. — Jen mluvte, půjde to.

Mluvte anglicky nebo česky, jak chcete; — rozumím obejí.

Vy mluvíte česky tuze dobře.

Mluvte pomalu, abych vám rozuměl.

tōhlě yě chesske, neyñí?

tsř yě tř př anglicku?

— Přvyžtě me tě př anglicku.

yák yě tř př anglicku? něveem yák tř víslovit.

yák yě tř př chessku?

yák sě tř menyčě chesske? — yák anglicke?

mlüftě chesske; — mlüftě sě mnočě chesske; — mlüftě yěnom chesske.

mlüftě yák khtsétě. mlüveetě rád chesske? — pröch němlüveetě anglicke?

protžě něřmeem; — protžě ūmeem yen málč, — yen mlüftě, přdě tř.

mlüftě anglicke něbř chesske, yák khtsétě; — rozumeem řbřyee. ve mlüveetě chesske toozě dobrshě.

mlüftě pomálč, ūbikh vám rozumyell.

*) **Abych, abys, aby**, that I should, that thou shouldst, that he should (see Lesson XXXVI), also signifies: "that I may, that thou mayest, that he (she, it) may". Hence we translate: **abych rozuměl**, that I may understand; — **abych rozuměl vám**, or **abych vám rozuměl**, "that I may understand you".

Concerning the freedom of transposition of words in Bohemian sentences see Note 2, Lesson VI.

Did you understand me? — I did not; repeat it slowly.
Do not speak so fast; I should not understand you.
Do you know what I said? could you understand?
I could understand a little; — now I understood well.
When you don't understand, tell me; — I want to teach you.
I am glad of that; — if you will teach me, I shall soon know.
In a quarter of a year I shall understand all.
Do I pronounce it right? — did I pronounce it right?
You have a good pronunciation; — you pronounce everything right.
That was not right; see here; — I will pronounce it slowly.
Is that right?
Once again!
That's it; — now it was right; first-rate.
Very well! you make quick progress.

Rozuměl jste mi? — Ne-
rozuměl; opakujte
to pomalu.
Nemluvte tak rychle;
já bych vám nerozu-
měl.
Víte co jsem povídal ?
— porozuměl jste ?
Porozuměl jsem troš-
ku; — ted' jsem rozu-
měl dobře.
Když nerozumíte, ře-
kněte mi; — já chci
vás učiti.
To jsem rád; — budete-
li mě učiti, budu br-
zo uměti.
Za čtvrt leta budu vše-
mu rozuměti.
Vyslovuji to dobře? —
vyslovil jsem to do-
bře?
Máte dobrou výslov-
nost; — vyslovujete
všecko dobře.
To nebylo dobře; dej-
te pozor; — já to vy-
slovím pomalu.
Je to dobře ?
Ještě jednou !
Tak; — ted' to bylo do-
bře; tuze dobře.
Výborně! — děláte ry-
chly pokrok.

rozumyell stě me? — ně-
rozumyell; — opakujtě
tě pomalu.
nemlūftě těk rikhle: yá
bikh vám něrozumyell.
veetě tsř sem poveedäl?
— pěrozumyell stě?
pěrozumyell sem trosh-
ku; — těd' sem rozú
myell děbrshě.
gdiž něrozumetě, rshěk-
netě me; — yá khtsi
vás učhit.
tě sem rád; — bědětě-li
myě učhit, bědě běrzd
umyět.
ză shtiv e'rt letă bědě
fshěmě rozumyet
vislovuřu tě dobrshě? —
vislovil sem tě dě-
brshě?
máte děbrov veeslōv-
nost; — vislovuřyetě
fshětskě děbrshě.
tě něbillě děbrshě; dey-
tě pězor; — yá tě vi-
sloveem pomalu.
yě tě dobrshě?
yeshtě yednoū!
těk; — těd' tě billě dě-
brshě; toozě děbrshě.
veeborňe! — dělátě rikh-
lee pěkrok.

I wish I had more opportunity to speak Bohemian.

Rád bych měl více pří-
ležitosti mluviti če-
sky.

rád bikh m'yell veetsě
prsheelěžitost'i mlūvit
chesske.

VOCABULARY.

Slovo, n. *slorč*, the word

slovník, m. *slovñek*, the dictionary

slovníček, m.* *slovñeehek*, the vocabulary

vysloviti, *vislovit*, to pronounce

vyslovím, *vislovím*, I shall pronounce

vyslovovati, *vislovovat*, to be pronouncing;

vyslovuju (or **vyslovuji**), *vislovüyü*
I am pronouncing;

výslovnost, f. *veeslovnost*, the pronunciation;

čeština, f. *cheshtină*, the Bohemian language;

angličina, f. *anglichină*, the English language;

pokrok, m. *pökrok*, progress;

přiležitost, f. *prsheelěžitost*, opportunity;

rád bych měl, *rád bikh m'yell*, I wish I had (or: I would like to have);

hezky, *hesske*, } a good deal;

hodně, *hodñě*, } a good deal;

něco málo, *ñetso málč*, a little bit;

učiti se, *üchit sě*, to learn, to be learning;

neučiti se, *neüchit sě*, not to learn.

naučiti se, *năüchit sě*, to learn or acquire (something);

rozuměti, *rozümyet*, to understand;

rozumím, *rozümeem*, I understand

porozuměti, *pörozümyet*, to understand; or "to catch the meaning":

začnouti, *zăchnoüt*, } to begin, to

začíti, *zăcheet*, } commence;

začne, *zăchně*, will commence;

půjčiti, *püychiti*, (colloquially: *püchit*), to lend;

půjčte mi, *püchtě me*, lend me;

povězte mi, *po-vyězť me*, tell me.

jak se jmeneje, *yăk sě menüyě*, how is — he, she, it -- called.

těžký, á, é, *těshkee*, difficult, hard;

rychlý, á, é, *rikhlee* } fast;

rychle, adv. *rikhlě* } fast;

pomalu, *pomälü*, slowly;

hnedle, *hnedlě*, nearly, (also "soon", "quick");

co nevidět, *tsö něviđet*, in no time, shortly;

*) **Slovníček** is simply a diminutive of **slovník**, meaning "a little or short dictionary". See Note 1, Lesson XVIII.

trošku, (same as trochu), <i>tröshkū</i> ,	dokonalý, á, é, <i>dökonälee</i> , perfect.
a little;	dokonale*), <i>dökonäle</i> , perfectly;
snadný, á, é, <i>snädnee</i> , easy.	výborný, á, é, <i>veebornée</i> }
snadno, <i>snädnö</i> , easily;	výborně, adv. <i>veeborñě</i> }

Greetings and compliments.

POZDRAVY A POKLONY.

Good morning, Sir!	Dobré jitro**), pane!	döbré ye-trö, päně! (pá- növé, — pänichkö, —
(gentlemen, — Mad- am, — Miss — ladies).	(pánové, — paničko, — slečno, — dámy).	slěchnö, — dámy, — slěchny).
Good afternoon, Mr. Brown !	Dobré odpoledne, pane Braune!***)	döbré odpolědnö, päně Brownö!
Good evening, Mrs. Brown !	Dobrý večer, paní Braunová!	döbree rěcher, päní Brownová!
My compliments!	Má úcta !	má ootstă!
Good night, doctor!	Dobrou noc, pane dok- tore ⁴ !	döbroū nots, päně dok- torö!
Good bye! — Farewell!	S bohem ! — Na zdar !	sböhem! — nă zdär!
Farewell!	Mějte se dobře !	myěy-tě sě döbrshě!

*) See Note 2, Lesson XXX, about the derivation of adverbs from adjectives. In this case, as well as in some others, the final ý changes into a simple e: **dokonalý**, — **dokonale**.

Mostly it changes into an ě: **výborný**, — **výborně**; and sometimes into an o: **snadný**, — **snadno**. This, however, is rather optional, as we may equally say: **snadně**, **snädně**, (easily).

) In common conversation very often abbreviated: **dobrytro ! **döbritro**!

***) It is proper to use the vocative case in addressing a person; but in ordinary discourse the proper name is generally left in the nominative: **dobré jitro**, **pane Braun** !

4) We cannot say in English "Mr. doctor", two titles in this case being incompatible; but it is customary in Bohemian to say: **pane doktoře**, **pane professore**, or (in common parlance) **pane doktor**, **pane professor**, leaving the title in the nominative case. "*Mr. editor*", — **pane redaktore**, **päně redäktöře**, — is an analogous expression in English.

Good luck to you!	Na zdar vám !	nă zdăr vám!
I wish you good luck! I wish you Godspeed!	{ Přeju vám štěstí!	prshěyū vám shťestī!
A happy journey! A happy return!	Šťastnou cestu ! Šťastný návrat !	shťastnoū tsěstū! shťastnee návrat!
To drink one's health. Your health!	Pít na zdraví. Na vaše zdraví !	peetí nă zdrávee. nă văshě zdrávee!
How do you do? How are you?	Jak se máte?	yăk sě mătě?
How are you getting along?	Jak se vám vede?	yăk sě vám vědě?
Very well, thank you. How is everything with you?	Tuze dobrě. děkuju. Jak se vede?	toozě dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū. yăk sě vědě?
Tolerably well. How is your health? Are you well? Are you in good health?	Projde to. — Ujde to. Jak vám zdraví slouží? Jste zdráv?	proydě tō, — ūyđě tō. yăk vámzdráveesloūžee? stě zdráf?
I am pretty well, thank you.	Je mi dost dobrě, dě- kuju.	yě me dost dōbrshě, d'ě- kūyū.
I am all right.	Mám se hezky.	mám sě hesske.
I feel very well.	Je mi tuze dobrě.	ye me toozě dōbrshě.
I am perfectly well.	Jsem docela zdráv.	sem dotsělă zdráf.
And how are you?	A jak vy se máte?	ă yăk ve sě mătě?
I am also well, thank you.	Taky dobrě, děkuju.	tăke dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.
You are looking well.	Vypadáte dobrě.	vipădátě dobrshě.
I am very well; I can- not complain.	Mám se výborně; ne- mohu stěžovat.	mám sě veeborňe; nemō- hū stěžovăt.
How is your wife (your lady)?	Jak se má vaše žena (vaše paní)?	yăk sě má văshě ženă (păñi)?
She is well, thank you.	Dobře, děkuju.	dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.
How is your family?	Jak se má vaše rodina?	yăk sě má văshěrod'ina?
They are all well.	Jsou všichni zdrávi.	soū fshikhñi zdrávi.

I am glad of it.
 I am glad to hear it.
 That is right.
 I am very glad to see
 you (or: to meet you).
 I have not seen you for
 a long time.
 I would like to see you
 often.

To mě těší.
To rád slyším.
To je dobře.
**Jsem tuze rád že vás
 vidím.**
**Neviděl jsem vás už
 dávno.**
**Rád bych viděl vás ča-
 sto.**

tō myě těshee.
tō rád slisheem.
tō yě dōbrshě.
*sem toozě rád žě váss
 vid'eeem.*
*nevid'el sem váss ūsh
 dávnō.*
*rád bikh vid'el váss
 chásstō.*

My regards!
 Greet him (her, them)!
 — Give him my re-
 gards.
 Give (him, etc.) my best
 regards!
 My best regards!
 Give my regards to all.

 Remember me to your
 wife. — My best re-
 spects to your wife.
 My best regards to your
 wife!
 My compliments to
 your sister!
 Good bye!
 My best respects!

Že pozdravuju!
**Pozdravujte ho (ji,
 je)!**
**Vyříd'te mé pozdrave-
 ní.**
Pěkné pozdravení!
**Pozdravujte ode mne
 všecky!**
Mou úctu vaší choti!

**Pěkné pozdravení
 manželce!**
**Mou poklonu vaší se-
 stře!**
Poroučím se!
Pěkné poručení!

žě pozdravvýy!
*pozdravvýte hō (ye,
 yě)!*
*virshid'ětě mé pozdravvě-
 ní*)*
pyěkné pozdravvění!
*pozdravvýtě ūdě myě
 fshětske!*
*moū ootstū váshee khō-
 ti!*

*pyěkné pozdravvění
 mānželcs!*
*moū poklōnū váshee sě-
 strshě!*
poroučheem sě!
pyěkné poručení!

*) Nouns ending in **ní** are neutre (see **znamení**, Note 2, Lesson XIV). The final **í** has the long sound of *ee*. But in common discourse the length of the sound is immaterial and it is usually shortened; hence we represent it in these conversations by a simple **ñi**, instead of **nee**.

VOCABULARY.

Pánbůh (i. e. Pán Bůh) <i>pánbooh</i> ,	poklona , f. <i>pōklonā</i> , compliment,
the Lord God;	bow;
 jitro , n. same as ráno), <i>yítrō</i> , the	úcta , f. <i>ootsta</i> , respect;
morning;	návrat , m. <i>návrāt</i> , return;
pozdrav , m. <i>pozdrāf</i>	zdraví , n. <i>zdrávee</i> , health;
pozdravení , n. <i>pōzdrāveñi</i>	chot , m. & f. <i>khōt</i> , the spouse, hus-
pozdraviti , <i>pozdrāvit</i> , to greet (once);	band or wife;
pozdravovati , <i>pozdrāvōvāt</i> , to greet;	stěžovati , <i>stěžovāt</i> , to complain;
to send greetings;	vypadati , <i>vipādāt</i> , to look.

A call.

NÁVŠTĚVA.

Give me a call. — Call	Navštivte mě. — Přijď-	<i>nāfshtěiftě myě.</i> —
and see me.	te ke mě.	<i>Prshid'te*) kě myě.</i>
Call at my house.	Přijďte ke mě domu.	<i>prshid'tě kě myě dōmū.</i>
Call at my store.	Přijďte ke mě do krá-	<i>prshid'tě kě myě dō krá-</i>
	mu.	<i>mū.</i>
Call at my office	Přijďte do mé písárny.	<i>prshid'tě dō mé peesár-</i>
	Byl jste u mě?	<i>ny.</i>
Did you call at my		<i>bill stě ū myě?</i>
place?		
I called at your house,	Byl jsem u vás, ale	<i>bill sem ū váss, ālě žád-</i>
but nobody was at	žádný nebyl doma.	<i>nee nēbill dōmā.</i>
home.		
Call again.	Přijďte zas.	<i>prshid'tě zāss</i>
And when? — Any time.	A kdy? — kdykoli.	<i>ā gdy? — gdykoli.</i>
When will you be at	Kdy budete doma?	<i>gdy būdětě ādōmā?</i>
home.		
To-morrow surely.	Zejtra** jistě.	<i>zeytrā yi-tě.</i>
When will you call and	Kdy mě navštívíte?	<i>gdy myě nafshīveetě?</i>
see me?		

*) Colloquially this is still more condensed and sounds like *prshid'tě*.**) **Zejtra** or **zítra** (to-morrow), derived from **zjitra**, **zajitra**, next morning.

I shall give you a call to-morrow or day after to-morrow.
Yes, do call; I shall be expecting you.
Somebody is knocking.
— Some one rings.
Go and see who that is.
Go and open the door.
It is some gentleman,
— some stranger.
It is Mr. Arbes.
Let him come in.
Come in!—Walk in!
Come in, if you please.
Sit down.
Take a seat, if you please.
Please take a seat.
Here is a seat.
Stay with us to dinner.
Excuse me, I cannot;
I have no time.
Are you in a hurry?
Yes, I am in a hurry.
Where do you hurry?
I have an appointment with Mr. Coleman.
Don't be in such a hurry; wait a little.
Indeed I cannot; I shall soon come again.
Do so, if you please!
Please, come again.

Navštívím vás zejtra nebo pozejtrí.
Ano, navštívte; budu vás očekávat.
Někdo klepá. — Někdo zvoní.
Jděte se podívat kdo to je.
Jděte otevříti.
Je to nějaký pán, — nějaký cizinec.
Je to pan Arbes.
Ať vejde!
Dále!
Vejděte, prosím!
Sedněte si.
Posaděte se, prosím.
Račte se posaditi.
Tady je židle.
Zůstaňte u nás na oběd.
Odpusťte, nemohu; nemám čas.
Máte na spěch?
Ano, mám na spěch.
Kam spěcháte?
Mám schůzi s panem Kolmanem.
Nespěchejte tak; počkejte trošku.
Opravdu nemohu; přijdu brzo zas.
Prosím, přijďte!
Račte přijíti zas,

nāfshťiveem váss zeytrā něbō pozeytrshee.
ānō, nāfshťiftě; bědū váss ďchěkávāt
něgdō klěpá. — něgdō zvōňee.
dětě sě pod'eevāt gdō tō yě.
dětě őtěvrsheet.
yě tō něyăkee pán, — něyăkee tsizinets.
yě tō pán Arbes.
ăt' veydě!
dálě!
veyd'etě, proseem?
sednětě si.
posad'etě sě, proseem.
rāchtě sě posad'it.
tādy yě, židlě.
zoo taňte ūnáss năobyěd
odpūstě, nemohū; nemám chăss.
máte na spyěkh?
ānō, mím nă spyěkh.
kám spyěkhátě?
mám skhoozi spănem
Kolmănen.
nespyěkheytlě tāk; pochkeytlě troshkū.
opravdū němohū;
prshiydū b'rzō zăss
proseem, prshid'etě!
rāchtě prshiyet zăss.

Drop in, when you have time.

I will come here as soon as I have time.

Good day!

Zaskočte sem, když máte čas.

Přijdu sem, jakmile budu mít čas.

Poroučím se!

záskokchtě sem, gdyž máte cháss.

prshiydū sem, yákmilé bědū meet cháss.

poroúcheem sě!

VOCABULARY.

Návštěva, f. *náfshtěvă*, a call, a visit; **navštíviti**, *náfshtěevit*, to visit; **očekávati**, *ochěkávát*, to await; **zaskočiti**, *záskokhit*, to drop in; **poroučeti**, *poroúchet*, to command; **poroučeti se**, *poroúcheti sě*, to take leave; **poroučím se**, *poroúcheem sě*, good day!

sednouti si, *sednoút si* } to sit down. **posaditi se**, *posád'it sě* } to take a place;

cizinec, m. *tsizinet*, a stranger; **spěch**, n. *spyékh*, the hurry; **schůze**, f. *skhoozě*, meeting, appointment; **židle**, f. *židlě*, the chair; **klepati**, *klepát*, to knock; **zvoniti**, *zvōñit*, to ring; **otevřiti**, *otěvrsheet*, to open; **odpustiti**, *odpústít*, to excuse, to forgive.

Time.

ČAS.

Day and night.

I worked all day.

I did not sleep all night.

I work day and night.

We sat up late at night.

He came late at night and wanted a night's lodging.

The day was clear, the night was dark.

Today, — yesterday.

This morning, — this noon, — this evening, — this midnight.

Den a noc.

Pracoval jsem celý den.

Nešpal jsem celou noc.

Dělám ve dne v noci.

Seděli jsme dlouho do noci.

Příšel pozdě na noc a chtěl nocleh.

Den byl jasný; noc byla tmavá.

Dnes, — včera.

Dnes ráno, — dnes v poledne, — dnes večer, — dnes o půlnoci.

den a nots.

prátssovál sem tsélee den.

nespál sem tséloú nots.

dělám vě dně vnotsi.

seděli smě dloúhō dō notsi.

prshishell pozd'e nā nots a kh'el notslěh.

den bill yásnee; nots bil lā tmavá.

dness, — fcherá.

dness ráno, — dness fpo ledně, — dness věcher dness o poolnotsi.

This forenoon it rained — this afternoon it was fine.

Until evening; — until morning.

In broad day-light.

To-night he will come home. — To-night he came home.

He came last night, — last evening, — early in the morning, — late in the evening, — about midnight.

Evening before last; — night before last.

When was it? — Last night.

When did it happen? — Night before last.

When shall I take that medicine?

In the morning, at noon and at bed-time.

Yesterday was a holiday. — Day before yesterday there was a fire.

To-morrow I shall leave; — day after to-morrow I shall be in St. Louis.

Dnes dopoledne pršelo; — dnes odpoledne bylo hezky.

Až do večera; — až do rána.

Za bílého dne.

Dnes v noci přijde domu. — Dnes v noci přišel domu.

Přišel minulem noc, — včera večer, časně ráno, — pozdě večer, — kolem půlnoci.

Předminulý večer; — předminulou noc.

Kdy to bylo? — Dnes v noci.

Kdy se to stalo? — Včera v noci.

Kdy mám užívat?

Ráno, v poledne a na noc.

Včera byl svátek. — Předevčírem hořelo.

Zejtra odjedu; — pojedou budu v St. Louis.

dness dōpolednēp ^ershel-lō; — dness ődpolednē billō hessky.

ăsh do věcheră; — ăsh dō ránă.

ză beeléhō dně.

dness vnotsi prshidě dōmū. — dness vnotsi prshishell dōmū.

prshishell minūloū nots — fcheră věcher, — chassně ránō, — pozdě věcher, — kolem poolnotsi.

prshěd-minūlee věcher; — prshěd-minūloū nots,

gdy tō billō? — dness vnotsi.

gdy sě tō stǎlō? — fchěrā vnotsi.

gdy mám ūžeevāt?

ránō, fpoledně ă nă nots.

fcheră bill swátek. — prshědě-fcheerem hořhělō.

zeytră odyědū; — pojeytrshée bědū v St. Louis.

VOCABULARY.

Nocleh, <i>notslěh</i> , a night's lodging;	stalo se, <i>stǎlō sě</i> , it happened;
svátek, <i>swátek</i> , a holiday;	stane se, <i>stǎně sě</i> , it will happen;
státi se, <i>stát sě</i> , to happen, to occur;	stane-li se, <i>stǎně-li sě</i> , if it happens.

jasný, á, é, yássnee, bright, clear; **tmavé, á, é, tmávee,** dark; **minulý, á, é, minülee,** past, last; **předminulý, prshéd-minülee,** before last; **odjeti, ɔdyet,** to leave (by some conveyance); **užívat, үžeevát,** to take medicine; (also "to enjoy").

This week I am in good health; — last week I was sick.

The last two weeks I was on the road (i. e. traveling).

Next week I shall again leave.

Next week I expect my brother.

In two weeks I shall get money; — in five weeks I shall be in Europe.

In how many weeks will you return? — I shall return in about a month.

In how many months shall I see you? — In two months; — in five months.

When shall we meet again? — In a quarter

Tento týden jsem zdráv; — minulý týden byl jsem nemocen.
Poslední dvě neděle byl jsem na cestách.

S neděle zase odjedu.

Budoucí týden čekám bratra.

Za dvě neděle dostanu peníze; — za pět neděl budu v Evropě.

Za kolik neděl se vrátíte? — Vrátím se asi za měsíc.

Za kolik měsíců vás uvidím? — za dva měsíce; za pět měsíců.

Kdy se sejdeme zas? — Za čtvrt leta, *) za

tento teeděn sem zdráf;
— minülee teeděn bill sem němotsěn.
posledníe áwyě něd'elě bill sem nă tsestákh.

sněd'elě zássz odyědū.
budoútsee teeděn chekám brátrá.

ză dwyě ned'elě děstānū peñeezě; — ză pyět ned'el bědū věvropyž.

ză kolik ned'el sě vráteetě? — vráteem se asi ză myěseets.

ză kolik myěseetsoo váss ūvid'eeem? — ză dwě myěseetsě; — ză pyět myěseetsoo.

gdy sě seydemě záss? — za shtw^{er}t letă, — ză

*) Ordinarily **leto**, n. means "summer"; but the noun **rok**, m. (the year) has in the plural **leta, let**: **dvě leta**, two years or "two summers"; **pět let**, five years or "five summers"; etc. See Lesson XIX, and foot-note on page 83.

The same is true of fractions: **čtvrt leta**, *shtw^{er}t letă*, a quarter of a year; **půl leta**, *pool letă*, half a year; **tři čtvrti leta**, *trshi shtw^{er}t'i letă*, three quarters of a year.

However, we may also say: **dva roky**, two years; **pět roků**, five years etc. Likewise: **čtvrt roku**, **půl roku**, **tři čtvrti roku**.

of a year,— in half a year, — in a year.	půl leta, — za rok.	pool letă, — ză rok.
I shall be here within a year.	Budu zde do dne do roka.	būdū zdě dō dně dō rokă.
My son has been gone five years;—he writes to me once a year (once in a year, — once yearly).	Syn je pryč pět let; — píše mijednou do roka (or: jednou za rok, — jednou ročně).	syn yě prich pyčt let; — peeshě me yednoū do rokă (or: yednoū ză rok, — yednoū ročně).
In how many years do you expect him?	Za kolik let ho čekáte?	ză kolik let hō chekátě?
In three years,— in six years.	Za tři leta, — za šest let.	ză tršti letă, — ză shěst let.
I think he will arrive shortly, — speedily, — before long.	Myslím že přijede za krátko, — v krátkosti, — za nedlouho.	misleem že prshiyedě ză krátko, — fkrátkost'i, — ză nedlovhō.
In a short time we shall see him.—In a short while we shall be together.	Za krátký čas ho uvidíme. — Za krátkou dobu budeme pohromadě.	ză krátkee chăss hō ūvid'eemě, — ză krátkou dōbū būdemě pohromad'e.
It is a week since I was in New York.	Je tomu týden co jsem byl v New Yorku.	yě tōmū teeděn tsō sem bill v New Yorku.
It is scarcely two weeks since father was here.	Je tomu sotva dvě neděle, co zde byl otec.	yě tōmū sotvă dwyě něd'elě tsō zdě bill otets
It will soon be a year since I was in the old country.	Bude tomu brzo rok, co jsem byl ve staré vlasti.	būdě tōmū b'rzō rōk, tsō sem bill vě stäré vlast'i.
It is very near two years since I sold the farm.	Budou tomu hnedle dvě leta, co jsem prodal farmu.	būdoū tōmū hnedlě dwyě letă, tsō sem prodăl farmă.
This day a year (or: a year ago to-day) Otto was here;—four years ago to-day we were together at San Francisco.	Dnes rok byl zde Otto; — dnes čtyry leta byli jsme spolu v San Franciscu.	dness rok bill zde Otto; — dness shtiry lěta billi smě spolū fsan·frănciscū.

To-morrow it will be a year since Mary left; two years ago yesterday mother died.

The other week our folks were here.

It is scarcely a week since they left;—it is just a month since they arrived.

It will shortly be a month since it happened.

It is not long since; — it was a short time since; — it was the other day.

How long is it since you have been here?

Day before yesterday it was a year. — It was half a year (last) Sunday. — It will be four months on Monday.—It will be eight months on Tuesday.

When was it?—Wednesday a week; — two weeks ago on Thursday; — a week ago last Friday; — three weeks ago last Saturday.

Zejtra bude rok co Mary odjela; — včera dvě leta matka zmřela.

Onen týden byli tu naši.

Je tomu sotva týden co odjeli;—je tomu zrovna měsíc, co přijeli.

Hnedle bude měsíc co se to stalo.

Je to nedávno; — bylo to nedávno; — bylo to onehdy.

Jak dávno tomu co jste tu?

Přede včerem minul rok. — Minulo půl leta v neděli. — Budou čtyry měsíce v pondělí. Bude osm měsíců v úterý.

Kdy to bylo?—Ve středu týden;—ve čtvrtek dvě neděle; — v pátek minul týden; — v sobotu minuly tři neděle.

zeytrā būdě rok tsō Mary od-yellā; — fchěrā dvoyě letā mātkā zemrshellā.

onen teeděn billi tū nāshi.

yě tōmū sotvā teeděn tsō od-yelli;—yě tōmū zrovna myěseets tsō prshi-yelli.

hnedlē būdě myěseets tsō sě tō stālō.

yě tō nedávnō;—billō tō nedávnō; — billō tō onehdy.

yāk dávnō tōmū tsō stě tū?

prshědě fcheerem minul rok.—minulō pool lětā vněd'eli. — būdōu shtiry myěseetsě fpon-d'ele. — būdě osūm myěseetsoo vooteree.

gdy tō billō?—vě strshě dūteeděn;—vě shtw'ěr tek dvoyě nedělē; — fpátek minul teeděn; fsobřtū minuly trshi nedělē.

Before a year passes
we shall be one another's (i. e. man and wife).

Before two years pass
away, all will be over.
Will it be long? — It
won't be long.

Will it last long? — It
won't last long.

It takes long.—It took
long.—It didn't take
long.—O yes, it did !

How soon will it be? —
It will be right away.
— It is done already.

**Než mine rok budeme
svoji.**

**Než minou dvě leta,
bude po všem.**

**Bude to dlouho? — Ne-
bude to dlouho.**

**Bude to dlouho trvati?
— Nebude to dlouho
trvati.**

**To trvá dlouho. — Tr-
valo to dlouho. Ne-
trvalo to dlouho. —
Ba trvalo ?**

**Jak brzo to bude? —
Bude to hned. — Už
je to.**

*nesh mině rok, būdemě
swoyi.*

*nesh minou dvýč letă,
būdě pō fshěm.
būdě tō dloúhō? — nebū-
dě tō dloúhō.*

*būdě tō dloúhō t'rvāt?
— nebūdě tō dloúhō
t'rvāt.
tō t'rvá dloúhō — t'rvā
lō tō dloúhō. — nět 'r
vālō tō dloúhō. — bā
t'rvālō!*

*yák b'rzō tō būdě? — bū-
dě tō hned. — ūsh yě
tō.*

VOCABULARY.

Neděle, *něd'elě*, Sunday
pondělí, *pond'elee*, Monday
úterý, *ooteree*, Tuesday
středa, *strshědă*, Wednesday
čtvrtok, *shtw'rtek*, Thursday
pátek, *pátek*, Friday
sobota, *sōbotă*, Saturday
nedávno, *nědávnō*, not long since
jak dávno, *yák dávnō*, how long
since
co, *tsō* since
sotva, *sotvā*, scarcely, hardly
budoucí, *būdoútsee* } future, next
příští, *prsheesh-t'ee* } future, next
dostati, *dostāt*, to get, to receive;

za krátko, *ză krátkō*
v krátkosti, *fkrátkōst'i* }
za nedlouho, *ză nědloú-
hō* } shortly,
za krátký čas, *ză krát-
kee chăss* } in a short
za krátkou dobu, *ză krátkoú dōbū* } time;
denně, *děñe*, daily
týdně, *teedñe*, weekly
měsíčně, *myěszechñe*, monthly
ročně, *rochñe*, yearly.
na cestách, *nă tsestákh*, (literally :
“on the roads”), traveling;
stará vlast, *stără vlăst*, the old
country.

The hour.

HODINA.

Have you a watch? --	Máte hodinky? —	máte <i>hodinky?</i> —mám.
— I have.	Mám.	
Does it go right? — It is too slow (i. e. it goes late); — it loses; — it is (it goes) too fast.	Jdou*) dobré? — Jdou pozdě; — pozdí se; — jdou napřed.	doú <i>dobrshě?</i> — doú <i>pozd'e;</i> — <i>pozd'ee sě;</i> — doú <i>náprshed.</i>
It is a few minutes too late. — It is five minutes too fast.	Jsou o pár minut pozadu. — Jsou o pět minut napřed.	Soú <i>o pár minut pozadu.</i> — Soú <i>o pyět minut náprshed.</i>
It stopped (literally: it stands).	Stojí. — Zůstaly státi.	stoyee. — <i>zoostály stát.</i>
It is not wound up. — It was not wound up.	Nejsou nataženy. — Nebyly nataženy.	neysoú <i>nátaženy.</i> — <i>něbilly nátaženy.</i>
Wind up the watch, — the clock.	Natáhněte hodinky, — hodiny.	<i>nátahnětě hodinky.</i> — <i>hodiny.</i>
Is that clock right (lit. "does it go right")? — I think it is.	Jdou ty hodiny dobré? Myslím že jdou.	doú <i>ty hodiny dobré?</i> — <i>mysleem že doú.</i>
What o'clock is it (or: what time is it? — How late is it?	Kolik je hodin? — Jak je pozdě?	<i>kolik yě hodin?</i> — <i>yák yě pozd'e?</i>
Don't you know what o'clock it is? — I don't know.	Nevíte kolik je hodin? Nevím.	<i>něveetě kolik yě hodin?</i> — <i>něveem.</i>
See what o'clock it is. — I will see (or look).	Podívejte se kolik je hodin. — Podívám se.	<i>podíveyjtě sě kolik yě hodin.</i> — <i>podíevám sě yě yedná hodină.</i>
It is one o'clock. — It is a quarter past one.	Je jedna hodina. — Je čtvrt na dvě (or na druhou).	<i>yě shtw'rt nă dwyě (nă druhou).</i>

*) **Hodinky** (the watch) and **hodiny** (the clock) are plural nouns; consequently the succeeding verb must appear in the plural form: **jdou**, **jsou** (they go, they are). This has already been pointed out in a foot-note on page 137. — **Hodina**, **hodinka**, in the singular, means: "the hour", "the small hour".

It is half past one.—It is a quarter to two,

It is two o'clock — Is it so late already? — Yes, it is two (o'clock) already.

It is past two o'clock — It is five minutes to three. — It is very near three o'clock.

It is past three. — It wants ten minutes to four.

At what o'clock shall we go? — We shall go at a quarter past four.

That is too soon; we shall wait till half past four. Very well, then.

We shall go at five o'clock. — All right.

We started at five o'clock in the afternoon.

Did you come in time? — Didn't you come late?

It was time enough; there was no hurry.

We came there a few minutes after six.

We arrived there before seven, — after seven, — early in the

Je půl druhé. — **Jsou tři čtvrtě na dvě** (or **na druhou**).

Jsou dvě hodiny. — **Už je tak pozdě?** — **Ano, už jsou dvě.**

Jsou dvě hodiny pryč. — **Je pět minut do třech.** — **Jsou hnedle tři hodiny.**

Jsou tři pryč. — **Chybí deset minut do čtyřech.**

V kolik hodin půjdeme? — **Půjdeme ve čtvrt na pět.**

To je tuze brzo; počkáme do půl páté. — **Tak teda.**

Půjdeme v pět hodin. — **Třeba.**

Vyšli jsme o páté hodině odpoledne.

Přišli jste v čas? — **Ne-přišli jste pozdě?**

Bylo dost času; nebyl žádný spěch.

Přišli jsme tam pár minut po šesté.

Došli jsme tam před sedmou, — po sedmě, — s večera, — pozdě

yě pool drůhē.-soū trshishtw^erte na dwyě(nă drůhoū).

soū dwyě hod'iny.—ušhyě tāk pozd'e? — ānō, ušhy soū dwyě.

soū dwyě hod'iny prich. — yě pyět minūt dō trshěkh. — soū hnědle trshishtw^ehod'iny.

soū trshishtw^eprich.—khibee děset minūt dō shtyrekh.

skolik hod'in půydem? — půydeměvě shtw^ert nă pyět.

tō yě toozě b^erzō; pochkámě dō pool páté. — tāk tědā.

půydemě fpyět hod'in. — trshěbā.

vishli smě ř pátě hod'ini ře řdpoledně.

prshishli stě fchăss? — něprshishli stě pozd'e?

billō dost chăssū; nebill řádnee spyěkh.

prshishli smě tām pár minut pō shěsté.

dōshli smě tām prshěd sedmoū, — pō sedmě, — svěcherū, — pozd'e

evening,—late in the evening — at midnight.

We got there in an hour, — in an hour and a half, — in two hours,—in five hours.

We were here just at twelve o'clock.

We were here exactly at noon.

I must be there between one and two; — between two and three; — between four and five.

We must be there before evening, — early in the evening, —towards evening.

The clock strikes.
Hear how many (what o'clock) it strikes.

It strikes twelve.
Did you hear the clock strike?

How many (i. e. what o'clock) did it strike?

It struck one;—it struck two;—it struck three; — it struck five;— it struck six.

večer, — o půlnoci.

Došli jsme tam za hodinu,— za půl druhé hodiny, — za dvě hodiny,— za pět hodin.

Byli jsme tu zrovna ve dvanáct hodin.

Byli jsme tu navlas v poledne.

Musím tam býti mezi jednou a druhou; — mezi druhou a třetí; — mezi čtvrtou a pátou.

Musíme tam býti před večerem, — brzo s večera, — na večer.

**Hodiny bijou*)
Slyšte kolik bijou!**

**Bijou dvanáct.
Slyšel jste hodiny bítí?**

Kolik bilo?

Bila jedna;—bily dvě; — bily tři; — bilo pět; — bilo šest.

věcher, — o poolnotsi.

dōshli smě tām zú hod'í-nū,—zā pooldrūhē hod'iny,—zā dwyě hod'iny, — zú pyět hod'ín.

billi smě tū zrovna vě dwánátst hod'ín.

billi smě tū nāvlāss fpo-ledně.

můseem tām beet mězi yednoū ā drūhoū; — mězi drūhoū ā trshě-tee, — mězi shtw'ēr-toū ā pátoū.

můseem tāmbeet prshed věcherem, — b'ērzo swěcherā, — nā věcher.

*hod'iny biyoū.
slishčě kolik biyoū!*

*biyoū dwánátst.
slishell stě hod'iny beet?*

kolik billō?

billā yednā; — billy dwyě; — billy trshī; — billō pyět; — billō shěst.

*) **Bijou** or **bijí** (they strike). See Note 2, and also foot-note on page 137.

It has just struck half past six.	Právě bilo půl sedmé.	právyě billō pool sedmē.
It has already struck seven.	Už odbilo sedm.	úsh odbillō sedm.
It is soon going to strike eight.	Hnedle bude bítí osm.	hnedlě bědě beet osm.
I shall wait till half past eight.	Budu čekati do půl deváté.	bědě chekāt dō pool děváté.
I shall wait till nine.	Počkám do devíti.	pochkám dō děveetí.
Let us wait till ten.	Počkejme do desítí.	pochkeymě dō desseetí.
Wait till midnight, or until morning.	Počkejte do půlnoci, nebo do rána.	pochkeytě dō poolnotsi, nebo dō ránč.
I shall wait gladly	Rád počkám.	rád pochkám.
I do not like to wait.	Nerad čekám.	nerád chekám.
Waiting is not agreeable.	Čekání není milé.	chekání neyá milé.
I do not like long waiting.	Nemám rád dlouhé čekání.	nemám rád dloúhé chekání.

VOCABULARY.

Hodina , f. <i>hod'ina</i> , the hour;	natahnouti , <i>nátažnoūt</i> , to wind up;
hodinka , f. <i>hod'inkă</i> , the small hour;	nataženy , <i>nátaženy</i> , wound up;
hodiny , pl. <i>hod'iny</i> , the clock;	čekati , <i>chekāt</i> , to wait, to be waiting;
hodinky , pl. <i>hod'inky</i> , the watch;	čekám , <i>chekám</i> , I am waiting;
lék , m. <i>lék</i> , the medicine;	počkati , <i>pochkāt</i> , to wait;
spěch , m. <i>spyěkh</i> , the hurry;	počkám , <i>pochkám</i> , I shall wait;
čekání , n. <i>chekáñi</i> , the waiting;	pozadu , <i>pozadū</i> , behind.
napřed , <i>náprshěd</i> , ahead, before;	

Age and date.

VĚK a DATUM.

How old are you?	Jak jste stár? Kolik je vám let?	<i>yák stě stár? kolik yě vám let?</i>
I am twenty years — I am over twenty.	Je mi dvacet let. — Je mi přes dvacet.	<i>yě me dvátset let. — yě me prshěs dvátset.</i>

I shall soon be twenty five years.

I am nearly thirty years.

I am already thirty five years.

I was forty years in January.

You are still young.

I shall be fifty years in February. — I am getting old.

That is not a great age.

You look young.

You don't look so old.

You look well for your age.

When were you born?

What year? — In what year?

I was born in the year 1840. — I was born in May in the year 1850.

I was born in the month of June 1862.

The first of August is my birth-day.

Bude mi brzo dvacet pět let.

Je mi málem třicet let.

Už je mi třicet pět let.

Bylo mi čtyrycet let v lednu.

Jste ještě mladý.

Bude mi padesát let v únoru. — Stárnu.

To není velké stáří.

Vypadáte mladý.

Nevypadáte tak starý.

Vypadáte dobře na svůj věk.

Kdy jste*) narozen? — Kdy jste se narodil?

Který rok? — V kterém roce?

Jsem narozen roku 1840. — Jsem rozen v máji leta 1850.

Narodil jsem se v měsíci červnu 1862.

Prvního srpna je můj den narození.

*būdě me b^erzō dvătset
pyět let.*

*yě mi málem trshitset
let.*

*ušh yě me trshitset pyět
let.*

*billō me shtiritset let
vlednū.*

*stě yeshťe mlădee.
būdě me păděsát let voo-
norū. — stárnū.*

tō neyñi velké stárshee.

*vypădátě mlădee.
nøyypădátě tăk stăree.*

*vypădátě dōbrshě nă
swūy vyěk.*

*gdy stě nărōzēn? gdy
stě sě nărodil?*

*ktěree rōk? — fktěrém
rotsē?*

*sem nărōzēn rōkū t'i-
seets osūm set shtiri-
tset. — sem rōzēn v má-
yi letă tiseets osūm
set păděsát.*

*nărodil sem sě vmyě-
seetsi chervnū tiseets
osūm set shěděsát
dwă.*

*p^ervñeehō s^erpna yě
mūy den nărozěñi.*

*) In Bohemian the passive participle *rozen* or *narozen* is used in connection with the present tense : *kdy jste rozen?* *kdy jste narozen?* “when are you born”?

How old is that child?
It is ten days. — It is
two weeks (old).
It is a month (old). — It
is two months. — It is
five months.
It is one year (old). —
It is two years (old).
— It is five years (old).
It will be a year in Sep-
tember. It will soon
be three years.
It is going on two
years (it is in its sec-
ond year). — It is
going on five years.
How old is that girl?
She will be four years
at Christmas. — She
will be five years at
Easter. — She will
soon be six years.
What day of the month
is it? — what date is it?
To-day is the first, — the
second, — the fifth.
What day of the month
is (i. e. will be) to-
morrow?
To-morrow is ("will
be") the third, — the
tenth, — the twen-
tieth.
What date was yes-
terday?

Jak staré je to dítě?
Je mu deset dní. — **Jsou mu dvě neděle.**
Je mu měsíč. — **Jsou mu dva měsíce.** —
Je mu pět měsíců.
Je mu rok. — **Jsou mu dvě leta.** — **Je mu pět let.**
Bude mu rok v září. —
Budou mu brzo tři leta.
Jde mu na druhý rok.
Jde mu na pátý rok.

Jak stará je ta holka?
Budou jí čtyry leta o vánocích. — **Bude jí pět let o velkonočích.** — **Bude jí hnedle šest let.**

Kolikátého je? — jaké je datum?
Dnes je prvního, druhého, — pátého.
Kolikátého bude zejtra?

Zejtra bude třetího, — desátého, — dvacátého.

Kolikátého bylo včera?

yá̄k stá̄ré yé̄ to d̄eēt̄e?
*yé̄ m̄u d̄ēs̄et d̄n̄eē. — sōū
m̄ū d̄wȳē n̄ēd̄el̄ē.*
*yé̄ m̄ū mȳēseets̄. — sōū
m̄ū d̄w̄ā mȳēseets̄ē. —
yé̄m̄ūpȳēt̄ mȳēseetsoo.*
*yé̄ m̄ū r̄ok̄. — sōū m̄ū
d̄wȳē let̄ā. — yé̄ m̄ū
pȳēt̄ let̄.*
*b̄ud̄ē m̄ū r̄ok̄ vzá̄rsheē.
— b̄udōū m̄ū b̄ērz̄ō
tr̄shī let̄ā.*
*d̄ē m̄ū n̄ā dr̄ūheē r̄ok̄. —
d̄ē m̄ū n̄ā pá̄teē r̄ok̄.*

yá̄k stá̄rá yé̄ t̄ā holká̄?
*b̄udōū yeē shtírȳ let̄ā ō
vánocích. — b̄ud̄ē yeē
pȳēt̄ let̄ ō velkōnot-
seekh. — b̄ud̄ē yeē hn̄e-
dl̄ē sh̄est̄ let̄.*

*kolikátého yé̄? — yá̄ké
yé̄ d̄atum?*
*d̄ness yé̄ p̄ērv̄n̄eeh̄ō, —
dr̄ūh̄éh̄ō, — pátéh̄ō.*
kolikátéh̄ō b̄ud̄ē zeytr̄ā?

*zeytr̄ā b̄ud̄ē tr̄sh̄ēt̄eeh̄ō,
— dessátéh̄ō, — d̄w̄a-
tsátéh̄ō.*

kolikátéh̄ō bill̄ō fcher̄ā?

Yesterday was the twenty-first.

What day of the month will be next Sunday? — The twenty-second.

On what day of the month was Frank here? — He was here on the fifteenth and he will come again on the twenty-fifth.

This month? — Yes; he will stay here until the last.

On the first I shall receive new goods.

When will Mr. Danesh pay (his) bill? — Before the last. — On the first of next month.

When will the agent arrive? — About the ninth.

When will the time run out? When will it be due? — About the fifteenth.

That is, about the middle of the month. — I shall pay towards the end of the month.

Next month I expect to be gone. — Before two months pass away, I shall be back.

Včera bylo dvacátého prvního.

Kolikátého bude v neděli? — Dvacátého druhého.

Kolikátého byl zde Frank? — Byl zde patnáctého a přijde zas na dvacátého pátého.

Tento měsíc? — Ano, zůstane tu do posledního.

Na prvního dostanu nové zboží.

Kdy pan Daneš zaplatí účet? — Do posledního. — Na prvního budoucí měsíce.

Kdy přijede agent? — Asi devátého.

Kdy vyjde čas? Kdy vypadne lhůta? — Kolem patnáctého.

Teda v polou měsíce. — Zaplatím ke konci měsíce.

Na druhý měsíc hodlám býti pryč. — Než uplynou dva měsíce, budu nazpět.

fcheră billō dwātsátéhō p^{er}rvñeehō.

kolikátéhō būdě vněděli? — dwātsátéhō druhéhō.

kolikátéhō bill zdě Frank? — bill zdě patnáctéhō a prshidě záss nă dwātsátéhō pátéhō.

tentō myěseets? — āno; zoostāně tū dō posledníehō.

nă p^{er}rvñeehō dōstānū nové zbožee.

gdy pān Dānesh zāplňtee oochet? — dō posledníehō. — nă p^{er}rvñeehō būdoútsee myěseets.

gdy prshiyědě ākent? — ā i děvátéhō.

gdy veedě chāss? gdy vypādně lhoolā? — kōlem pātnátstéhō.

tedā spoloč myěseets. — zāplňteem kě kontsi myěseets.

nă druhēe myěseets hodlám beet prich. neshüplicoū dwā myěseets, būdū nāspytēt.

We shall expect you some time in October; — or in the beginning of November; at latest before the first of December.

The fourth of July is a national holiday, — the day of independence.

Thanksgiving day is usually in November.

On new-year's day; — before New-year's; — after New-year's.

Budeme vás čekati někdy v říjnu; — nebo počátkem listopadu; — nejdýl do prvního prosince.

Čtvrtý červenec jest národní svátek, — den neodvislosti.

Den díkůvzdání bývá v listopadu.

Na nový rok; — do nového roku; — po novém roce.

būděmě váss chekáti *ne-* *gdy* *frsheeynū*; — *ně-* *bō* *pochátkem* *listopă-* *dă*; — *neydeel* *dō* *p'rv-* *neeho* *prosintsě*.

shtw'erte *chervěnets* *yest* *národňee* *svátek*, — *den* *něodvislosti*.

den *d'eeekv'vzdáňee* *beevá* *vlistopădū*.

nă *novee* *rōk*; — *dō* *nové-* *hō* *rōkū*; — *pō* *novém* *rotsě*.

VOCABULARY.

Věk, m. *vyěk* } the age
stáří, n. *stárshee* }
stárnouti, *stárnouť*, to grow old;
naroditi se, *nărōd'it sě*, to be born;
narození, n. *nărozění*, the birth;
počátek, m. *pochátek*, the beginning;
lhůta, f. *lhootă*, the given time, the term;
vánoce, pl. *vánotsě*, Christmas;
velkonoce, pl. *velkónotsě*, Easter;
svatodušní svátky, pl. *svatodúšní* *svátky*, Whitsuntide;

Leden, *lěden*, January
únor, *oonor*, February
březen, *brshězěn*, March
duben, *düběn* } April
apríl, *ăpril*

vypadati, *vypădăt* } to look, to appear;
vyhlížeti, *vyhleežet* } pear;
vyjíti, *viyeet*, to go out, to run out;
uplynouti, *üplynouť*, to pass away;
zaplatiti, *zăplăťit*, to pay up;
někdy, *negyd*, sometimes;
v polou, *spoloǔ*, in the middle;
nazpět, *năspŷet* } back
zpátky, *spátky* }
neodvislost, f. *něodvislōst*, the independence.

květen, *kwyětěn* } May
máj, *máy* }
červen, *chervěn*, June
červenec, *chervěnets*, July
srpen, *s'rpěn*, August

září, *zárshee*, September
říjen, *rsheeyən*, October

listopad, *listopăd*, November
prosinec, *prosinets*, December.

The weather.

POČASÍ.

How is the weather?
It is fine; — it is beautiful weather.

It is clearing up; — it is a fine morning; — it will be a nice day.

The heaven is clear.—
The sun shines, — warms (i. e. makes it warm), — burns.

In the sun it is hot.
It is warm; — it will be hot; — there will be a great heat to-day.

Yesterday there was a great heat.

How doesthe thermometer stand? — Eighty five in the shade.

The thermometer is rising, — is falling.

What a heat! — I am perspiring; let us go into the shade; — I feel hot.

What wind is it? — East wind, — West wind, South wind, — North wind.

I think there will be a

Jaké je počasí?
Je pěkně; — je krásné počasí.

Vybírá se; — je krásné ráno; — bude pěkný den.

Nebe je jasné. — Slunce svítí — hřeje — páli.

Na slunci je horko.
Je teplo; — bude horko; — bude dnes velké parno.

Včera bylo silné vedro.

Jak stojí teploměr? — Osmdesát pět ve stínu.

Teploměr stoupá, — klesá.

To je horko! — Já se potím; pojďme dochládku. — Je mi horko.

Jaký je vítr? — Východní, — západní, jižní, — severní.

Myslím že bude změna

yáké yě počhăsee?
yě pyěkñe; — *yě krássné počhăsee.*

vybeerá sě; — *yě krássné ránđ;* — *bědě pyěknee den.*

něbě yě yásné. — *slüntsě sweet'ee.* — *hrshěyě,* — *púlee.*

nă slüntsi yě horkđ.
yě teplđ; — *bědě horkđ;* — *bědě dness velké parno.*

sfheră billđ silné vědrđ.
yák stoyee teplđmyěr?
— *osümdessát pyět vě stěenü.*

teplđmyěr stořpá, — *klěsá.*

tě yě horkđ! — *yá sě potěem;* *pođmědđkhlídka;* — *ye me horkđ.*

yákee yě veet'ě? — *veekhodñee,* — *zápădñee,* — *yižñee,* — *sěverñee.*

mislecm že bědě zmyě-

change in the weather;—the wind changes. — Now it blows from the East.

Very likely there will be a change.

It is dry; we need rain; — I wish it would rain! — There is a great deal of dust.

Is it going to rain? — It looks like it; it is getting cloudy.

It is cloudy; — the sky is clouded; — the sky is overcast: — it is damp.

Do you see those dense, black clouds? — They bring rain, — a heavy rain.

I think a rainstorm is coming, — a heavy rainstorm.

The weather is bad; — the weather is nasty; — it is wet and muddy.

It is very nasty out of doors; — it is rainy; — too much rain!

It sprinkles; — it rains a little; — it rains; — it pours; — how muddy it will be!

počasí; — vítr se mění. — Teď vane od východu.

Dost možná, že bude změna.

Jesucho; potřebujeme dešť. — Kéž by jen pršelo! — Je moc prachu.

Bude pršet? — Vypadá to tak; mračí se.

Je zamračeno; — je pod mrakem; — obloha je zatažena, — je vlhko.

Vidíte ty husté, černé mraky? — Z toho bude dešť, — hodný dešť.

Myslím že bude liják, — silný liják.

Je špatné počasí; — je škaredá povětrnost; — je mokro a blativo.

Je tam ošklivě; — je deštivo; — mnoho deště!

Krápe; — poprchává; — prší; — lije se; — to bude blata!

nă pochăsee; — veet ^{er} se myěñee. — těd' văne od veekhodū.

dost mōžná že būdě zmyěnă.

yě sūkhō; potrshěbūyě- mě deshť. — kěž be yen p'ershelō! — yě mots prákhū.

būdě p'ershět? — vypădá tō tăk; mrăchee sě.

yě zămrăchenō; — yě pod mrăkem; — oblōhă yě zătăzenă; — yě v'lhko.

ved'cete ty hūssté, cher- ně mrăky? — stohō būdě deshť, — hodnee deshť.

misleem že būdě liyák, — silnee liyák.

yě shpătné pochăsee; — yě shkăredá povyět ^{er} nost; — yě mokrō.

yě tăm oshklivyě; — yě deshťivō; — mnohō deshťe!

krápě; — pop'rkhává; — p'ershée; — liyě sě; — tō budě blătă!

It rains in torrents.—It has ceased to rain already.

That was a heavy rain-storm,—a cloudburst; — it rained in torrents. — It caused a flood.

It is calm,—no wind,— not a leaf is stirring. — It is sultry; the air is heavy.

The wind rises; — it is windy; — it blows hard; — there is a strong wind.

A storm is brewing; — there will be a hurricane; — a cyclone is coming.

A thunderstorm is coming. — It lightens. — Now there was a flash of lightning. — What flashes of lightning!

Do you hear the thunder? — Yes, it thunders; the thunder rolls from afar; — a thunderstorm is coming.

The thunder roars; — the lightning has struck; it has struck somewhere! — the lightning set fire.

This is a terrible storm,

Prší jen se lije. — Už přestalo pršeti.

To byl příval, — průtrž mračen; — pršelo jen se lilo. — Byla z toho povodeň.

Je ticho, — bez větru, — ani se list nehýbe. — Je dusno; vzduch je těžký.

Dělá se vítr; — je větrno; — fouká hodně; — je silný vítr.

Bude z toho bouře; — bude vichřice; — cyklon se blíží.

Talne bouřka. — Blýská se. Ted' se záblesklo. — To je blýskání!

Slyšíte hřímati? — Ano, hřímá — hrom hučí z daleka; — bouřka se blíží.

Hrom burácí; — hrom uhodil; — někde uhlodilo! — blesk zapálil.

To je hrozná bouře, —

p^ershee yen sě nyè. — ūsh prshěstālō p^ershčt.

tō bill prshheevāl, — proot^ersh mrāchēn; — p^ershellō yen sě lillō. — būdě stōhō pōvodenī.

yě tīkhō, — běz vyetrū, — āñi sě list něheebe. — yě dūssnō; vzdūkh yě teshkee.

d'elá sě veet^er; — yě vyet^et^ernō; — foúká hodnē; — yě silnee veet^er.

būdě stōhō boúrshč; — būdě vikh-rshitsé; — tsiklon sě bleežee.

tāhne boúrsh-kā. — bleeská sě. — ted' sě záblesklō. — tō yě bleeskáñi!

slisheetě hrsheemāt? — ānō, hrsheemá; — hrom hūchee zdálekā; — boúrshkā sě bleežee.

hrom būrátsee; — hrom ūhodil; — ūnegāč ūhodilō! — blesk zápálil.

tō yě hrózná boúrshč, —

— an awful thunder-storm.—The cra hing of thunder is incessant. — Flash after flash, one thunder-clap after the other. That was a thunder-clap — a thunderbolt from a clear sky. It hails.—This is a big hailstorm. It will destroy the crops — the hail will destroy everything. — The hail-storm destroyed the crops;—hailstones of an enormous size were falling.

It is foggy;—this morning there was a thick fog. Dew is falling;—there is a heavy dew. There is a hoary frost, — a gray frost. It is cold;—it is chilly; — it is frosty. I feel cold;—I am freezing.— a cold wind is blowing. I want to warm myself.—Are you cold? Warm yourself. — It is warm here, — almost too warm.

strašné hromobití.—
Hrom bije neustále.
— Blesk za bleskem.
rána za ranou.

To byla hromová rána;—uhodilo z čista jasna.
Padají kroupy. — **To je silné krupobití.**
Potluče; — **kroupy všecko zničí.** — **Potlouklo;** — **padaly kroupy ohromné velikosti.**

străshné hromobití.
—*hrom bije něustálě.*
—*blesk za bleskem,*
ráná za ranou.

tř billá hromová rána;
—*uhodilō schistá yasná.*
pădăyee kroupy. —*tř yě silné krupobití.*
potluché; —*kroupy fshet-sko zničee.* —*potločklō;* —*pădăly kroupy ohromné vělikostí.*

Jest mlhavo;—ráno byla hustá mlha.

Padá rosa; — **je silná rosa.**

Je jinovatka, — **šedý mráz.**

Je zima;—**je sichtravo;** — **je mrazivo.**

Je mi zima; — **mrazí mě;** — **fouká studený vítr.**

Chci se ohřáti. — **Je vám zima?**—**Ohřejte se.**—**Zde je teplo,** — **až moc teplo.**

yest m'lhavō;—*ráno bil lă hússtá m'lhá.*

pădá rossă; — *yě silná rossă.*

yě yinovátkă, — *shedee mráz.*

yě zimă;—*yě sikhřavō;* — *yě mrázivō.*

yě mi zima; — *mrázee myě;*—*foúká stúdnee veet ēr.*

khtsi sě ohrshát. — *yě vám zimă?* *ohrshěytě sě.*—*zdě yě teplō;*—*ăsh mots teplō.*

It is going to snow; — it snows;—it is snowing.

What a snow-storm!— a great snow-storm.

A great deal of snow fell;—there are snow-drifts.

How many degrees is it?— It is twenty below zero; — a severe cold.

The ice is thick; we can skate.

It will grow warmer;— it is growing warmer; — the wind is shifting; — it blows from the South.

The ice breaks; — the snow thaws and the ice melts.—there is a big thaw.

In the spring the weather is mild; — in the summer it is usually hot;— in the fall it is cool;— in the winter it is cold and it freezes.

Wisconsin has a hard winter; — Louisiana has a mild winter.— In Texas the winter is short and the summer long.

Bude padati sníh; — padá sníh; — sněží.

To je vánice! — velká metelice.

Napadlo mnoho sněhu; —jsou závěje.

Kolik je stupňů? — Je dvacet pod nulou; — krutá zima.

Led je silný; můžeme se klouzati.

Ono se oteplí;—otepluje se;—vítr se obráci;—vane od jihu.

Led puká; — sníh taje a led se rozpouští; — je hodná obleva.

Z jara je mírné počasí; — v letě bývá horko; — na podzim je chladno; — v zimě je zima a mrzne.

Wisconsin má tuhou zimu; — Louisiana má mírnou zimu. —

V Texasu je krátká zima a dlouhé leto.

břdě pădăt sñeeh;—pădá sñeeh;—sñežee.

tř yě vánice! — velká metellitsč.

nápadlo mnohō sñehu; — soú závýčy.

kolik yě štúpñoo? — yě dwătset pod nulloú; — krutá zimă.

led yě silnee; možemě sě kložat.

óno sě oteplí;—otepluje se; — veet ēr sě obrátsee; — váně od yehu.

led puká; — sñeeh třyě a led sě rozpoří; — yě hodná obleva.

zjárč yě meerné pochásee; — vleče beevá horko; — ná podzim yě khládnō; — vzimyě yě zimă a mrzně.

wisconsin má třhoú zimū; — louisiana má meernoú zimū. — flexas yě krátká zimă a dložhé lelo.

The summer season is warm, — the winter season is cold.

In the winter days are short and nights are long.

The day shortens; — the day lengthens.

The night shortens.

Letní počasí je teplé,
— zimní počasí je studené.

V zimě jsou krátké dny a dlouhé noci.

Den se krátkí; — dne přibývá.

Noc se krátkí; (noci ubývá).

letníe pochásee yě teplé,
— zimníe pochásee yě stúděně.

vzimyě soú krátké dñi
a dlouhé notsi.

den sě krátkí; — dně prshibeevá.

nots sě krátkí; (notsi ubeevá).

VOCABULARY.

Počasí, n. *pochásee* } the
povětrnost, f. *povyet'rnost* } weather

počasí, n. } the season;
doba, f. *doba* }

nebe, n. *něbě*, the heaven
obloha, f. *obløhá*, the sky

stín, m. *st'een*, the shade, the shadow

chládek, m. *khládek*, the shady place

prach, m. *prákh*, the dust

blato, n. *blátō*, the mud

list, m. *list*, the leaf

velikost, f. *velikost*, the greatness

kéž by, I would that....; would to
heaven that....; I wish it
would....;

východ, m. *veekhōd*, the east
západ, m. *zápād*, the west

jih, m. *yeeh* } the south
poledne, n. *poledne* }

sever, *sěver* } the north
půlnoc, *poolnots* }

jiho-východ, m. the south-east
severovýchod, m. the north-east

jihozápad, m. the south-west
severozápad, m. the north-west

východní, *veekhodní*, eastern
západní, *zápādní*, western

jižní, *yeežní* } southern
polední, *polední* }

severní, *severní* } northern
půlnocní, *poolnochní* }

Vítr, m. *veet'r*, the wind

vichřice, f. *vikh-rshitsě*, the gale,
the hurricane;

foukati, *foúkát* } to blow
vanouti, *vánoút* }

bouře, f. *boúrshě*, the storm

bouřka, f. *boúrshkă*, the thunder-
storm,

hřímati, *hrsheelmăt*, to thunder

hřímání, n. *hrsheelmáñee*, the thun-
dering

hrom, m. *hr̄om*, the thunder
hromová rána, a peal or crash of thunder;
hromobití, n. *hr̄omobit̄ee*, peals of thunder;
burácti, *bürátset*, to roar, to crash
blýskati se, *bleeskăt̄ s̄e*, to lighten

Dešť, m. *desh̄t̄*, the rain
liják, m. *liják* } the rainstorm,
příval, m. *prsheevăl* } the heavy shower:
průtrž mračen, *protoot̄ rsh̄ mrăchĕn*, the cloud-burst;
povodeň, f. *p̄vodeň*, the flood
mrak, m. *mrăk* } the cloud
mračno, n. *mrăchno* } the cloud
mračiti se, *mrăchit̄ s̄e*, to grow cloudy;
krápati, *krápăt̄* } to sprin-
poprchávati, *p̄op̄ e rkhávăt̄* } kle;
pršeti, *p̄ e rsh̄et*, to rain
lítí se, *lect̄ s̄e* (colloq. *leyt̄ s̄e*), to pour
přestati, *prsh̄estăt̄*, to stop.

—
Kroupy, pl. *kroūpy*, the hail
krupobití, n. *krüpobiťee*, the hail-storm;

Vybírati se, *vybeerăt̄ s̄e*, to clear up
měniti se, *myě-ñit s̄e*, to change
páliti, *pálit̄*, to burn
přibývati, *prshibeevăt̄*, to increase, to lengthen;

blýskání, n. *bleeskáñee*, the lightning
blesk, the flash or stroke of lightning; the thunderbolt;
zablesklo se, *zăblesklă s̄e*, there was a flash a lightning;
uhoditi, *ühod̄it̄*, to strike
zapáliti, *zăpálit̄*, to set fire.

potlouci, *potloūtsi*, to knock down, to destroy;
zničiti, *zñichit̄*, to annihilate
mlha, f. *m̄lhă*, the fog
mlhavo, *m̄lhăvă*, foggy
rosa, f. *rossă*, the dew
jinovatka, f. *ye-novătkă*, hoary frost
sníh, m. *sñeeh*, the snow
sněhu, *sñehu*, of the snow;
sněžiti, *sñežit̄*, to snow
metelice, f. *metělits̄e* } the snow-storm,
vánice, f. *váñits̄e* } the blizzard;
závěje, pl. f. *závyžyč*, snow-drifts
led, m. *led*, the ice
náledí, n. *náled̄ee*, glazed frost
mráz, m. *mráz*, the frost
mrznouti, *m̄rznoňt̄*, to freeze
táti, *táťi*, to thaw
tání, n. *táñee* } a thaw
obleva, *oblěvă* }

ubývati, *übeevăt̄*, to decrease, to shorten;
potiti se, *pot̄it̄ s̄e*, to sweat.
černý, á, é *chernee*, black
hustý, á, é *hüsstee*, thick, dense;

Škaredý, á, é *shkärēdee*, nasty, ugly;
 mírný, á, é *meernee*, mild
 ohromný, á, é *ðhromnee*, enormous,
 terrible;
 strach, m. *strákh*, fear
 strašný, á, é *stráshnee*, fearful
 hrůza, f. *hroozá*, horror, terror;
 hrôzny, á, é *hröznee*, horrible;
 shocking.

Blativo, (adv.)*), *bláťivō*, muddy
 deštivo, *deshťivo*, rainy
 mokro, *mokrō*, wet
 vlhko, *v'lhkō*, damp
 sucho, *súkhō*, dry
 teplo, *teplō*, warm
 horko, *horkō*, hot

parno, *parnō*, very hot
 dusno, *dússnō*, close, stifling;
 zima, *zimā* }
 studeno, *stúděnō* } cold
 chladno, *khládnō*, cool
 sichtravo, *sikhrávō*, chilly
 mrazivo, *mrázivō*, frosty, freezing
 cold.
 —
 Teplovér, m. *teplōmyér*, the thermometer
 stupeň, m. *stúpeň*, a degree
 nula, f. *nůlā*, zero
 nad nulou, *nád nůlōu*, above zero
 pod nulou, below zero;
 stoupati, *stoüpăt*, to rise;
 klesati, *klessăt*, to go down.

Health and sickness.

ZDRAVÍ a NEMOC.

I hope you are well.
 Only middling;— I am
 so so.
 Yo do not look so well
 as (you did) lately.
 Do you think so? —
 Well, you are right;
 — I do not look well.

Doufám že jste zdravý.
 Jen tak prostředně;—
 jen tak tak.
 Nevypadáte tak dobře
 jako nedávno.
 Myslíte? — Ba máte
 pravdu;—nevypadám
 dobře.

dořfám že stě zdráf.
 yen tāk prostrshědñe;—
 yen tāk tāk.
 něvypădátě tāk dobrshě
 yákō nedávno.
 misleetě? — bā málě
 prăvdă;—něvypădám
 dobrshě.

*) The adjectives are : blativý (á, é), deštivý, mokrý, etc.

Je tam blativo, it is muddy out of doors; — blativý chodník (m.), a muddy sidewalk; blativá cesta (f.), a muddy road; blativé pole (n.), a muddy field.

Je deštivo, it is rainy; — deštivý den, a rainy day.

I think I look bad (badly); — I look worse.

O no! you do not look badly.

Don't I? — I guess I do! Listen to me (i. e. let me tell you): you look better than you did the other day.

O, be still! — you flatter me.

You look bad (badly); — I do not like your looks.

What is the matter with you? — is anything the matter with you?

Do you not feel well? — what is the matter? — what ails you? —

Nothing ails me; — nothing is the matter with me.

Why do you look so bad (badly)? — That's nothing!

You deny it (i. e. conceal it). — Don't deny it!

I deny nothing; — why should I deny?

If anything is the matter with you, tell me!

Myslím že vypadám špatně; — vypadám hůř.

O ne! nevypadáte zle.

Že ne? — Myslím že ano! Dejte si říci: vypadáte lépe než onehdy.

I dejte pokoj! — vy mi pochlebujete!

misleem že vypădám shpătñe; — vypădám hoorsh.

O ně! nøyvypădátě zlě.

že ně? — misleem že ānō! deytě si rheetsi : vypădátě lépě nesh őněhdy.

E deytě pōkoy! --vy me pōkhlēbūyelě.

Vyhližíte špatně; — ne-líbíte se mi.

Co je vám? — chybí vám něco?

Není vám dobře? — co vám chybí? — co vás bolí?

Nic mi není; — nic mi nechybí.

Proč vypadáte tak špatně? — To nic není!

Vy zapíráte. — Nezapírejte!

Nic nezapírám; — proč bych zapíral?

Je-li vám něco, řekněte!

vyhlečžetě shpătñe; — něleebeetě sě me.

tsō yě vám? — khibee vám ñetsō?

neyñi vám dōbrshě? — tsō vám khibee? — tsō váss bolee.

ñits me neyñi; -- ñits me někhibee.

proch vypădátě tăk shpătñe? — to ñits neyñi!

vy zăpeerátě. — nězăpeerreytě.

ñits nězăpeerám; — proch bikh zăpeeräl? yělli vám ñetsō, rshěk-ñetě!

Tell me what is the matter with you?— does anything ail you? — tell me if anything ails you.

If anything were the matter with me, I should say so.

There is something the matter with you!

You don't feel well; — I see it by your looks!

You are right; I am not well.

What is the matter with you?— I do not know what ails me; — I do not feel quite well.

I am not so well as usual.— A little time ago I felt better.

To-day I feel bad (badly):— I was taken sick.

I feel badly.

Are you sick?

Yes, I am sick; I do not feel well; — I feel bad (badly).

I hear that Edward is sick.

He has been taken sick; — he has fallen sick; — he is very sick; — he

Povězte co je vám? —
bolí vás něco? — povězte chybí-li vám něco.

Kdyby mi něco bylo,
řekl bych to.

Vám něco je! — Vám něco chybí!

Vám není dobré; — vídím to na vás!

Máte pravdu; není mi dobré.

Co je vám? — Nevím co mi je; — necítím se docela dobré.

Nejsem tak zdráv jak obyčejně. — Ještě nedávno bylo mi líp.

Dnes je mi špatně; — přišlo mi náric.

Je mi náric. — Je mi zle.

Jste nemocen?

Ano, jsem nemocen; — není mi dobré; — je mi zle.

Slyším, že Edward je nemocen.

Roznemohl se; — upadl do nemoci; — je silně nemocen; — je

převyžtě tsř yě vám? — bolee váss ñetsř? — převyžtě khibeeli vám ñetsř?

gdýby me ñetsř billř, rsh'kl bikh tř.

vám ñetsř yě! — vám ñetsř khibee!

vám neyñi döbrshë; — vid'eeem tř nř váss!

mátě právdř; neyñi me döbrshë.

tsř yě vám? — něveem tsř me yě; — nětsee'eeem sě dotsellă döbrshë.

neysem třk zdráf yák obicheyñe. — Yeshtě nědávnř billř me leep.

dness yě me shpátnë; — prshishlo me náñits.

yě me náñits. — yě me zlě.

stě němotsř?

řnř, sem němotsř; — neyñi me döbrshë; — yě me zlě.

slisheem že Edward yě němotsř.

roznemohř sř; — ūpádř dř dř němotsř; — yě silñe němotsř; — yě

has been sick a long time.	dlouhō nemocen.	<i>dloūhō němotsěn.</i>
What is the matter with him?—what happened to him?	Co mu je? — co se mu stalo?	<i>tsō mū yě? — tsō sě mū stǎlō?</i>
He caught a cold:— he has a bad cold.	Nastudil se; — má silné nastuzení.	<i>nǎstǔdil sě; — má silně nǎstǔzeňi.</i>
Anthony is also sickly: — but to-day he already feels better.	Anton je také churavý; — ale dnes už je mu lépe.	<i>ānton yě tāke khürävee; — ālē dness ūsh yě mū lepē.</i>
I was long in poor health;—I was ailing seriously.	Já dlouhō churavěl; — povážlivě jsem churavěl.	<i>yá dloūhō khürävyell; pōvázlivyě sem khürävyell.</i>
What was the matter with you? - Indeed I do not know what ailed me.	Co vám bylo? — Ani nevím co mi bylo.	<i>tsō vám billō? — āni ně veem tsō me billō.</i>
I had no appetite, — I had no sleep,— I had a feeling of weariness. — But it all passed away.	Neměl jsem chuť k jídlu, — neměl jsem spaní, — cítil jsem unavenost. — Ale minulo to.	<i>nemyell sem khūtěk-yee-dlū, — nemeyell sem spāňi. — tseeťil sem ūnāvěnost. — ālē mi-nělō tō.</i>
Take care of yourself; — be careful of your health!	Dejte na sebe pozor; — bud'te opatrny na zdraví!	<i>deytě nā sěbě pōzor; — būd'tě ɔpăt' ērnee nā zdrävee.</i>
Health is above everything; it is the greatest treasure.	Zdraví je nadě všecko; je to největší poklad.	<i>zdrävee yě nādě fshětskō; yě tō neyvyět-shee pōklăd.</i>
An unhealthy man is unhappy.	Člověk nezdravý je něštastný.	<i>chlovýk nězdrävee yě neshťassnee.</i>
Whatis the matter with you? are you sick? — you are not sick, are you?	Co je vám? stůněte? snad nestůněte?	<i>tsō yě vám? stoonětē? — snād něstooňetē?</i>
Only a little; it is not	Jen tak trochu; není	<i>yen tāk trōkhū; neyňi</i>

bad. -- I have a pain in the bowels.	to zlé. -- Mám bolezní.	tě zlé. — mám bolění.
That will pass away; -- it will stop of itself. -- I hope so.	To zase přejde; -- to přestane samo. — Doufám.	tě záss prshěydě; — tě prshěstně sám. — doufám.
Do you have it often? -- Quite often; — it comes upon me from time to time.	Míváte to často? — Dost často; — přichází to na mě ob čas.	meevátě tě chásstō? — dost chásstō; — prshikházee tě ná myě ob chás.
What do you do against it? -- Nothing; I lie down and remain quiet.	Co děláte proti tomu? — Nic; lehnu si a jsem tiše.	tsō dělátě proti tōmū? — níts; lehnū si a sem tříshě.
That is the best medicine. -- I think so. -- That helps.	To je nejlepší lék. — Já myslím. — To pomahá.	tě yě neylepshee lék. — yá misleem. — tě pomahá.
It always helps me; — nothing else helps me.	To mi vždycky pomůže; nic jiného mi nepomahá.	tě mi vžditsky (ditske) pomoože; — níts yinéhō me něpomahá.
At least it gives relief. Yes, I feel instant relief,	Aspoň to ulehčí. — Ano, hned se mi ulehčí.	asspoň tě ülěh-chee. — änō, hned sě me ülěh-chee.
It relieves instantly; -- it is good for relief.	Hned se uleví; — je to dobré pro úlevu, (pro ulehčení).	hned sě ülěvee; — yě tě döbré pro oolěvū (pro ülěh-cheñi).

VOCABULARY.

Nastuditi se, <i>năstüd'it sě</i> , to catch a cold;	pomahati, <i>pomăhăt</i> , to help;
nastuzení, n. <i>năstuzěñi</i> , a cold;	pomahá, <i>pomăhá</i> } it helps
churavěti, <i>khürävyět</i> , to sicken, to be sickly;	pomůže, <i>pomoožě</i> } it helps
churavý, á, é <i>khürävée</i> , sickly, indisposed;	nepomahá } it does not help;
churavost, f. <i>khürävost</i> , sickliness, indisposition;	nepomůže } it does not help;
	pochlebovati, <i>pokhlěbovăt</i> , to flatter
	zapírati, <i>zăpeerăt</i> , to deny
	cítiti, <i>tseet'it</i> , to feel
	cítím, <i>tseet'eeem</i> , I feel

mívati (reit. form of **míti**, to have; see page 168;) *meevă̄t'i*, to use to have;
přicházeti, *prshikházet*, to use to come;
přestati, *prshěstă̄t*, to stop;
ulehčiti, *ülech-chit* } to relieve
ulevití, *ülevit* }
ulehčení, n. *ülech-čeñi* } relief
uleva, f. *oolěvă̄*

Chut', f *khǖt'*, the taste, the appetite,*)
chut' k jídlu, *khǖt' k yeedlă̄*, appetite for food;
spaní, n. *spă̄ñee*, the sleep;
lék, m. *lék* } the medicine
medicina, f. *meditsină̄* }
poklad, m. *poklă̄d*, the treasure;
pokoj, m. *pökoy*, peace, rest;
dejte pokoj! *deytě pökoy!* give me a rest! keep still!
ob čas, *ob chă̄ss*, from time to time:

necitím, *nětseēvem*, I do not feel;
boleti, *böl̄et*, to ache, to ail;
bolení, n. *bolěñi*, pain, (especially in the bowels, belly-ache);
je mi nanic, *yě me năñits*, I feel sick
něco mi chybí, *ñetsõ me khibee*, something ails me; there is something the matter with me.

zdravý, á, é *zdră̄vee*, healthy, well, sound;
nezdravý, á, é *nezdră̄vee*, unhealthy, unwell, unsound;
opatrny, á, é *ðpă̄t'rnée*, careful
obyčejny, á, é *ðbicheynee*, usual, common;
obyčejně, *ðbicheyñe*, usually, commonly;
povážlivě, *povážlivyě*, seriously
prostředně, *prostrshěd-ñě*, middling
ticho, n. *tíkhõ*, silence, quiet, calm,
tiše, *tíshě*, quietly, calmly.

The human being. LIDSKÝ TVOR.

Tělo, n. *telõ*, the body;
tělesný, á, é *tělessnee*, bodily;
úd, m. *ood*, the member, the limb;
kost, f. the bone;

kostra, f. *kostră̄*, the skeleton;
kostnatý, á, é *kostnă̄tce*, bony;
morek, m. }
špik, m. *shpik*, } the marrow;

*) **Chut'** means also "a desire or inclination", **mám chut' jíti tam**, I have a mind to go there; — **mám chut' vyhnati ho**, I have a mind to chase him (or: to turn him out); — **mám chut' říci mu to**, I have a mind to tell him so; — **mám chut' do práce**, I have a desire to work, or a taste for work; I feel like working; — **pracuju s chutí**, I work with a will; etc.

kůže , f. <i>koožě</i> , { the skin	hlavní žila , <i>hlávñee ž.</i> { the
pleť , f. <i>plět</i> , { the skin	srdeční žila , <i>s'rdechñee ž.</i> { artery
pokožka , f. <i>pokožkă</i> , the cuticle	tepna , f. <i>těpnă</i> , the pulse
blána , f. <i>blánă</i> , the membrane	žilka , f. <i>žilkă</i> , a small vein;
maso , n. <i>măssă</i> , the flesh	žilnatý, á, é <i>žilnătee</i> , sinewy
masity , á, é <i>massitee</i> , fleshy	krev , f. <i>krěf</i> , the blood
tlustý, á, é <i>tlăstee</i> , fat	krevnatý, á, é <i>krěvnătee</i> , full blooded
hubený, á, é <i>hăběnee</i> , lean, thin;	chudokrevný, á, é <i>khădokrěvnee</i> ,
sval , m. <i>svăl</i> , the muscle	bloodless, anaemic
svalnatý, á, é <i>svălnătee</i> , muscular	krvavý, á, é <i>k'rvăvee</i> , bloody
šlachy , pl. <i>shlăkhy</i> , the sinews	vlas , <i>vlăss</i> { the hair on the head
žláza , f. <i>žláză</i> , the gland	vlasasy , pl. { the hair on the body
tuk , m. <i>tăk</i> , { the fat	chlup , <i>chlăp</i> { the hair on the body
sádlo , m. <i>sádlă</i> , { the fat	chlup, pl. { the hair on the body
nerv , m. <i>nerf</i> , { the nerve	vlasatý, á, é <i>vlăsătee</i> { hairy
číva , f. <i>chivă</i> , { the nerve	chlupatý, á, é <i>chlăpătee</i> { hairy
nervový, á, é <i>nervăvee</i> , { nervous	vnitřnosti , <i>vñitrsh-nost'i</i> viscera;
čivní , <i>chivñee</i> , { nervous	uvnitř, ūvñitrsh { inside, inwardly;
ceva , f. <i>tsěvă</i> , the vessel	vně, vñne { outside, outwardly.
žila , <i>žeelă</i> , the vein	zevnitř, zevñitrsh { outside, outwardly.
Hlava , f. <i>hlávă</i> , the head	zevně, zevñne { outside, outwardly.
lebka , f. <i>lebkă</i> , the skull	čelo , n. <i>chellă</i> , the forehead
temeno , n. <i>teměnă</i> , the crown or	tvář , f. <i>twársh</i> { the cheek
top of the head;	líce , n. <i>leetsë</i> { the cheek
týlo , n. <i>teelă</i> , the back of the head;	tvář, f. twársh { the face
kůže na hlavě , <i>kooženă hlăvyě</i> { the	obličej, m. oblichey { the face
skalp , m. <i>skălp</i> { the scalp	lícni kost , <i>leetsñee kost</i> , the cheek-
mozek , m. <i>măzék</i> , the brain	bone
spánek , m. <i>spánek</i> , the temple	čelist , f. <i>chellist</i> , the jaw-bone
spánky , pl. <i>spánky</i> { the temples	brada , f. <i>brădă</i> , the chin
skráně , pl. <i>skráñne</i> { the temples	laloch , m. <i>lălokh</i> , double chin
Oko , n. <i>oko</i> , the eye	důlek , m. <i>doolék</i> , the dimple
oči , pl. <i>ochi</i> , the eyes	vrásky , pl. m. <i>vrássky</i> , the wrinkles.
oční důlek , <i>ochñee doolek</i> , the socket	oční jablko , <i>ochñee yăb' lkă</i> , the eye-
	ball
	koutek , m. <i>koútek</i> , the corner

rohovka, f. *rohofkă*, the cornea

duhovka, f. *dăhofkă*, the iris

zřítelnice, f. *zrsheetelnítsě*, the pupil

klapka, f. *klăpkă*, the eyelid

Ucho, n. *úkhō*, the ear

uši, pl. *úshi*, the ears

Nos, n. *nōss*, the nose

špička nosu, *shpichkă nossū*, the tip of the nose.

Ústa, pl. *oostă*, the mouth

pysk, m. *pisk* } the lip

Zub, m. **zuby**, pl. *zăb*, *zăby*, the tooth, the teeth

přední zuby, *prshed-née zăby*, the fore-teeth

zadní zuby, *zăd-née zăby*, the back-teeth

špičáky, m. *shpicháky*, the canines

Voousy, pl. *foúsy*, the beard

licousy, pl. *litsoúsy*, the whiskers

Hrdlo, n. *h'rdlō*, the throat

krk, m. *k'rk*, the neck

hrtán, m. *h'rtán* } the larynx

chrťán, m. *hrshtán* } the larynx

hrdelnice, f. *h'rdel-nítsě*, the jugular vein:

Trup, m. *trüp*, the trunk

hrud', f. *hrüd'*, the chest

prsa, pl. *p'rsă*, the breast

žebro, n. *žebrō*, the rib

řasy, pl. *rshăssy*, the eyelashes

brvy, pl. *b'rvy* } the eyebrows

obočí, n. *občhee* }

konec ucha, *kōnets úkhă*, the tip of

the ear;

laloček, m. *lălōchek*, the lobe

chrípě, pl. *krshhee-pyě* }

nosové dírky, pl. *nosso-vě d'eerky* }

the nostrils

pysky, pl. }

rty, pl. }

stolička, f. *stolichkă*, the molar

kořen zubu, *korshěn zăbū*, the root

of the tooth;

dáseň, f. *dásseň*, the gum

dásně, pl. *dássně*, the gums

patro, n. *pătrō*, the roof of the mouth

jazyk, m. *yăzyk*, the tongue.

kníry, pl. *kñeery*, the moustaches

plnovous, m. *p'lnōfoüs*, the full beard

průdušnice, f. *proodăshnitsě*, the windpipe

mandle, pl. *măndlě*, the tonsils, the almonds;

ohryzek, m. *ðhryzěk*, Adam's apple.

klíční kost, f. *kleechñee kost*, the collar-bone

prsní kost, f. *p'rsñee kost*, the breast-bone

záda, pl. zádă, the back	zlatá žíla, f. zlátá žeelă, the spinal cord;
zadek, m. zădek, the back part, the backside;	plece, sing. & pl. pleisě, the shoulder lopatka, f. lopătkă, the shoulder-blade obratel, m. obrătel, the vertebra obratle, pl. obrătlă, the vertebrae.
předek, m. prshědek, the fore-part, the front;	
hřbet, m. hrsbet } the backbone, páteř, f. pátersh } the spine;	
Život, m. život, the abdomen	řit, f. rshif, the anus
břicho, n. brshikhă, the belly	pohlaví, n. pohlăvee, the sex
pupek, m. păpek, the navel	pohlavní úd, pohlăvňee ood, the sexual parts
bok, m. bök, the hip	muzský úd, m. măskee ood, the penis
slabina, f. slăbină, the side	zálupa, f. zálăpă, the fore-skin
kříž, krsheež, the small of the back;	varle, (pl. varlata), varlă, the testicle
zadnice; f. zădñitsě, the seat, the bottom;	rodičla, pl. rod'idlă, the genitals.
půlky, pl. f. poolky, } the	
zadní tváře, pl. f. zădñee } buttocks twárshě	
Ruka, i. rükă, the hand	kloub, m. kloüb, the joint
ruce, pl. rütsě, the hands; v rukou, vrükou, in the hands; na rukou, năr., on the hands	dlaň, f. dlăň, the palm
rámě, n. rámyě } the arm	prst, m. p'rst, the finger
paže, n. păže } the arm	palec, m. pălets, the thumb
dolní část paže, dolñee chást păže, the fore-arm	malík, m. măleek, the little finger
horní část paže, horñee chást p., the upper arm	ukazovák, ūkăzovák, the forefinger
rameno, n. rămeno } the shoulder or	prostřední prst, prostrshedñee p'rst, the middle finger
paždí, n. păžd'ee } top of the arm; podpaždí, n. podpăžd'i, the armpit	článek prstu, chlánek p'rstă, the phalange
loket, m. lăket, the elbow	špička prstu, f. shpichkă p'rstă, the tip of the finger;
přehyb, m. prshěhib, the wrist	nehet, m. năhet, the nail
pěst, f. pyěst, the fist	nehty, pl. năhty, the nails
kotník, m. kotñeeek, the knuckle	kotník, m. kotñeeek, the knuckle
kloub, m. kloüb, the joint.	

Noha, f. *nōhā*, the leg, the foot;
nohy, pl. *nōhy*, the legs, the feet;
chodidlo, n. *khod'idlō*, the foot
tlapa, f. *tlápā*, the sole of the foot;
stehno, n. *stěhnō*, the thigh
stehenní kost, f. *stěhěñee kost*, the
 thigh-bone
hnát, m. *hnát*, the shin
lýtko, n. *leetkō*, the calf of the leg;
koleno, n. *kolěnō*, the knee
přehyb kolena, m. *prshěhyb kolěnă*,
 the knee-joint

Srdce, n. *s'rdšě*, the heart
osrdí, n. *oss'rd'ee*, the pericardium
komora, f. *kōmoră*, the ventricle
plíce, pl. *pleetsě*, the lungs
játra, pl. *yátra*, the liver
slezina, f. *slezină*, the spleen
ledvina, f. *ledvină*, the kidney
měchýř, m. *myěkheersh*, the bladder
žluč, f. *žlǔch*, the gall, the bile;

pata, f. *pătă*, the heel
prsty u nohy, pl. *p'rsty ū nōhy*,
 the toes
palec u nohy, n. *pălets ū nōhy*, the
 big toe;
malík u nohy, m. *măleek ū nōhy*,
 the little toe;
plosko-nohý, *ploskō-nōhee*, flat-foot-
 ed;
kolo-nohý, *kolō-nōhee*, bow-legged.

žluční měchýř, m. *žlǔchňee m.*, the
 gall-bladder
žaludek, m. *žálǔdek*, the stomach
střevo, n. *strshěvō*, the intestine, the
 gut;
střeva, pl. *strshěvă*, the bowels
tenká střeva, the lesser intestines
tlustá střeva, *tlǔstá s.* the larger in-
 testines;
konečník, m. *konečňeek*, the rectum.

Ústrojí, n. *oostroyee*, organi m, con-
 stitution;
dýchatí, *deekhăt*, to breathe
dýchání, n. *deekháñi*, breathing, res-
 piration;
dýchací ústrojí, *deekhătsee oostroyee*,
 respiratory organs;
dech, m. *děkh*, the breath;
lehký dech, *lěhkee děkh*, easy breath-
 ing;
těžký dech, *těshkee děkh*, heavy
 breathing;
dechnutí, n. *děkhnuťee*, one breath

vydechnouti, *vyděkhnoút*, to draw
 breath;
vydechnouti ze sebe, v. *zě sěbě*, to
 exhale, to force out the
 breath;
vdechnouti do sebe, *vděkhnoút dō
 sěbě*, to inhale;
oddechnouti si, *oděkhnoút si*, to
 breath easily, to feel re-
 lief;
tráviti, *trávit* } to digest, to con-
ztráviti, *strávit* } sume:
zažívatí, *zážeevăt*, to digest

trávení, n. *tráveñi* } digestion
zažívání, n. *zřeževáñi* }
zažívací ústrojí, *zřeževátsee oostro-*
yee, digestive apparatus;
moč, m. *møch*, the urine
močení, n. *møchëñi*, urination
močiti, *møchít*, to urinate
stolice, f. *stolitsë*, stool, evacuation;
míti stolici, *meet stolitsi*, to go to
 stool; to have open bowels;
výkal, *veekál*, the excrement, the
 discharge;
lejno, n. *leynö* } the dung
trus, m. *trüss* }
oběh krve, m. *obyëhk errvë*, circula-
 tion of the blood;
krvácti, *k errvátset*, to bleed
krvácení, n. *k errváteñi*, the bleeding
měsícné, n. *myëseechné*, the men-
 struation
plod, m. *plöd*, the fruit
ploditi, *plöd'it*, to bear (fruit etc.);
 to beget;

Duch, m. *dëkh*, the spirit; the mind
 or intellect;
duše, f. *dëshë*, the soul
duchovní, *dëkhovñee* } spiritual,
duševní, *dëshëvñee* } intellectual;
mysl, f. *missl*, the mind
důmysl, m. *doomissl* } the intellect
schop, m. *skhöp*, }
rozum, m. *rozüm*, the reason, the
 understanding;
zdravý rozum, *zdrävee rozüm*, com-
 mon sense;
soudnost, f. *soüdnost*, the judgment

plození, n. *plözeñi*, the bearing, the
 begetting;
porod, m. childbirth
poroditi, *poröd'it*, to be delivered;
pracovati ku porodu, *prätssovät kū*
porödū, to be in labor;
šestinedělí, n. *shëstined'elee*, lying-in
šestinedělka, f. *shëstined'elkă*, a
 woman in childbed;
je těhotná, *yë těhötná*, she is with
 child;
čeká se do kouta, *cheká së dö koüta*,
 she expects to be confined;
je v koutě, *yë fkoüte* } she is confined,
slehlá, *slëhlă* } (in childbed);
po koutě, *pö koüte*, after childbirth,
 after confinement;
obcování, n. *obtsöváñi*, the inter-
 course
obcovati, *obtsövät*, to have inter-
 course;
pohlavní obcování, *pohlävñee o.*
tělesné obcování, *tëlessnë o.*
 sexual intercourse.

smysl, *smissl*, the sense
zrak, m. *zräk*, the sight
sluch, m. *slükh*, the hearing
chut, f. *khüť*, the taste
čich, *cit*, m. *chich*, *tsit*, the smell,
 the feeling;
hmat, m. *hmät*, the touch
pamět, f. *pämyët*, the memory
smyšlný, á, é *smisslnée*, sensual
smyšlnost, f. *smisslnost*, sensuality
nesmysl, m. *nësmissl*, nonsense
nesmyslný, á, é *nësmisslnée*, sense-
 less, nonsensical.

A sound body, — a sound mind.
 A sound mind in a sound body
 I have sound limbs, — and that is a great gift.
 The bone is hollow and contains marrow.
 That man is lean but muscular.
 That lady has excitable nerves.
 Young blood — hot blood,
 The pulse beats slowly, beats fast.
 The pulse is normal, — regular, — irregular.
 The beating of the heart and the beating of the pulse agree.
 Every little vein in the body contains blood.
 Fair hair and blue eyes prevail in the north, — dark hair and black eyes in the south.
 Long hair, short wit, — says an old proverb.
 The European race has a white skin, the Af-

Zdravé tělo, — zdravý duch.
Zdravý duch ve zdravém těle.
Mám zdravé údy, — a to jest veliký dar.
Kost je dutá a obsahuje morek.
Ten člověk je hubený, ale svalnatý.
Ta dáma má popudlivé nervy.
Mladá krev — horká krev.
Tepna bije pomalu, — bije prudce.
Tepna je normální, — pravidelná, — nepravidelná.
Tlukot srdece a bití tepny se shodujou (or shodují).
Každá žilka v těle obsahuje krev.
Plavý vlas a modré oči panují (or panujou) na severu, — tmavý vlas a černé oči na jihu.
Dlouhé vlasy, krátký rozum, praví staré přísloví.
Plemeno evropské má bílou pleť, plemeno

zdravé tělo, — zdravé důkh.
zdravé důkh vě zdravém těle.
mám zdravé oody, — a tě yest vělikee dar.
kost yě důtá a obsahyě morek.
ten chloryěk yě hubenee, aře svahnátee.
tě dámā má popudlivé nervy.
mladá kref — horká kref.
tepnā biyě pomalý, — biyě prudsé.
tepnā yě normálñee, — pravidelná, — něpravidelná.
tlukot s' rdsé a bitce tepny sě s-hodůyoř.
každá žilkă fťelč obsahyě kref.
plăvee vlăss a modré oči pănăyee nă sěvéră, — tmăvee vlăss a cherné oči nă yeehă.
dložhé vlăsy, krátkee rozum, — pravee stáré prsheeslovee.
plěmenđ evropské má beclouř pleť, plěmenđ

rican race a black skin.	africké černou.	äfritské chernoū.
Youth has a smooth face,—old age makes wrinkles.	Mladí má hladké líce, — stáří dělá vrásky.	mlád'ee má hladké leetsě, — stárshée d'elá vrássky.
A high forehead, a keen eye, long moustaches, — such was the young man.	Vysoké čelo, bystré oko, dlouhé kníry, — takový byl mladík.	visoké chellő, bistré ökő, dlouhé kñeery, — tákovee bill mlád'eeek.
The eyes are the organ of sight, the ears (are the organ of) hearing;—the nose is the organ of smell.	Oči jsou orgán zraku, uši sluchu; — nos je nástroj čichu.	öchi soū orgán zrăkū, ūshi slăkhū; — noss yě nástroy chikhū.
Young girls usually have coral lips.	Mladé dívky mívají korállové rty.	mládē d'eeinky meeväyee korállové rti.
Babies have chubby cheeks.	Děcka mají boubelaté tváře.	dětskă măyee boübellăté tvárshë.
You still have a full set of teeth (literally: "all the teeth").	Vy ještě máte všechny zuby.	vy yeshtě mätě fshëkhny zuby.
I have all (my) front teeth, but a few molars are wanting;— I had them pulled.	Mám všechny přední zuby, ale pár stoliček mi chybí; — dal jsem je vytrhnouti.	mám fshëkhny prshëdñee zuby; ālě pár stolichek me khibee; — däl sem yě vyt'rhnoūt proch stě yě däl t'rhät?
Why did you have them pulled? — Because they ached me; they were decayed.	Proč jste je dal trhati? — Proto že mě bolely; byly vyžrané.	— proto že myě bolëly; billi vižrancé.
A decayed tooth always aches; — it is best to pull it out.	Vyžraný Zub vždycky bolí; nejlíp ho vytrhnouti.	vyžranee züb ditski bolee; — neyleep hō vyt'rhnoūt.
The pulling of teeth is a painful operation,	Trhání zubů je bolestná operace, — ob-	t'rháñee zúboo yě bolestná öperätsě, — obzláshť

—especially when the tooth has a big root. Children lose the milk-teeth;—they fall out of themselves. With the teeth we bite; hence they are of a very hard substance. The teeth are set (liter. “sit”) in the jaw-bone

The windpipe carries the air into the lungs, where the blood is oxydized. The ribs inclose the thoracic cavity.—There are true ribs and false ribs. The spinal column is composed of links, which we call vertebrae.

Burdens are most easily carried (i. e. “we carry”) on shoulders.

The hand is an exceedingly important member.—The hand has five fingers.

The negroes usually have strong arms.

Whoever walks a great deal, must have sound legs.

The stubbing of the big toe causes pain.

zvlášť má-li zub velký kořen.
Děti ztráci mléčné zuby; — vypadají samy.
Zuby kousáme; proto jsou z velmi tvrdé látky.
Zuby sedí v čelisti.

Průdušnice vede vzduch do plic, kde krev se okysličí.
Žebra zavírají hrudní dutinu. — Jsou pravá žebra a falešná žebra.
Páteř skládá se ze článků, které nazýváme obratle.

Břemena nosíme nejsnáze na plecích.

Ruka jest úd nesmírně důležitý. — Ruka má pět prstů.

Negrové mívají silné paže.

Kdo chodí mnoho pěšky, musí mít zdravé nohy.

Zakopnutí palce u nohy dělá bolest.

má-li zuba velké koršen.
děti strátsee mléchné zuby; — vypádáyee sámy.
zuby kořsámě; protě soř zvelli tv'eřdélátky.
zuby sěd'ee fchělisti.

prodůšní i s vědě vzděkh dě plits, gdě kref sě okyslichee.
žebrä záveeräyee hrüdnee dětinü. — soř pravá žebrä a fáleshná žebrä.
pátersh skladá sě zě chlánkoo, které názevámě obratle.

brsheměná noseemě neysnáze ná pletseekh.

růká yest ood nesmeer ne dooléžitee. — růká má pyět p'rstoo.

něgrové meeväyee silné pěžě.

gdě khod'ee mnōhō pyěshky, můsee meet zdravé nōhy.

zákopnutee páltsě ū nōhy dělá bōlest.

The digestive apparatus is a vital organ. Food is digested in the stomach and in the bowels.

Zažívací ústrojí jest životní orgán.
Pokrm ztráví se v žaludku a ve střevách.

zăžeevătsee oostroyee
yest životnīe orgán.
pok'rm strávee sě v žá-
lūdkū a vě strshě-
vákh.

VOCABULARY.

Dar, m. *dăr*, the gift
tlukot, m. *tlükot*, the beating
kyslík, m. *kissleek*, oxygen
okysličiti, *okisslichit*, to oxygenate
dusík, m. *düsseek*, nitrogen
vzduch, m. *vzdükh*, the air
pokrm, m. *pok'rm*, the food
orgán, m. } the organ
nástroj, m. *nástroy* } the organ
článek, m. *chlánek*, the link
neger, m. *neg'er*, the negro
mládí, n. *mlád'ee*, youth
mladík, m. *mlăd'eeek*, the young man
dívka, f. *d'eeefka*, the girl
látna, f. *látka*, the material, the stuff;
žilka, f. *žilka*, a small vein;
pleť, f. the skin
přisloví, n. *prsheesloovee*, the proverb
plemeno, n. *pléměnō* } the race
plémě, n. *plémye* } the race
břemeno, n. *brshěmenō*, the burden
dutý, á, é *dătee*, hollow
prudký, á, é *prüdkee*, fast
prudce, adv. *prüdsě*, fast, rapidly;
popudlivý, á, é *pöpüdlivee*, excitable
normální, *normálñee*, normal
pravidelný, *pravidelnee*, regular
pravý, á, é *prävee*, true, right;
falešný, á, é *fälëshnee*, false

plavý, á, é *plävee*, fair, blonde;
koralový, á, é *korälovee*, coral (adj.)
boubelatý, á, é *boübélätee*, chubby
bolestný, á, é *bolestnee*, painful
vyžraný, á, é *vyžränee*, decayed
důležitý, á, é *dooléžitee*, important
takvý, á, é *täkovee*, such
nesmírně, *nesmeerñe*, exceedingly
pěšky, *pyëshky*, on foot
obsahovati, *obsähoväti*, to contain
panovati, *pänoväti*, to reign, to prevail;
shodovati se, *shodövät sě*, to agree
chyběti, *khibyët*, to be wanting;
trhati, *t'rhät*, to pull, to tear;
trhání, n. *t'rháñee*, the pulling
vytrhnout, *vyt'rhnoüti*, to pull out;
padati, *pădät*, to fall
vypadati, *vypădat* } to fall out;
vypadnouti, *vypădnouüti* } to fall out;
kousati, *koüsät*, to bite
nazývati, *názeevät*, to call (by a name)
skládati se (ze), *sklădät sě*, to be composed (of);
zavírati, *zăveerät*, to inclose (also
 "to shut");
zakopnouti, *zăkopnoüti*, to stub;
zakopnuti, n. *zăkopnütée*, the stubbing.

Disease and cure.

NEMOC a LÉČENÍ.

Nemoc, *němots*, sickness, illness, disease;
lehká nemoc, *lěhká* *n.* light disease;
těžká nemoc, *těžká* *n.* acute or dangerous disease;
nemocen, *cna*, *cno* *němotsen* } sick,
nemocný, *á*, *é* *nemotsnee* } ill, dis-eased
těžce nemocen, *těshtsě* *n.* very sick, dangerously sick;
býti nemocen, *beet* *němotsěn* } to be
stonati, *stonat* } sick;
roznemoci se, *rōzněmōtsisě* } to fall sick;
rozstonati se, *rōstonat sě*, } to be taken sick;
choreba, *f.* *khōrobă*, ailment, affection;
chorobný, *á*, *é* *khōrobnee*, ailing, affected;
marod, (coloq.) *mǎrod*, ailing, sickly;
maroditi, *mǎrođit*, to be ailing;
neduh, *m.* *nědūh* } ailment, affection;
neduživost, *f.* *nědūživost*, } infirmity, disorder;
neduživý, *á*, *é* *nědūživee*, ailing, infirm;
neduživec, *m.* *nědūživets*, } sickly or
maroda, *m.* *mǎrođd* } infirm person;
mrzák, *m.* *měrzák*, cripple
zmrzačiti, *změrzachit*, to cripple

zmrzačen, *a*, *o* *změrzachěn* } crippled
zmrzačený, *á*, *é* *změrzachěnee* } pled
zmrzačenost, *f.* *změrzachěnost*, the crippled condition;
rána, *f.* *ránă*, the wound
raniti, *rěnit* } to wound
poraniti, *porānit* } to wound
raněný, *á*, *é* *rěnenee*, wounded
poranění, *n.* *porāněnee* } the wound-
úraz, *m.* *oorăz* } ing, a hurt or injury;
ublížiti, *übliěžit* } to hurt,
uškoditi, *üshkodit* } to injure;
uhoditi, *ühodit*, to strike, to hurt by striking;
pohmožditi, *pōhmožd'it*, to bruise;
pohmoždění, *n.* *pōhmožd'ěñee*, the bruising, a bruise;
uskřípnouti, *üskrsheepnoūt*, to jam, to squeeze;
uskřípnuti, *n.* *üskrsheepnūt'ee*, a contusion by squeezing;
říznouti, *rsheeznoūt*, to cut
říznuti, *n.* *rsheeznūt'ee* } a cut;
řez, *m.* *rshěz* } a cut;
píchnouti, *peekhnoūt* } to stab, to
odnouti, *odnoūt* } pierce, to prick;
kousnouti, *koüsnoūt*, to bite
kousnuti, *n.* *koüsnuūt'ee*, a bite.

*) *Nemocný* is the definite, *nemocen* the indefinite adjective. See Note 2 on page 103.

**) *Zmrzačen* is the passive participle (see Lesson XXXVII), from which the adjective *zmrzačený* is derived.

Lékař, m. *lékarsh*, the physician
doktor, m. *doktör*, the doctor
lékařství, n. *lékarsh-stwee*, the medical profession:
lékařský, *lékarshkée*, medical
porodní lékař, *přrodñee lékarsh*, the accoucheur
porodní bába, *p. bábá* } the midwife
babička, *bábichka* }
ranhojič, m. *rānhōyich*, the surgeon
zubní lékař, *zúbñee lékarsh*, the dentist
vyléčiti, *vyléchit*, }
vyhojiti, *vyhōyit* } to cure, to heal
uzdraviti, *úzdrávit*
vyléčení, *vyhojení*, *uzdravení*, the cure
uzdraviti se, *úzdrávit sě* } to get
pozdravit se, *pozdrávitsě* } well,
vystonati se, *vystónět sě* to recover;
umřiti, *úmr̄sheet*, }
zemřiti, *zemrsheet* } to die
skonati, *skonāt*

Bolest, f. *bolest* } the pain,
bolení, n. *boléñi* } the ache;
bolení břicha, *b. brshikhă*, belly-ache
kolika, f. *kolikă*, the colic
mám bolení, I have a pain in the bowels or stomach;
bolení hlavy, *b. hlávy*, head-ache
“ **zubů**, č. *zúbů*, tooth-ache
bolest v životě, *b. vživotě*, pain in the abdomen;
“ **v kříži**, *b. fkrshee-ži*, pain in the small of the back;

umíratí, *úmeerāt*, to be dying;
vypustiti ducha, *vypūstít dūkhă*, to breathe one's last;
smrt, f. *sm̄rt*, the death
náhlá smrt, *náhlá s.*, sudden death
prohlédnouti, *prohlédnout* } to exam-
proskoumati, *proskoúmat* } ine, to
vyšetřiti, *vyshětrshít* } probe;
raditi se, *rād'it sě*, to consult
předepsati, *prshēděpsāt*, to prescribe
dieta, *de-ětă*
mírnost v jídle, *meernost v yeedlē* } the diet
sbírati se, *sbeerāt sě*, to be recovering;
hubnouti, *hübnoūt*, to lose flesh;
tloustnouti, *tloüstnoūt*, to gain flesh;
slábnouti, *slábnoūt*, to grow weak;
síliti, *seelit*, to gain strength;
slabost, f. *slăbost*, weakness
síla, f. *seelă*, strength.

bolest v zádech, *b. vzáděkh*, pain in the back;
“ **v noze (v nohou)**, *b. vnōz̄e (v-nōhoū)*, pain in the leg, or foot (in the legs, or feet);
“ **v ruce (v rukou)**, *b. vrüts̄e (v-rükouū)*, pain in the hand, or arm (in the hands, or arms);
bolest u srdece, *b. ús̄'rds̄e*, pain in the heart region;
“ **uvnitř**, *b. úvnitř*, pain inside

bolestný, á, é *bolestnee*, painful
 bolavý, á, é *bolávee*, sore
 boule, f. *boúlě*, a boil, a bump;
 vřed, m. *vršhěd*, ulcer
 krtice, pl. *k'rtitsě*, scrofula
 rak, m. *rák*, cancer
 otok, m. *otók*, a swelling;
 otekly, á, é *otéklee*, swelled, swollen
 oteci, *otétsi*, to swell
 horký, á, é *horkee*, hot
 horkost, f. } the heat, the feverishness
 rozpálenost, f. } ver, the feverishness

Zápal, m. *zápál* } inflammation
 zánět, m. *záñet* }
 zapálený, á, é *zápálénee* } inflamed
 zanícený, á, é *záñeetsénee* }
 zápal plic, *zápál plits*, inflammation
 of the lungs;
 zápal mozku, z. *mózků*, inflammation
 of the brain;
 " mozkové blány, z. *mózkové
 blány*, meningitis;
 zápal střev, z. *strshěf*, inflammation
 of the bowels;
 zápal pobřišnice, z. *pobrshishnítsě*,
 peritonitis;
 " pohrudnice, z. *pohrudnítsě*,
 pleurisy;
 souchotě, pl. *soúkhoťe* } the con-
 úbytě, pl. *oobyťe* } sumption;
 tuberkule, pl. *tüberkúle*
 ochroma, *ókhromá* } paralysis
 ochrnutí, *ókh'rnút'ee* }
 mrtvice, f. m. *rtvitsě*, apoplexy
 záškrt, m. *záshk'rt*, diphtheria

rozpálen, a, o *rospálěn*, feverish;
 horečka, f. *horéchká* } thety-
 horká nemoc, *horká němots* } phus
 hlavníčka, f. *hlávñichká* } fever;
 zimnice, f. *zimnítsě*, the ague
 žlutá zimnice, *žlútá z.* the yellow-
 fever;
 mraziti, *mrázit*, to chill
 mrazení, n. *mrázění*, a chill, a shiver
 mrazi mě, *mrázee myě*, I feel a chill;
 třásti se zimou, *trshást sě zimoǔ*, to
 shiver with cold.

krup, m. *krúp*, the croup
 psotník, m. *psottníek*, the fits
 spála, m. *spálá* } the measles
 šarlát, m. *shárlát* }
 osutiny, pl. *ossútiny*, the chicken-
 pox
 neštovice, pl. *neshtovitsě*, the small-
 pox
 očkovati, *óchkovát*, to vaccinate
 očkování, *óchkováñi*, vaccination
 očkovaný, á, é *óchkovánee*, vacci-
 nated
 výraz, m. *veeráz*, eruption
 vyražený, á, é *vyráženee*, full of
 eruption;
 kožní nemoc, f. *kožníe němots*, skin-
 desease;
 lišej, m. *lishey*, the lichen
 mol, m. the ringworm
 svrab, m. the itch
 svrběti, *sv'rbýet*. to itch
 strup, m. *strúp*, the scab, the scurf;
 strupovitý, á, é *strupovitée*, scabby

hostec, m. *hostěts* } rheumatism
 revma, n. *revmā* }
 hostečný, *hostěchnee* } rheu-
 revmatický, *revmātitskee* } matic
 srdeční vada, f. *s'rděchñee vădă*,
 heart-disease;
 vodnatelnost, f. *vădnătellnost*, drop-
 sy;
 vodnatelný, á, é *vădnătelnee*, drop-
 sical
 záduch, m. *zádúkh*, asthma
 zádušlivý, á, é *zádúshlivee*, asthmatic
 kašel, m. *kăshel*, the cough
 modrý kašel, *modree k.*, the whoop-
 ing cough
 kašlati, *kăshlăt*, to cough
 vyhazovati, *vyhăzovăt*, to throw up;
 dáviti, *dávit* } to vomit
 blíti, *bleet* }
 dávení, n. *dáveñi* } the vomiting;
 blítí, n. *blit  ee* }

Zlomiti, *zломit* } to break
 zlámati, *zлам  t* }
 zlomený, á, é *zлом  ee*, broken
 zlámanina, f. *zлам  in  a* } a broken
 bone, a
 zlomenina, f. *zлом.....* } fracture;
 puklá kost, f. *p  ukl   kost*, a cracked
 bone;
 vymknouti, *vymkno  t*, to dislocate:
 vymknouti kloub, v. *klo  b*, to sprain
 a joint;
 vymknuti, n. *vymkn  t  ee*, a disloca-
 tion, a sprain;
 srovnati kost, *sr  vn  t kost*, to set a
 bone;

kře  e, pl. *krsh  ch  *, cramps
 mdloba, f. faintness, fainting fit;
 mdly, á, é *mdlee*, faint;
 omdleti, *  mdl  t*, to faint, to swoon;
 omdlév  ní, n. *  mdl  v  n  i*, fainting
 fits, swooning.
 nezá  vnost, f. *n  z      vnost* } indi-
 špatné trávení, n. *shp  tn  * } gestion
 zá  ivn  , á, é *z      ivnee*, digestible
 nezá  vn  , *n  z      ivnee*, indigestible
 v  try, pl. *vy  try* }
 nadouv  ní, n. *n  douv  n  i* } wind, flatu-
 lence;
 nadym  ní, n. *n  deem  n  i*
 nadmut  , á, é *n  dm  tee*, flatulent
 b  havka, f. *by  h  fka* } the
 pr  jem, m. *prooyem* } diarrhea
 z  stava, f. *z  st  v  * } stoppage in
 t      k   stolice, *t  sh  k  * } the bowels,
 stolits   } constipation,
 costiveness;
 uplavice, f. *oopl  vits  *, dysentery.

d  ti do desek, *d  t d   d  ssek*, to splint
 obv  zati r  nu, *  bv  z  t r  n  *, to dress
 a wound;
 obvazek, m. *  bv  z  k*, a dressing, a
 bandage;
 pr  tr  z, m. *proot  rsh*, the rupture
 pr  tr  n   p  s, m. the truss
 hrb, m. *h  rb*, a hump, a hunch;
 hrb  c, *h  rb  ch*, a humpback;
 hrbat  , á, é *h  rb  tee*, humpbacked;
 kulhati, *k  lh  t  *, to walk lamely;
 kulhav  , á, é *k  lh  v  ee* } lame
 chrom  , á, é *khrom  ee* }
 dopadati, *d  p  d  t*, to halt.

It is said that Mr. Hanush is sick.

Is he laid up?—Yes, he took to his bed.

Is he very sick? — I think it is serious.

Call a physician.—Send for a doctor

We have sent for him. — The doctor has been here already.

When was Mr. Hanush taken sick?—Yesterday morning; all at once he felt a chill, then he felt feverish.

What is the trouble?—What disease has he?

I think it is inflammation of the lungs.

That would be dangerous.—What does the physician say?

The doctor thinks that he has inflammation of the lungs.

Then I pity him.

How is Mr. Swoboda to-day? is he better?

Always the same thing; — no better, no worse; — there is no change.

Pan Hanuš je prý nemocen.

Leží? — Ano, ulehnil.

Je mu tuze zle? — Myslím že je to povážlivé.

Zavolejte lékaře. — Pošlete pro doktora.

Poslali jsme pro něj. — Doktor už tu byl.

Kdy se pan Hanuš rostonal? — Včera ráno; z nenadání dostal mrazení, pak horkost.

Co je mu? — Nač se rostonal?

Myslím že na zánět plíc.

To by bylo nebezpečné. — Co povídá lékař?

Doktor myslí že má zápal plíc.

To ho lituju.

pán hanušk yě prey němotsen.

ležee? — ano, ulehnil.

yě mū toozě zlē? — misleem že yě tō považlivé.

zavolejte lékárshě. — pošlětě pro doktorā.

pösläli smě pro dñey. — doktor už tū bill.

gdy sě pán h. rostnäl? — scherā ránō; zne nádáni dostál mrázění, pák horkost.

tsō yě mū? — náč sě rostnäl?

misleem že ná záñet plits.

tō bi billō něbespěchné. — tsō poveedá lékarsh?

doktor mislee že má zápal plits.

tō hō litüyū.

Jak je panu Svebodovi dnes? Je mu líp?

Pořád stejně; — ani líp, ani hůř; — nic se to nemění.

yák yě pánū swobodovi dness? yě mū leep.

porshád steyñe; — aní leep, aní hoorsh; — nits sě tō nemyeñee.

It does not grow worse,
— it doesn't grow
better;

What disease has he?—
What is his disease?
— What ails him?

The physician himself
doesn't know yet; —
until it develops.*)—
It is not known what
will come of it.

I hope it will not be so
bad.

I hope he will recover.
— Perhaps he will
soon get well.

I don't know if he will
get over it. — Who
knows if he will get
well.

He is well along in
years already.

Well, he needs good
nursing. — Give him
the best care possible.

We nurse him faith-
fully.—We tend him
as best we can.

Yes, tend him as well

Nehorší se to, — ne-
lepší se to.

Co má za nemoc? Ja-
kou má nemoc? —
Nač stůně?
Lékař sám neví ještě;
— až jak se to uká-
že. — Neví se co z
toho bude.

Deufám že nebude to
tak zlé.

Doufám že z toho vy-
jde. — Snad se brzo
uzdraví.

Nevím vyjde-li z toho.
— Kdož ví jestli z
toho vyjde.

Už je v letech.

Inu, potřebuje dobré
ošetření.—Dejte mu
všemožnou péči.

Ošetřujeme ho pilně.
— Sloužíme mu co
nejlíp můžeme.

Ano, služte mu co

něhorshee sě tō — ne-
lepshee sě tō.

tsō má ză němots? —
yăkou má němots? —
năch stvoňe?
lékarsh sám něvee yesh-
ťe; — ďash yăk sě tō
ukáže; — něvee sě tsō
stōhō břdě

dořfám že nebřdě tō
tak zlé.

dořfám že stōhō veedě.
— snăd sě b'rzō ū-
zdrávee.

něveem veeděli stōhō. —
gdōž vee yestli stōhō
veedě.

ušh yě vletěkh.

inu, potrshěbūyě dōbré
oshětrshěñi.—deytě mū
fshěmožnoū péchi.

ošhětrshěyěmě hō pil-
ně.—sloužeeemě mū tsō
neyleep moožemě.

ānō, slůšhtě mu tsō

*) **Až jak se to ukáže**, — until it shows itself or develops, — is in fact an elliptical sentence, meaning: “*We must wait*, until it develops”. Sentences of this character are frequently used; for instance:

Až jak bude, “until (we see) how it will be;” — “(it depends upon) how it will be”.

Až jak to dopadne, “until (we see) how it will come out”; -- (it depends upon) how it will come out”.

as you can. — Nurse him in every possible manner.

We are with him day and night.

Has the doctor prescribed for him? — Yes, he wrote a prescription.

Have you sent to the drug-store? — We sent there right away. — The druggist prepared it immediately.

The patient takes his medicine regularly.

I hope to God that he will get well.

I hope that he will soon be on his legs.

I fear that he will soon be "on the board" (i. e. dead).

I am afraid that nothing will help him.

I fear that he will die.

Is it true that Mr. Alesh died?

I am sorry to say it is true.

When did he die? — He died at midnight. — He died toward morning.

možná. — Obslužte ho se vším.

Jsme u něj ve dne v noci.

Předepsal mu doktor? — Ano, napsal recept.

Poslali jste do lékárny? — Poslali jsme tam hned. — Lékárník to připravil okamžitě.

Pacient užívá pravidelně.

Dá bůh že se pozdraví.

Doúfám že bude brzo na nohou.

Bojím se že bude brzo na prkně.

Bojím se že nic mu nepomůže*).

Obávám se že umře.

Je to pravda, že pan Aleš umřel?

Bohužel, je to pravda.

Kdy zemřel? — Skonal o půlnoci. — Skonal k ránu.

možná. — obslužtě hō sě fsheem.

smě ū ūney vě dně vnotsi.

prshěděpsál mū dōktor? — ďnō, nápsál ret-sept.

pōslāli stě dō lékárny? — pōslāli smě tām hněd. — lékárñík tō prshiprāvil ōkámžitě.

pātsient ūžeevá pravidelně.

dá booh že sě pozdrávee.

doúfám že būdě b'rzō nā nōhoř.

boyeem sě že būdě b'rzō nā p'rkñe.

boyeem sě že ūits mū ně pōmoože:

obávám se že ūmrshě.

yě tō prāvdā že pān A-lesh ūmrshell?

bōhūžel, yě tō prāvdā!

gdy zemrshell? — skonāl ō poolnotsi. — skonāl kránū.

*) See Note 1 on page 36, about double negation.

What did he die of? —
Of inflammation of
the lungs.

Very few get over that,
— at his age.

Indeed very few! —
There was no help for
him. — The doctor
said so right off.

He said: There is no
help for him; — the
disease has been neg-
lected.

He neglected it. — He
sent for the doctor
too late.

He should have sent for
the doctor sooner. —
When the doctor
came; it was too late.

A disease must not be
neglected.

Old Mrs. Hoshek died
this morning.

She died suddenly, —
of heart disease.

She was taken sick and
in half an hour it was
all over with her.

That was a sudden
death.

It is better than to suf-
fer long.

Preserve us from long
suffering!

Nač umřel? — Na zapá-
lení plic.

Z toho málo kdo vy-
jde, v jeho věku.

Ba málo kdo! — Nebylo
mu žádné pomoci. —
Doktor povídal to
hněd.

Pravil: není mu po-
moci; — nemoc je za-
nedbána.

Zanedbal to. — Poslal
pro doktora pozdě.

Měl poslati pro dokto-
ra dříve. — Když dok-
tor přišel, bylo poz-
dě.

Nemoc nesmí se zane-
dbati.

Stará paní Hošková
skonala dnes ráno.

Zemřela náhle, — na
srdeční vadu.

Přišlo jí zle a za půl
hodiny bylo po ní.

To byla náhlá smrt.

Je to lepší než trápit
se dlouho.

Jen ne dlouhé trápe-
ní!

náč umrshell? — ná
zápaleñi plits.

stohd málđ gdđ veedě,
— vyhđ vyékü.

Bđ málđ gdđ! — nebillđ.
mđ žádné pomotsi. —
dđctor pđveedđl tđ
hněd.

prävil : neyñi mđ po-
motsi; — némots yě
zánedbánă.

zánedbäl tđ. — pđsläl
pro doctörä pozđe.

myell pđslät pro doctör-
rä drsheevč. — gdyž
doctör prshishell, billđ
pozđe.

némots něsmee sč zá-
nedbät.

stárá păñi hoshkóvá
skonälă dness ránđ.

zemrshellă náhlě, — ná
s'rdzechñee vădū.

prshishlđ yee zlě a zá
pool hod'iny billo pđ
ñi.

tđ billă náhlá sm'rt.

yě tđ lepshee nesh trá-
pit sě dložhđ.

yen ně dložhé trápěñi.

Chronic consumption
is a slow disease; —
acute consumption
has a quick run.

Drowning is a cruel
death; — so is strang-
ling. — Hanging is an
easy death, if the neck
is broken.

A. took his own life. —
he committed suicide
He drowned himself; —
he hanged himself. —
he poisoned himself;
— he shot himself; —
he cut his throat; —
he thrust a knife into
his breast.

And why did he do it?
— Most likely he was
insane.

Chronické souchotiny
jsou zdlouhavá ne-
moc; — akutní soucho-
tě mají rychlý běh.
Utopení je těžká smrt;
udušení taky. — O-
běšení je lehká
smrt, zlomí-li se
vaz.

A. vzal si život; — spá-
chal samovraždu.
Utopil se; — oběsil se;
otrávil se; — zastře-
lil se; — podřezal si
krk; — vrazil si nůž
do prsou.

A proč to udělal? —
Nejspíš byl šílený.

khronitské soúkhoťiny
soúzdloužhává němots;
— ákútňee soúkhoťe
máyee rykhlee byěh.
útřepeniyěťeshkásm'rt;
— údúshěňi tāke. —
obyeshěňi yě lěhká
sm'rt, zlomee-li sě
věz.

A. vzál si život; — spá-
khál sámovraždú.
útropil sě; — óbyěsil sě;
— otrávil sě; — pod-
rshězál si k'rk; —
vrázil si noož dō p'rá-
soú.

á proch tō úd'elá! —
neyspeesh bill sheelé-
nee.

VOCABULARY.

Nemocný, m. *němotsnee* } the male
pacient, m. *pätsiěnt* } patient;
nemocná, f. *němotsná* } the female
pacientka, f. *pätsiěntkă* } patient;
lékárna, f. *lékárna* } the drug store,
apatyka, f. *ápätička* } the pharmacy;
lékárník, m. *lékárničk*, } the druggist
apatykář, m. *ápätičársh* } the apothecary;
horkost, f. *horkost*, the fever heat;
mrázení, n. *mrázěňi*, the chill
předpis, m. *prshědpis* } the prescrip-
recept, m. *retsept* } tion, receipt,
the recipe.
předepsati, *prshěděpsát*, to prescribe

připraviti, *prshiprěvit*, to prepare;
péče, f. *péčě*, the care
pečovati (o), *pěchovāt*, to care (for);
ošetření, n. *oshětrshěňi*, the nursing
ošetřovati, *oshětrshěvāt*, to nurse,
to tend;
sloužiti, *sloužit* } to serve, to wait
obsloužiti, *obsložit* } on, to tend:
potřebovati, *potrshěběvāt*, to want,
to nee l;
báti se, *bát sě*, to fear
obávati se, *obávāt sě*, to apprehend
trápliti se, *trápit sě*, to suffer

trápení, n. *trápění*, the suffering;
 zanedbati, *zánedbāt*, to neglect
 zanedbán, a, e neglected
 měnit se, *myěnít sě*, to change
 nemění se, *nemyěníe sě*, it does not
 change;
 horšiti se, *horshit sě*, to grow worse
 nehorší se, *nehorshee sě*, it does not
 grow worse;
 ukázati, *úkázat*, to show
 ukáže se, *úkážě sě*, it will show it-
 self;

vyjíti z toho, *re-yeet stōhō*, to come
 out of it;
 nebezpečí, n. *něbespěchee*, the danger
 nebezpečný, á, é *něbespěchnee*, dan-
 gerous
 okamžik, m. *okámnžik*, the moment
 málo kdo, *málō gdō*, very few people
 behužel, *bōhūžell*, alas; I am sorry
 to say;
 vaz, m. *văz*, the back of the head;
 the neck:

Drugs and medicines.

LÉČIVA a LÉKY.

Míra, f. *meeră*, the measure
 váha, f. *váhă*, the weight
 měřiti, *myérshít*, to measure
 vážiti, *vážit*, to weigh
 míchatí, *meekhăt*, to mix
 prosíti, *proseet* } to garble
 přebrati, *prshěbrát* } to garble
 libra, f. *libră*, a pound
 unce, f. *úntsě*, an ounce
 lot, m. (about half an ounce);
 kvintlík, m. *quintleek*, (about $\frac{1}{5}$ of
 an ounce);
 grán, m. a grain
 lžíce, f. *lžeetsě* or *žeetsě*, a spoon, a
 spoonful;

Prášek, m. *práshek*, a powder
 " na zuby, p. *nă zuby*, tooth-p.;
 " šumivý, p. *shümivee*, Seidlitz-
 powder;
 " perský, Persian powder;

lžíčka, f. *lžeechkă* or *žeechkă*, a small
 spoon; a small spoonful;
 kávová lžíčka, f. a coffee or tea
 spoonful;
 čajový šálek, m. *chayovee shálek*, a
 tea-cup;
 sklenice, f. *skleñitsě*, a glass
 vinná sklenice, f. *wine-glass*
 hrstka, f. *h'rstkă* } a hand
 přehoušle, f. *prshěhoúshlě* } ful
 špetka, f. *shpetkă*, a pinch
 kapka, f. *kăpkă*, a drop
 kapky, pl. *kăpky*, drops
 pět kapek, *pyět kăpek*, five drops; etc.
 dávka, f. *dáfkă*, a dose.

prášky, pl. *práshky*, powders
 pilulka, f. *pillulkă*, a pill
 pilulky, pl. pills
 kašička, f. *kăshichkă*, a poultice
 těstičko, n. *těstichkă*, a paste

mazání, n. *mázáni*, an ointment
mast, f. *mášt*, salve
lektvar, m. confection
tinktura, f. *tinctoorá*, tincture
flastr, m. *flást* } *r* } plaster
náplast, m. *náplást* }
fizikátor, m. vesicator
olej, m. *olěy*, oil
extrakt, m. extract
výstřelek, m. *veestrshělek*, spirit
semeno, n. *seměnō* } seed
semínko, n. *seemeenkō* }
list, m. *list*, leaf
listí, n. *list'ee*, leaves
kořen, m. *korshěn*, root
kořínek, m. *korshéenek*, little root
bobule, f. *bobūlě*, bulb
kůra, f. *koorá*, bark, peel
šťáva, f. *shťávă*, juice
bylina, f. *billină*, herb
lékařská bylina, *lékarshská b.*, medicinal herb;
odvar, m. decoction
nálev, m. *nálef* } infusion
výmok, m. *veemok*

Aloe, n. *ăloě*, aloes
anjelika, f. *ănyellică*, angelica
anýz, m. *ăneez*, anise
arabská guma, f. gum arabic
arnika, f. arnica
Baldrian (odolen, kozlík), m. water-avens;
balšám, **balzám**, m. *bălshám*, *bălzám*, balsam
bavlna, f. *băv ălnă*, cotton

roztok, m. *rostōk*, solution
dávidlo, n. emetic
počistovadlo, n. *pochistovădlō*, purgative
lehký, á, é *lěhkee*, light soft, easy
prudký, á, é *průdkee*, drastic
projímový, á, é *proyeemăvee*, laxative
sílicí, *seelitsee*, tonic
silivka, f. *silifkă*, a tonic
pro spaní, *pro spăñi*, soporific
narkotický, *narkotitskee* }
omamující, *omămăyeetsee* } narcotic
močohnavý, *mochđhnăvee*, diuretic
pijavka, f. *piyáfkă*, a leech
pijavky, pl. *piyáfky*, leeches
baňka, f. cupping-glass
příjemný, á, é *prshee-yemnee*, agreeable, pleasant;
odperný, á, é *odpornee* }
ošklivý, á, é *oshklivee* }
ošklivost, f. *oshklivost*, nausea
kyselina, *kissellină*, acid
kysličník, *kisslichňeek*, oxide
síran, m. *seerăn*, sulphate.

bedrník, m. *bed ŋrňik*, pimpernel
bezový květ, m. *bězovee kvyet*, elder flowers;
běloba, f. *byělobă*, white lead;
bílkovina, f. *beelkđvînă*, albumen
blín, m. *bleen*, henbane
bobko-třešně, f. cherry-laurcl
bolehlav, m. *bolěhlăv*, hemlock
boží tráva (řecké seno), fenugreek seed

brambořík (svinský chleba, svin-
ský ořech), sow-bread;
broskvové lístí, n. peach-leaves;
brutnák obecný, m. borage
bříza, f. *brsheeră*, birch, (*betula alba*);
Celík, m. *tsellik*, golden-rod
cesmina (lesní kopřiva), f. holly
cink, m. *tsink*, zink
citron, m. *tsitron*, lemon
citronová kůra, f. lemon juice
cukr, m. *tsük'er*, sugar
cukr hroznový, glucose
cukr mléčný, ts. *mléchnee*, sugar of
milk;
cukr olověný, ts. *olovyenee*, sugar of
lead.
Dávičný kámen, m. *dávichnee ká-
men*, tartar emetic;
dehet, m. *děhět*, tar
divizna, f. *d'iviznă*, mullein
debrá mysl, f. see **marjánka**;
dračí krev, f. *drächee hrěf*, dragon's
blood;
draslík, m. (kalium, n.), *drässleek*,
potassium
draslo, n. see **salajka**;
dřevo myší, n. *drshěvđ mishee*, bit-
ter sweet
dřevo sladké, liquorice
dřín, m. *drsheen*, dogwood
dřistal, m. barberry
drnavec, m. *dernävets*, wall-pellitory
droždí, see **kvasnice**;
dubinky, pl. nutgall, galls;

durman, m (panenské jablko pich-
lavé), stramonium seed;
dusík, m. *düsseek*, nitrogen
dusičnan olovnatý, nitrate of lead.
Ether, m éter, ether
euforbiump, *eúforbiūm*, euforbia.
Feníkl, m. fennel
fialka, f. *fiälkă*, violet
fík, m *feek*, fig
fosfor, m phosphorus.
Gdoulové semeno, n. quince seed;
granátové jablko, n. pomegranate
guma arabská, f. gum arabic
 “ **elastická**, f. gum elastic
Heřmánek, m. *hershmánek*, chamo-
mile
hořčice, f. *horchitsě*, mustard
hořec, m. *horshets*, gentian
houba, f. *houbă*, sponge
houby, pl. mushrooms,
hřebíček, m. *rshěbeeček*, cloves
hulevník, m. hedge-mustard
Chinin, m. *khinin*, quinine
china, f. } *cinchona*, Pe-
chinník pravý, m. } ruvian bark;
chlorové vápno, n. *khlorđvě vápnđ*,
chloride of lime;
chmel, m. *khmell*, hops.
Ibiš (proskurník), m. *ibish*, marsh-
mellow
Jalovec, m. *yállověts*, juniper
jaterník, m. *yáterňík*, liverwort

jed, <i>yěd</i> ,	<i>yěd</i> ,	poison
utrejch, <i>ütreykh</i>		
jelení roh, <i>yelleñee rōh</i> ,	hartshorn	
“ lůj, <i>y. looy</i> ,	hart's tallow	
jeřáb, m. <i>yersháb</i> ,	mountain ash;	
jetelice, f. (janovec, m.)	broom tops	
jód, m. <i>yód</i> ,	iodine.	
Kafr , m. <i>kăfír</i> ,	camphor	
kalamín, m	calamine	
kalanka, f.	pinkroot	
kameneč, m. <i>kămeněts</i> ,	alum	
kampeška, f. <i>kămpeshkă</i> ,	logwood	
kastoreum, n.	castor	
kaštan, m. <i>kăshťán</i> ,	horse-chestnut;	
kaučuk, m.	India rubber;	
klejt, (kysličník olevnatý) m.	<i>kleyt</i> ,	
	oxide of lead;	
klejicha bulvatá,	butterfly-weed	
kmín, m. <i>kmeen</i> ,	caraway seed;	
kmín vodní, k. <i>vcdñee</i> ,	water-hem-	
	lock (fine-leaved);	
konítrud, m.	hedge-hyssop	
konopí, n. <i>kđnopee</i> ,	hemp	
konopí indické, k. <i>inditské</i> ,	Indian	
	hemp;	
konopný extract, m.	extract of hemp	
kopytník tupolistý, m.	<i>asarum Eu-</i>	
	<i>ropaeum</i> ;	
kopr, m. <i>kopřr</i> ,	dill	
kořalka, f.	see pálenka;	
korek, m.	cork	
kořen hadí, m. <i>korshén hăd'ee</i> ,	bistort	
“ maliny,	blackberry root;	
“ omanu,	elicampane	
“ omějový,	aconite root;	
kosatec , m. <i>kossătets</i> ,	blue flag, iris	
	<i>versicolor</i> ;	
kozinec , m. <i>kozinets</i> ,	tragacanth	
kozlík odolen, m.	valerian	
kožokvět, m.	queen's root;	
křen, m. <i>krshěn</i> ,	horse-radish	
krevnice, f. <i>krěvñitsě</i> ,	bloodroot	
křída, f. <i>krshedă</i> ,	chalk	
kroupy, pl. <i>krořpy</i> ,	pearl barley;	
krtičník, m. <i>křtichñeek</i> ,	figwort	
krušinka, <i>krushinkă</i> ,	dyer's weed,	
	genista;	
krušiček , (pampalík), m.	marigold	
kůra dubová, f. <i>kooră dăbăvă</i> ,	black-	
	oak bark;	
“ divoké třešně,	wild cherry bark	
“ vrbová, k. <i>vřbăvă</i> ,	willow bark;	
“ jilmová, k. <i>yilmová</i> .	elm bark;	
“ červené jilmy,	slipperyelm bark	
kvasnice , pl. <i>kvăssñitsě</i> ,	yeast	
květ , m. <i>kwyět</i> ,	flowers	
květel , f. <i>kwyětell</i> ,	common toad flax	
kyprej , m. <i>kiprey</i> ,	loosestrife	
kyslík , m. <i>kissleek</i> ,	oxygen	
kyselina , f. <i>kisselină</i> ,	acid	
“ citronová,	citric acid	
“ karbolová,	carbolic acid;	
“ sanytrová,	nitric acid;	
“ solná,	muriatic acid;	
“ vínová,	tartaric acid.	
Lep na ptáky , m.	bird-lime	
lentyšek , m.	mastic	
levandule , f.	lavender	
líh , m. <i>leeh</i> ,	alcohol	
lilek červený , see dřevo myší ;		
limonka , f.	marsh rosemary;	

listí bobkové, n. laurel leaves;
 lomihnát, m. common groundsel;
 lopuch, (hořký kořen) m. burdock
 lůj, m. *looy*, tallow;
 " jelení, hart's tallow;
 " skopový, mutton suet
 lžičník, m. *lžichník*, common scur-
 vy-grass;
 lék proti hlistám, vermifuge.

Mák, m. poppy-seed
 mandle hořké, pl. *măndlă horshké*,
 bitter almonds;
 " sladké, sweet almonds;
 mařena, f. *mărshenă*, madder
 marjánka, f. *măryánkă*, common
 marjoram;
 máta, (marulka) f. catnip
 máta peprná, f. peppermint
 máta kadeřavá, pennyroyal
 med, m. honey
 měď, f. *myěd*, copper
 medokvět, m. *mědōkwyět*, marsh
 trefoil, buckbean;
 medvědice obecná, *medvyěditsě o-
 betsňá*, bearberry leaves;
 mejlí, n. (mišpule, f.) *meylee*, mistle-
 toe
 melasa, f. molasses
 mléko, n. milk
 mlékový punč, milk-punch toddy;
 morušová šťáva, mulberry juice;
 mouka bílá, f- *moukă beelá*, wheat
 flour;
 " černá, m. *cherná*, rye flour;
 " ovesná, m. *ověssná*, oatmeal;

mrkev, f. *m ērkēf*, carrot seed;
 mydlo, n. *meedlō*, soap
 " mazavé, soft soap
 " amygdalinové, amygdaline
 soap;
 " mandlové, almond oil soap;
 myrra, f. myrrh
 Naháč, m. see ocún;
 námel, m. ergot
 náprstník červený, m. foxglove
 narcis kadeřavý, m. daffodil
 nátržník, m. tormentil
 netík, m. see ženský vlas;
 netýkalka, f. touch-me-not
 nové koření, n, *nové korshění*, all-
 spice;
 nickamínek, see skalice;
 nátrium, see sodík.
 Ocet, m. *otset*, vinegar
 ocún, m *otsoon*, colchicum seed;
 odolen, m. valerian
 olej, m. *đley*, oil
 " bavlněný, cotton-seed oil
 " z bergamotek; oil of bergamot
 " citronový, lemon oil
 " dymianový, oil of thyme, oil of
 origanum;
 " hořčičný, oil of mustard
 " heřmánkový, chamomile oil
 " jantarový, oil of amber
 " kafrový, camphor oil
 " kokosový, cocoa-nut oil
 " koprový, oil of dill
 " krotonový, croton oil
 " lněný, flaxseed oil

olej mandlový, almond oil
 " olivový, } olive oil
 " dřevěný }
 " brabancový
 " ricinový, castor oil
 " růžový, oil of roses
 " sesamový, benne oil
 " skořicový, cinnamon oil
 " terpentinový, oil of turpentine
 " z volské nohy, neats-foot oil
 olovo, n. *olovă*, lead
 ořech, m. *oršek*, nut
 " muškátový, nutmeg
 orlíček, m. *orleecek*, columbine
 osládič, m. *oslád'ich*, male fern
 ožanka, f. (gamandr), germander.

Pálenka obyčejná, f. whiskey
 " vinná (francouzská), brandy
 pampeliška (smetanka), f. dandelion
 paprika, f. red pepper, cayenne p.
 pekelný kamínek, m. lapis infer-
 nalis;
 pelynek, m. wormwood
 peltrám, m. pellitory
 pepř, m. *pěprš*, black pepper
 petružel, f. parsley-root
 pijavky, pl. f. *piyáfkы*, leeches
 pížmo, n. *peežmă*, musk
 plavuň, f. lycopodium
 plícičník, m. *plitsník*, Iceland moss;
 ploštičník, m. black snakeroot, ci-
 micifuga;
 pomoranč, m. *pomoráňch*, orange
 pomorančový květ, orange flowers;
 pomorančová kůra, orange peel;

popel z kostí, m. *popell skost'i*, bone
 ash;
 posed, m. white bryony
 potaš (draslo), see salajka;
 potměchuť, f. } bittersweet
 psí víno červené, n. }
 protěž, f. cudweed, life-everlasting;
 pryskyřice, f. *pryskyrshitsě*, resin,
 rosin;
 pryskyrky, see španělské mouchy;
 psí rmen, m. mayweed
 pukavec (vlčí mák), m. *pukavets*,
 red-poppy petals;
 puškvorec, m. *púshkworets*, sweet
 flag;

 Rauta, f. *răútă*, rue
 rebarbora, f. *rebarbora*, rhubarb
 rozinky, pi. f. raisins
 rozmarina, f. rosemary
 rozrazil, m. speedwell
 rtuť, f. *rtútă*, mercury
 rulík zlomocný, m. deadly night-
 shade, belladonna root;
 rum myrtový, m. bay-rum
 rumělka, f. cinnabar
 růže stolistá, f. hundred-leaved
 rose.

 Sadec, m. *sădets*, eupatorium, thor-
 oughwort;
 sádlo, n. lard
 salajka, f. *sălăykă*, potash
 salmiak, m. sal ammoniac
 sanytr, m. *sănyt'er*, saltpeter
 semeno lněné, n. flaxseed, linseed;
 " tykvové, pumpkin seed;

semínko citvárové, European worm-seed;
 senes, m. purging cassia;
 senesové lístí, n. senna leaves
 seno řecké, n. *senō rshētské*, fenn-greek;
 sesamové lístí, n. benne leaf
 síra, f. *seerā*, sulphur, brimstone;
 siran, f. *seerān*, sulphate
 síran draselnatý, sulphate of potash
 síran měďnatý, sulphate of copper;
 sirob, m. sirup
 skalice bílá, f. *skällitsē beelá*, white vitriol;
 skila, f. squile
 skořice, f. *skorshitsē*, cinnamon
 “ bílá, canella
 sladká vrbka, f. bittersweet
 slíz, m. *sleez*, common mallow
 smola, f. pitch
 sodík, m. (natrium), n. sodium
 soda suchá, f. (suchý nátron, ky-sličník sodnatý), dry soda, protoxide of sodium;
 soda žíravá, (nátron žíravý, hydrát sodnatý), caustic soda, hydrate of soda;
 sporýš, m. see železník;
 starček, m. see lomihnát;
 sůl kuchynská, f. *sool k.*, common salt;
 “ hořká, (Glauberova), Glauber's salt, Epsom salt;
 “ morská, bay salt;
 “ křištálová, nitrate salt;
 suřík, m. red oxide of lead;
 svlačec, m. *svlăchets*, scammony.

Šafrán, m. *shăfrán*, saffron
 šalvěj, m. *shălvyčy*, sage
 šípek, m. *sheepek*, dog-rose, hip;
 šišák, m. *shishák*, scullcap
 škrob, m. *shkrob*, starch
 škrobovina americká, f. arrow-root
 škumpa jedovatá, f. poison-oak
 španělské mouchy, pl. f. Spanish flies, cantharides;
 špargl, m. *shpargl*, asparagus
 šťovík, m. *shťovik*, sorrel
 švestky, pl. f. *shwěstky*, prunes
 Tabák, m. *tăbák*, tobacco
 tavola, f. hardhack
 terpentýn, m. *terpenteen*, turpentine
 tinktura arniková, f. tincture of arnica;
 tis, m. common European yew tree;
 tojest, f. dog's-bane
 tolíje, f. *tolliyč*, parnassia palustris;
 tomel virginský, persimmon
 trán jaterní, m. cod-liver oil;
 trnka, f. *tĕrnkă*, wild plumtree;
 trojpecka, f. *troypetskă*, fever root
 třemdava, f. *dictamnus*, bastard dittany;
 třezalka, f. St. John's wort;
 tuk velrybí, m. spermaceti
 turan, m. fleabane, erigeron.
 Uhel dřevěný, m. charcoal
 uhel zvířecí, animal charcoal; bone-black;
 uhlík, m. *uhleek*, carbon
 uhličitan hořečnatý, m. carbonate of magnesia;

uhličitan sodnatý, carbonate of soda
užanka, f. hound's tongue.

Vanilka, f. vanilla
vápno, n. lime; quicklime;
vápno chlorové, chloride of lime;
vápno karbolové, carbolate of lime;
vavřín, m. laurel tree;
vejce, n. *veytsě*, egg
bílek, m. *beelek*, the white
žloutek, m. *žložtek*, the yelk
vinný kámen, m. cream of tartar;
víno bílé, n. *veenđ beelé*, white wine
“ **červené**, v. *chervěné*, red wine,
virginská hadovka, f. Virginia
snakeroot
vítod, m. *veetod*, bitter polygala;
vlaščovičník, m. *vlăščowichník*, ce-
landine
voda čistá, f. *vđdă chisťa*, pure water
voda minerální, mineral water
koupel, f. *koüpeli* } bath
lázeň, f. *lázeň* } bath
vodička, f. *vodíčkă*, wash, lotion;
vodička na oči, v. *nă ochi*, eye-wash
vosk bílý, m. white wax
vosk žlutý, yellow wax

vraní oko, n. *vrăñee okđ*, paris quad
rifolia;

vrátič, m. *vráťich*, tansy
výstřelek, m. *veestrshĕllek*, spirit
“ **pižmový**, spirit of musk;
“ **terpentinový**, spirit of
turpentine;
vyzí klí, n. *vizee klee*, isinglass.

Zázvor, m. ginger
zázvor divoký, wild ginger
zeměžluč, f. *zemyěžlăch*, common
centaury;
zerav, m. *zerăf*, arbor vitae;
zimostráz, m. box plant;
zmíjovec, m. *zmeeyđvets*, skunk cab-
bage;

žábník, m. *žábňik*, water-plantain
žebříček, m. *žebrsheeček*, yarrow
železnice lysá, s. snake-head, turtle-
head;
železník, m. *železňik*, vervain
ženský vlas, m. maidenhair
žluč volská, f. *žlăch volskă*, ox-gall
žlutidlo, n. turmeric
žlutodřev, m. prickly-ash.

At home.

DOMA.

I like domestic com-
fort.

We have a comfortable
home on tenth street.

We have a hall, five
rooms and a kitchen

**Miluju domácí poho-
dlí.**

**Máme pohodlný domov
na desáté ulici.**

**Máme síň, pět pokojů
a kuchyň dole, a**

*millüyü domátsce po-
hodlee.*

*mámě pohodlnee dō-
mof nă děsáté ũlitsi.*

*mámě seeň, pyčt pokđ-
yoo a kükhiň dōlě,*

down stairs, and four bedrooms upstairs.	čtyry ložnice nahore.	ă <i>shtiri ložnitsě náhorshě.</i>
The stairs have a railing.	Schody mají zábradlí.	<i>skhōdy măyee zábradlee.</i>
We have new furniture,—tables, chairs, sofas and beds.	Máme nový nábytek,—stoly, židle, pohovky a postelet.	mámě <i>novee nábytek, — stolly, židlě, pohofky a postellě.</i>
The writing-desk and library stand in the front room.	Psací stůl a knihovna stojí v přední světnici.	<i>psátsee stool a kñihovnă stoyee f pr shěd ñee swyětñitsi.</i>
The windows have both shutters and curtains.	Okna mají okenice i záslonky.	<i>oknă măyee okèñitse e záslonyy.</i>
On the walls there are pictures in frames.	Na stěnách jsou obrazy v rámech.	<i>nă steňakh soř obrázky vrámech.</i>
Our clothes-press is very handy.	Naše šatnice je tuze příručná.	<i>năshě shatñitsě yě toozě prsheerúchná.</i>
The fuel we keep down cellar. — Hard and soft water is in the house.	Palivo máme ve sklepě. — Tvrdá i měkká voda je v domě.	<i>pdlivõ mámě vě sklepy. — tv̄rdá e myéká vodă yě vdömy.</i>
We have a good stove and the chimney does not smoke.	Máme dobré kamna a komín nekouří.	<i>mámě dobré kămnă a komeen někoúrshee.</i>
It is time to eat —The meal is ready.	Je čas k jídlu. — Jídlo je hotovo.	<i>yě chăss k-yeedlū. — yeedlō yě hotdōvō.</i>
The table is spread; — everything is on the table: dishes, plates, forks, knives.	Je prostřeno; — všecko je na stole: mísy, talíře, vidličky, nože.	<i>yě prostrshěnō. — fshětsko yě nă stolě: mee-sy, tăleershě, vidlichky, nože.</i>
Come and eat; — sit down by the table.	Pojďte jístl; — sedněte ke stolu.	<i>pod'tě yeest; — sedñetě kě stollū.</i>
Hand (thou) me that chair. — Hand (you) me the soup; I shall deal it out.	Podej mi tu sesli. — Podejte mi polívkou; já rozdám.	<i>poděytě me tū sessli. — poděytě me poleefkū; já rözdám.</i>

Is it not salt enough? —

— Here is the salt;
take some more salt.

The meat is cut; — I
shall cut up the roast
into pieces.

Help yourself; — here
is roast goose,—here
is fried chicken.

Take a piece of bread.

Do you eat pastry? —
Sometimes.

Do you want a cup of
coffee? — or a cup of
tea?

Is the coffee sweet e-
nough? — Here is su-
gar.

After a meal a cigar
tastes well.

Will you smoke? — Here
are cigars; light one;

Hand me the matches.

— There in the cor-
ner is a spittoon.

It is growing dark. —
It is dark. — Make a
light.

Here is a candle-stick
and a candle. — Light
the lamp; — light the
gas.

Není dost slaná? — Zde
je sůl; přisolte si.

Maso je nakrájeno; —
rozdělím pečení na
perce.

Poslužte si; — zde je
pečená husa, — zde
smažené kuře.

Vemte si kousek chle-
ba.

Jite pečivo? — Někdy.

Chcete šálek kávy? —
anebo šálek čaje?

Je káva dost sladká? —
Zde je cukr.

Po jídle chutná dou-
ník.

Budete kouřiti? — Tu
jsou cigara; zapalte
si.

Podejte mi sirkы. —
Tam v koutě je pli-
vátko.

Stmívá se. — Je tma. —
Udělejte světlo.

Zde je svícen a svíčka.
— Rozžete lampu; —
rozžete plyn.

neyňi dost släná? — zdě
yě sool; prshisolltě si.

mässö yě näkráyěnö; —
rozdeleem pěcheňi nă
portsě.

poslůshtě si; — zdě yě
pěchěná hüssä, — zdě
smäžené kürshě.

vemtě si koūsek khlěbă.

yeetě pěchivo? ñegdy.

khtsětě shálek kávy? —
anebř shálek chăy?

yě kávă dost slădká? —
zdě yě tsük^{er}.

př yeedlě khütná dou-
ník.

břdětě koürshit? — tř
soū tsigaru; zăpăltě
si.

poděytě me scerky. —
tăm fkoūťe yě pli-
vátkö.

stmeevá sč. — yě tmă. —
uđeleytě svoyětlo.

zdě yě sweetsěn ñ sweech-
kă. — rožetě lămpū;
— rožetě plyn.

It is growing chilly, isn't it? — Make a fire.	Dělá se chladno, je-li pravda? — Zatopte.	dělá se khlădno, yelli prăvdă? — zătoptě.
There is a fire already in the stove.	Už je oheň v kamnech.	ušh yě ohěñ fkămněkh.
It is late; — let us go to sleep.	Je pozdě; — pojďme spát.	yě pozd'e; — pod'me spát.
It is time to go to bed. Is the bed made? — The beds are made for all.	Je čas jít do postele. Je ustláno? — Je ustláno pro všechny.	yě chăss yeet dō postellě. yě ūstlánō? — yě ūstlánō pro fshěkhny
I shall lie down on the sofa. — Do as you please.	Já si lehnu na sofa. — Jak chcete.	yá si lehnū nă sofă. — yăk khtsětě.
Undress; — take off your clothes; — pull off your boots; here is the boot-jack.	Odstrojte se; — svlékňete se; — zujte se, — tu Je zouvák.	odstroytě sě; — svlékňete sě; — zůytě sě; — tū yě zoúvák.
Sleep well. — Good night!	Spěte dobrě. — Dobrou noc!	spyětě dōbrshě. — dōbroū nots.
It is time to get up. — Our folks are up.	Je čas vstáti. — Naši jsou zhůru.	yě chăss fstát. — năshī soū zhoorū.
Wencel is still sleeping; — wake him up; or he will oversleep.	Václav posud spí; — zbud'te ho, sice zaspí.	váslăv posūd spee; — zbūd'tě ho, sitsě zăspee.
How did you sleep? — I slept well.	Jak jste spal? — Spal jsem dobrě.	yăk stě spăl? — spăl sem dōbrshě.
Didn't that noise wake you up? — I slept fast; nothing disturbed me.	Nebudil vás ten hluk? — Spal jsem tvrdě; — nic mě nebudile.	nebūd'il váss ten hlük? — spăl sem tv'rdě; nits myě nebūd'ilo.
I had a bad night; — I could not fall asleep very long; — I only fell asleep towards morning.	Já měl zlou noc; — nemohl jsem usnouti dlouho; — usnul jsem teprvé k ránu.	yá myěll zlou nots; — nemoh'ěl sem ūsnouť dloúhō; — ūsnūl sem tep'rvé kránū.

Henry says he never
shut his eyes (i.e. had
no sleep at all).

Jindřich povídá že ani
oka nezamhouřil.

*yindrshikh poveedá že
aňi oká nězamoř-
rshil.*

VOCABULARY.

Síň, f. *seenī*, the hall
schody, pl. m. *skhody*, the stairs
zábradlí, n. the railing
stěna, f. *stěnă*, the wall
šatnice, f. *shătnitsë*, the clothes
 press;
kumbál, m. *kumbál*, the closet
kout, m. *koút*, the corner
okenice, f. *okënítsë*, the blind
záslona, f. *záslonă*, the curtain
domáci, *dõmátssee*, domestic
nábytek, m. the furniture
stoly, m. *stöly* } tables
tabule, f. *täbülë* }
psací stůl, *psätsee stool*, the writing-
 desk
židle, f. *židlë* } the chair or chairs;
sesle, f. *sesslë* }

Prostříti, *prostrsheet*, to set the table;
mísa, f. *meesă*, the dish
talíř, m. *täleersh*, the plate
šálek, m. *shálek*, the cup
sůl, *sool*, the salt
slaný, á, é *slănee*, salt, salted;
přisoliti, *prshí-solit*, to put in some
 more salt;
sladký, á, é *slădkee*, sweet

pohovka, f. *pøhofkă* } the lounge
sofa, n. *sofă* }
obraz, m. *obrăz*, the picture
rám, m. the frame
Palivo, n. *pällivõ*, the fuel
kamna, pl. m. *kämna*, the stove
komín, m. *komeen*, the chimney
kouřiti, *kouřshit*, to smoke
oheň, m. *øheň*, the fire;
svícen, m. *sweetsën*, the candlestick
svíčka, f. *sweechkă*, the candle
plyn, m. the gas
rozžíti, *rožeet*, to make a light;
zapáliti, *zäpálit*, to light
sírka, f. *sirkă*, a match
cigaro, n. *tsigdro* } a cigar
doutník, m. *douťník* }
plivátko, n. *plivátko* } spittoon.
plivník, m. *plivník* }

nakrájeti, *näkráyet*, to cut in pieces;
rozděliti, *rozdeilit*, to divide
rozdati, *rozdăt*, to deal out;
pečivo, n. *pěchivo*, the pastry
pečený, á, é *pěchenee*, roasted
smažený, á, é *smăženee*, fried
husa, f. *hüssü*, goose
kuře, n. *kürshë*, chicken.

Stmívati se, *stmeevāt* sě, to grow dark;
odstrojiti se, *odstroyit* sě, to undress
zouti se, *zōüt* sě, to pull off one's boots;
zouvák, m. *zoüvák*, the boot-jack
ustlati, *üstlät*, to make the bed;
usnouti, *üsnouüt*, to fall asleep;
zaspati, *zäspät*, to oversleep
buditi, *büd'it*, to wake, to disturb;

zbuditi, *zbüd'it*, to wake up, to call;
vstáti, *fstát*, to get up;
zhůru, *zhoorü*, up;
nahore, *nähorshě*, up stairs;
dole, *döle*, down stairs;
tvrdě, *tv'rd'e* } fast
pevně, *pevñe* } fast
hluk, m. *hlük*, noise
je-li pravda? *yelh prävdä?* isn't it so?

Buying and selling.

KOUPĚ a PRODEJ.

How much is this? —
 What is the price of it? — How much does it cost?

What do you sell it for? —
 What do you want for it? — What do you ask for it? — How much shall I give you for it?

What is the price? —
 A dollar and ten cents. — A dollar and a quarter.

Two dollars and a half. — Two and a half dollars.

Five dollars sixty cents

It costs a little over six dollars.

Is it worth that much?

Zač je to? — Co to stojí? — Co to koštujе?

Po čem to prodáváte? — Co za to chcete? — Co za to žádáte? — Co vám za to dá m?

Jaká je cena? — Dollar deset centů. — Dollar a čtvrt.

Dva dollary a půl. — Půl třetího dollaru.

Pět dollarů šedesát centů.

Stojí to něco přes šest dollarů.

Stojí to za to?

zách yě tō? — tsō tō stoyee? — tsō tō kosh-tuyē?

pō chem tō prodáváte? — tsō zā tō khtsētē? — tsō zā tō žádátē? — tsō vám zā tō dám?

yáká yě tsenä? — dollär desset sentoo. — dollär a shtw'rt.

dwă dollăry a pool. — pool trshet'eehō dollă-ru.

pyět dollăroo shěděssát sentoo.

stoyee tō ñetsō prshěs shest dollăroo.

stoyee tō zā tō?

I think it is; — why should it not be?

It seems to me too much.— I think it is dear.

That is too much. — That is too dear.— I won't give so much.

That is too much;—will you take off something?

You must take off something.

I shall not take off anything.—I cannot take off anything.

We have a fixed price. — We sell at a fixed price.

It is cheap. - It is low-priced.

I shall get it cheaper elsewhere.

You will not get it cheaper anywhere.

I will try it. -- I don't want to haggle — I don't like to haggle over the price.

That is the lowest price; — it cannot be any cheaper.

Myslím že stojí;—proč by nestálo?

Mně se to zdá moc. — Myslím že je to drahé,

To je moc. — To je drahé. — Tolik nedám.

To je tuze mnoho; — slevíte něco?

Něco musíte sleviti.

Neslevím nic. — Nemohu sleviti nic.

Máme pevnou cenu. — Prodáváme za pevnou cenu.

Je to laciné. — Je to levné.

Dostanu to levněji jinde.

Nedostanete to levněji nikde.

Zkusím to. — Nechci smlouvat. — Nerad smlouvám.

To je nejnižší cena; — nemůže být lacinější.

misleem že stoyee; — proch be nestálo?

myě sě tø zdá mots. — misleem že yě tø dráhé.

tø yě mots. — tø yě dráhé. — tølik nědám.

tø yě toozě mnohø; — slěveetø ñetsø?

ñetsø müseetø slevit.

něslěveem ñits. — němøhü slevit ñits.

mámě pevnou tsenü. — prodávámě zř pevnou tsenü.

yě tø lätsiné. — yě tø levné.

dostanu tø levñey yindø.

nedøstánetø tø levñey ñigdø.

sküseem tø — někhtsi smlouvát. — nerad smlouvám.

tø yě neyñishee tsenä; — němoožе beet lätsi-ñeyshée.

What do you wish? —
What is your pleasure?

What can I do for you?
Have you satchels for
sale? — I want to buy
a satchel.

I would like to get a
nice traveling bag.

We have a stock of
them. — We have a
large choice.

Show me some. — I
wish to see them.

This is the best kind we
have. — They are
good.

This one is nice — This
will suit you.

How much is it? —
What is the price?

Four dollars and a half.
— That is the regular
price.

That is a little too much.
— don't you think so?

I do not think so.

I will give four dollars
for it. — Will you sell
it for that?

I cannot. — I cannot
take off anything.

The price is fixed.

Then I will not buy it.
— Do as you please;

Co si přejete? — Co
račte?

Čím mohu sloužiti?
Máte tašky na prodej?
— Chci koupit tašku.

Rád bych nějakou pěk-
nou kabelu.

Máme je na skladě. —
Máme velký výběr.

Ukažte mi některé. —
Podívám se na ně.

Tohle je nejlepší druh
co máme. — Ty jsou
dobré.

Tahle je pěkná. — Ta
se vám hodí.

Zač je? — Co stojí?

Čtyry dollary a půl. —
To je pravidelná ce-
na.

To je trochu moc; —
nemyslíte?

Nemyslím.

Dám za ni čtyry dolla-
ry. — Dáte ji za to?

Nemohu. — Nemohu
nic sleviti.

Cena je pevná.

Teda ji nekoupím. —
Jak vám libo. — Ne-

tsř si prshěyetě? — tsř
rächtě?

cheem mohū sloūžit?
mátě tăshky nă prodey?
— khtsi koūpit tăsh-
kū.

r d bikh n ako  py k-
no  k bell .
m m  y  n  skl d . —
m m  velkee veeby r.

 k ash  me  ekter . — po-
d e v m s  n   e
t hl  y  neylepshee dr h
ts  m m . — ty so 
d br .

t hl  y  py kn . — t 
s  v m ho  e.
z ch y ? — ts  stoy ?

s t r y doll r    pool. —
t  y  pr videln  ts -
n .

t  y  trokh  mots; —
n emisleet ?

n emisleem.

d  m z  n i s t r y doll -
ry — d t  ye z  t ?

nemoh . — nemoh  n its
s levit .

ts n  y  p vn .
t d  ye n ko peem. —
y k v m leeb . — ney-

—it is not dear at that price.	ní drahá za tu cenu.	ñí dráhá ză tă tsenă.
You will not get it elsewhere. — They have not got them elsewhere.	Jinde ji nedostanete. — Jinde je nemají.	yindě ye nědostanětě. — yindě yě nemáyee.
They are not to be had elsewhere. — Only I alone have them for sale.	Nejsou jinde k dostání. — Jenom já je mám na prodej.	neysoū yindě gdostáñi. — yenom yá yě mám nă prodey.
They have not got these goods on hand anywhere.	Nemají to zboží na skladě nikde.	nemáyee tă zbožee nū sklădě ñigdě.
I keep honest goods on hand.	Já držím poctivé zboží.	yá d^eržem potstivé zbožee.
Small profits, quick sales — that is my motto.	Malý zisk, rychlý prodej, — to je mé heslo.	mălee zisk, rykhlee prodey, — tă yě mé hesslo.
Small but frequent profits.	Malý výdělek, ale častý.	mălee veed'elek ălě chăsstee.
Have you some pocket-books?	Máte nějaké tobolky?	mátě ñáké tăbolky?
We have a large stock. — What kind do you wish, — expensive? — cheap?	Máme velkou zásobu. — Jaké chcete, — drahé? — laciné?	mámě velkoū zásobă. — yáké khtsětě, — dráhé? — lătsiné?
What is the price of these? — How much are they? — How do you sell them?	Zač jsou tyhle? — Po čem jsou? — Po čem je prodáváte?	zăch soū tyhlě? — po čem soū? — po čem yě prodávátě?
A dollar a piece. — They are good and lasting.	Po dollaru kus. — Jsou dobré a trvanlivé.	pō dollärū kūss. — soū dobré a t^ervănlivé.
Those are dearer; a dollar and a half.	Tam ty jsou dražší; po dollaru a půl.	tăm ty soū drăshee; pō dollarū a pool.

They are somewhat better.

I will take one;—wrap it up for me;

Here is the money; give me back.

There is fifty cents coming to you.—Here is half a dollar back.

I should like to buy a few tons of coal; but I have no money.

I will take it on credit; — will you trust me?

I do not trust anybody; — I sell only for cash.

I give no credit. — I want cash.

I want to have no bad debts.

I need money. — I am raking up money to buy goods;—I do not want to borrow.

For cash one buys cheap.

How is business?—So so;—tolerably good.

Have the goods a ready sale?—I have a good sale, but a small profit.

Jsou trochu lepší.

Vezmu si jednu;—zabalte mi ji.

Tu jsou peníze; dejte mi zpátky.

Přijde vám padesátcentů. — Zde jest půl dollaru zpátky.

soů trokhů lepshee.

vezmů si yednů; — zábalte me ye.

tú soů peñeezě; deytě me spátky.

prsheedě vám păděssát sentoo. — zdě yě pool dollārů spátky.

Rád bych koupil pártun uhlí; ale nemám peníze.

Vezmu ho na dluh; — počkáte mi?

Nečekám žádnému; — prodávám jen za hotové.

Nedávám kredit.—Chci hotové.

Nechci míti žádné špatné dluhy.

Potřebuji peníze. — Sháním peníze na zboží; nechci se dlužiti.

Za hotové koupí se lacino.

rád bikh kořpil pár třen ūhlee; dře němám peñeezě.

vezmů hř ná dlooh; — pochkáte me?

něcheckám žádnémř; — prodávám yen zá hotové.

nědávám credit.—khtsi hotové.

nekhtsi meet žádné shpătné dloohy.

potrshěbūyū peñeezě. — sháñeem peñeezě ná zbožee; — někhtsi sě dlužit.

zá hotové koupee sě lătsin.

Jak jde obchod? — Tak tak; — projde to.

Jde zboží na odbyt?
Mám dobrý odbyt, ale malý zisk.

yák dě obkhōd? — tak tāk; — projde tō.

dě zbožee ná odbyt? — mám dōbree odbyt, álē mălee zisk.

I often sell at a loss.—
I have a loss on my sales.

That is bad. — Have you a large stock?

I have still many goods on hand; — I expect again fresh goods;— they are on the way.

I was in New York to make purchases.

Did you make a good bargain? -I am satisfied.

Prodávám často se škodou. — Mám na tom ztrátu.

To je zlé. — Máte velkou zásobu?

Mám ještě hodně zboží; — čekám zase čerstvé zboží;—je už na cestě.

Byl jsem v New Yorku nakupovat.

Koupil jste dobré? — Jsem spokojen.

prodávám chásstō sě skhodoū. — mám nă tom strátu.

tō yě zlé. — mátě velkou zásobu?

mám yeshtě hodně zbožee; — chekám zass cherstvě zbožee; — yě ūsh nă tsesťe.

bill sem vnew-yorku năkūpovat.

koučip stě dōbrshě? — sem spokoyěn.

VOCABULARY.

Na skladě, *nă skladě*, on hand;
odbyt, *m. sale* (of goods);

zisk, *m. profit*

škoda, *f. shkodă* } loss

ztráta, *f. strátă* } loss

taška, *f. tăshkă* } satchel,

kabela, *f. kăbellă* } travclng bag;

tobolka, *f. tăbolkă*, pocket book;

heslo, *n. hësslō*, motto

pevný, *á*, é *pevnee*, fast, fixed;

trvati, *t'rvăt*, to last

trvanlivý, *á*, é *t'rvănlivee*, lasting.

Stojí to, *stoyee tō*, it costs, it is worth;

koštuje, *koshtyjě*, it costs

dostati, *dostăt*, to get

dostanu, *dostănu*, I shall get;

dostanete, *dostănenětě*, you will get;
je k dostání, *yě gdostáñi*, is to be got; is to be had;

držeti, *d'rzet*, to keep

hoditi se, *hodit sě*, to suit; to fit;

slevit, *slëvit*, to take off;

smlouvat, *smlouvăt*, to haggle; to bargain;

sloužiti, *sloužit*, to serve

dlužiti se, *dlužit sě* } to borrow

vydlužiti se, *vydlužit sě* } to borrow

počkat, *pochkăt*, to wait, to trust;

nečekám, *něchekám*, I do not wait;

I do not trust;

nakupovati, *nakūpovat*, to make purchases;

zabaliti, *zăbălit*, to wrap up.

In a grocery store.*U GROCERY.*

I want some groceries
Please, command;—we
have fresh goods of
all kinds.

Give me a pound of
coffee, two pounds
of sugar and a pack-
age of chicory.

Anything else?

Five pounds of rice,
half a dozen of lem-
ons and some spices.

How do you sell eggs?
Twenty cents a dozen.

Give me two dozen of
eggs, three quarts of
kerosene and a pint
of sirup.

How do you sell kero-
sene by the gallon?

I will take a bottle of
mustard, a pound of
raisins, a pound and
a half of dried apples.

Besides, I want four
ounces of pepper.

Send me a sack of flour
and five pounds of
barley.

I want the best kind of
flour, — patent flour.

Chci nějaké grocerie.
Poroučejte; — máme
čerstvé zboží všeho
druhu.

Dejte mi libru kávy,
dvě libry cukru a
pakliček cikorie.

Ještě něco?

Pět liber rýže, půl tu-
ctu citronů a nějaké
koření.

Zač prodáváte vejce?

Dvacet centů tucet.

Dejte mi dva tucty va-
jec, tři kvarty pe-
troleje a pint siro-
bu.

Zač prodáváte petro-
lej na gallony?

Vezmū si lahev horči-
ce, libru rozinek,
půldruhé libry kří-
žal.

Ještě chci čtyry unce
pepře.

Pošlete mi pytel mou-
ky a pět liber krup.

Chci nejlepší druh
mouky, — patentní
mouku,

khtsi náké grocerie.
poroučeyte; — máme
cherstve zbožee fshě-
hō držhū.

deytě me librū kávy,
dwě libry tsükrū a
päkleecheck tsikorię.

yeshťe hetsđ?

pyět liber reyže, pool
tūtstū tsitrđnōo a ná-
ké korshěñi.

zăch prodávátě veysě?

dwătset sentoo tătset.
deytě me dwă tătsty vă-
yets, trshi quărty pě-
trolejě a pint siro-
bū.

zăch prodávátě petrolej
nă găllony?

vezmă si lăhev horchit-
sě, libră răzinek,
pooldrăhē libry krsheežăl.

yeshťe khtsi shtiry ūn-
tsě pěprshě.

poshlětě mi pytel moňky
a pyět liber krüp.

khtsi neylepshee drūh
moňky, — pătentňee
moňkū,

A bushel of potatoes and a peck of onions.

Give me five cents worth of cinnamon, five cents worth of mace and ten cents worth of ginger.

Bušl bramborů a pek cibule.

Dejte mi za pět centů skořice, za pět centů květu a za deset centů zázvoru.

bušhel brămboroo ď peck tsibūlē.

deytě me ză pyět sentoo skorshitsě, ză pyět sentoo kwyětū ď ză desset sentoo zázvoru.

VOCABULARY.

Note. Many articles sold in groceries are to be found under the heading "Drugs and medicines".

Cukr kouskový, *tsük' ēr koškovee*, crushed sugar;

" **zrnkový,** *ts. z ērnkovee*, granulated sugar;

" **utlučený,** *ts. ītlūchence*, pulverized sugar;

" **hnědý,** *ts. hñedee*, brown sugar;

káva pražená, *kávă prăžená*, roasted coffee;

" **mletá,** *k. mlětá*, ground coffee

koření, *n. korshēní*, spice

nové koření, allspice

květ, *m. kwyět*, mace

dymián, *m. thyme*

šafrán, *m. shäfrán*, Spanish saffron

rozinky, *pl. f. raisins*

drobné rozinky, currants

křížaly, *pl. f. krshheežăly*, dried apples;

sušené švestky, *pl. f. sūshěně shwestky*, prunes

cibule, *f. tsibūlē*, onions

česnek, *m. chessnek*, garlic

zázvor loupaný, bleached ginger-root;

zázvor neloupaný, unbleached ginger-root;

prášek na pečení, *práshek nă pěcheñi*, baking powder;

kvasnice, *pl. kvasšnitsě* } yeast;

droždí, *n. drožd'ee* } yeast;

suché kvasnice, dry yeast;

lisované kv., compressed yeast;

salajka, *f. säläykă*, saleratus

prací soda, *f. prătsee sodă*, washing soda;

kornout, *n. kornoňt*, paper cornet;

paklík, *m. păkleetk*, package

paklíček, *m. păkleeček*, small package;

balík, *m. băleek*, bundle, parcel;

zabaliti, *zăbălit* } to pack up

zapakovati; *zăpăkōvăt* } to pack up

zavázati, *zăvázăt*, to tie up;

svázati, *svázăt*, to bind or tie together.

Garments.

ODĚV.

Dry goo's have a ready sale.

I intend to start a dry goods store.

My brother has a clothing store.

He employs many tailors.

The tailor makes (liter. sews) clothes.

Thread and needle, scissors and shears, a thimble, a sad-iron and a press-board are his tools.

Nowadays much sewing is done on the ma hine.

The sewing machine is a useful invention.

It is an American invention.

I need a suit of clothes. — I want a new suit.

Take my measure.

The cutter takes measure and cuts the cloth

What sort of stuff do you want?

Show me your patterns

This wears well.

Loketní zboží jde rychle na odbyt.

Hodlám založiti střížní krám.

Můj bratr má oděvní krám.

Zaměstnává mnoho krajčích.

Krejčí šije šaty.

Nit a jehla, nůžky a velké nůžky, náprstek, cihlička a koza jsou jeho nástroje.

Dnes mnoho šije se na stroji.

Šicí stroj jest užitečný vynález.

Jest to americký vynález.

Potřebuju oblek. — Chei nový oblek.

Vemte mi míru.

Kraječ bere míru a nákrájí sukno.

Jakou látku chcete?

Ukažte mi své vzory.

Tehle se dobrě nese.

loketní zboží dě rikhlě ná odbyt.

hodlám založit strshizníee krám.

můj brat'ér má oděvnič krám.

zaměstnává mnoho kreycheekh.

kreychee she-yě shaty.

nit a yehla, nooshky a velké nooshky, náprstek, tsillichkă a kozá soū yeho nástroye.

dnes mnohō she-yě sě ná stroyi.

shitsee stroy yest užitechnee vynález.

yest tō ameritskee vynález.

potrshěbūyū oblek. — khtsi novee oblek.

vemtě me meerū.

kráyech berě meerū a nákráyee sūkno.

yákoū látkū khtsete?

ukáště me své vzory

tōhlě sč dōbrshě nesse.

How will you have your coat made i.e. sewed)?
After the present fashion.

Try your coat on.
It pinches me under the arms — It is too tight.
It is too wide round the waist. — It makes folds.

The skirts are long enough. It has pockets behind and breast-pockets.

Make me a pair of pants
Get it done pretty soon;
— take a good stuff.

Do you want lining in your pants?

I do not want any lining. — Without lining.

Jak chcete míti kabát ušitý?

Dle nynější mody.

Zkuste váš kabát.

Svírá pod pažema. — Je tuze těsný.

Je tuze volný v půli. — dělá faldy.

Šosy jsou dost dlouhé.

— Má kapsy v zadu a kapsy na prsou.

Udělejte mi pář kalhot

Zhotovte je hezky brzo; — veníte dobrou látku.

Chcete podšívku do kalhot?

Nechci žádnou podšívku. — Bez podšívky.

yāk khtsetě meet kābát ūshitee?

dlě nyñeyshée mody

skūstě vāsh kābát.

sweerá pod pāžemā. — yě toozě ūessnee.

yě toozě v̄lnnee spooli. — d'elí fāldy.

shōssy soū dost dloūhē.

— má kāpsy vzdū ā kāpsy nā p̄rsoū.

ūd'eleytě me pár kālhot.

zhotoftě ye hesskee b̄rzo; — veníte dōbroū látku.

khtsetě podshifkū dō kālhot?

nekhtsi žádnoū podshifkū. — běs podshifky.

VOCABULARY

Kabát, m. *kābát*, the coat

frak, m. *frāk*, a dress-coat

svrchník, m. *sv̄rkhñík*, an over-coat

zimník, m. *zimñík*, a greatcoat

plášt, m. *plásht*, a cloak

kalhoty, pl. } pants, trousers;

spodky, pl. } pants, trousers;

nohavice, f. *nohāvitsě*, leg of the pants;

vesta, f. *vestă*, the vest

kazajka, f. *kāzāykă*, the jacket

bunda, f. *bündă*, the sack-coat

límeč, m. *leemets*, the collar

laple, f. *lāplě*, the lapel

rukáv, m. *rükáf*, the sleeve

šos, m. *shōss*, the skirt

šev, m. *shěf*, the seam

štých, m. *shtikh* } a stitch

steh, m. *stěh* } a stitch

podšívka, f. *podshifkă*, the lining

záplata, f. *záplătă*, the patch

kapsa, f. *kăpsă*, the pocket
knoflík, m. *knofleek*, the button
knoflíková dírka, the button-hole;

Prádlo, n. *linen*, underclothing;
košile, f. *koshillĕ*, the shirt
spodní košile, *spodñee k.*, the under-
 shirt
podvlečky, pl. } the drawers
spodní kalhoty }
punčochy, pl. f. *pǔnchokhy*, the
 stockings, the socks;
podvazky, pl. *podvăsky*, the garters
šandy, pl. f. *shăndы* } the
šle, pl. f. *shlĕ* } suspenders
sátek, m. *shátek*, kerchief
š. na krk, sh. *nă k^{er}rk*, neckerchief
š. do kapsy, sh. *dō kăpsy*, pocket
 handkerchief;
mašle na krk, *măshlĕ nă k^{er}rk*, a
 necktie.

Sukno, n. *săknă*, cloth, broadcloth;
samet, m. *sămmet*, velvet
pliš, m. *plish*, plush
atlas, m. *ătlăss*, satin
hedvábí, n. *hedvábee*, silk
plátно, n. *linen*
kartoún, m. *kartoūn*, cotton, print;
šňúra, f. *shňooră*, cord
civka, f. *tsifkă*, a spool
klubko, n. *klübko*, a ball
přadýnko, n. *prshădeenko*, a skein
hrubá nit, f. *hrübá nít*, a coarse
 thread;
tenká nit, a fine thread;

hrubá jehla, f. h. *yehlă*, a coarse
 needle;
tenká jehla, a fine needle;
štepovací jehla, *shtepovătsee yěhlă*,
 darning needle;
drát (na pletení), m. knitting nee-
 dle;
stříhati, *strshihăt*, to cut with a pair
 of scissors;
žehliti, *žehlit*, to iron.

Klobouk, m. *kloboŭk*, the hat
ženský klobouk, a bonnet, a lady's
 hat;
čepec, m. *chěpets*, the hood
čepice, f. *chěpitsě*, the cap
cilindr, m. *tsilind^{er}*, a beaver, a
 silk hat;
nízký klobouk, *ňeeskee kloboŭk*, a
 low hat.

Švadlena, f. *shvădlenă*, a needle-
 woman
šička, f. *shichkă*, a sewing-girl
modistka, f. a milliner
modní zboží, *modñee zbožee*, millinery
šaty, pl. *shăty*, a dress
život, m. *život*, the waist, the bust;
šněrovačka, f. *shňerovăčkă*, the
 corset, the bodice;
spodnička, f. *spodñichkă*, the petti-
 coat
košile (ženská), *koshillĕ*, the chemise
karnýr, m. *karneer*, a flounce
karnýrek, m. a ruffle
pentle, f. *pentlĕ*, a ribbon
mašle, f. *măshlĕ*, a sash

mašlička, f. *măshlichkă*, a bow
klička, f. *klichkă*, a loop
krajky, pl. *krăyky*, lace
obruba, f. *obrăbă*, hem, border;
pinta, f. *pintă*, belt
závoj, m. *závoy* } the veil
flór, m. *floor*, }
černý flór, *chernee floor*, crape

týl, m. *teel*, mosquito bar;
pera na klobouk, pl. *plumes*
perka, pl. *tips*
rukavičky, pl. f. *răkăvich-ky*, }
rukavice, pl. f. *răkăvitsă*, }
pár rukavie, *pár răkăvits*, a pair of
gloves;
štucel, m. *shtütsell*, a muff.

Shoemaking.

OBUVNICTVÍ.

Obuv, f. *obăv*, footgear
obuvník, *obăvñik* } shoemaker
švec, *shwets* }
obuvnický krám, *obăv-nitskee krám* } boot and
ševoovský krám, *shef tsofskee k.* } shoe store;
bota, (pl. **boty**), f. *bottă*, boot
střevíc, (pl. **střevíce**), m. *shtrshĕ-veets*, shoe
pár bot, a pair of boots;
pár střevíců, a pair of shoes;
botky (ženské), pl. gaiters
pantofle, pl. *păntoflă*, slippers
svrchní střevice, *sw'rkhñee strshĕ-vitsă*, overshoes.

Holinka, f. *holeenkă*, leg of a boot;
podešev, m. *podăshef*, the sole

kramflek, m. } the heel
podpatek, m. }
nárt, m. the vamp
přaska, f. *prshăsskă*, the buckle
kanice, f. *kăñitsă*, shoe-lace, shoe-
string;
floky, pl. pegs
nejtky, pl. *neytky*, brass nails
šroubek, m. *shroubek*, a screw
lastyng, m. serge
dratev, f. *drătef*, waxed thread;
potěh, m. *pōtěh*, strap
knejp, m. *kněyp*, knife
kladivo, n. *klăd'ivă*, hammer
kopyto, n. *kopytlă*, last
štipee, *shťiptsă*, a pair of pincers;
nádobí ševoovské, n. *nădăbee shef-*
tsofské, findings
kůže, f. *koožě*, leather.

Diverse trades.

ROZLIČNÁ ŘEMESLA.

Barvíř, *barveersh*, dyer
barvíř domů, house painter
bednář, *bednársh*, cooper
cihlář, *tsihlársh*, brickmaker
cukrář, *tsükársh*, confectioner
čalouník, *chaloúñik*, upholsterer
doutníkář, *doútnikársh*, cigar-maker
dlaždič, *dlažd'ich*, paver
formář, *formársh*, moulder
hodinář, *hodinársh*, watchmaker
havíř, *háveersh*, miner
kameník, *kámeník*, stone cutter
klempíř, *klempeersh*, tinner
knihař, *kñihársh*, bookbinder
kloboučník, *kloboučhñik*, hatter
kolář, *kolársh*, wagon-maker
kotlář, *kotlársh*, boiler maker
kovář, *kovársh*, blacksmith
koželuh, *koželuh*, tanner
kožešník, *kožeshñik*, furrier
krejčí, *kreychee*, tailor
kufrář, *küfrársh*, trunk-maker
lakýruník, *läkeerñik*, laquerer
litec, *litets*, founder
malíř, *mäleersh*, painter
mydlář, *mydlársh*, soap-maker
mlynář, *mlynársh*, miller
natěrač, *náťerách*, painter
obuvník, (*švec*), *obuvñik*, (*shwets*)
 shoemaker
pekař, *pekarsh*, baker
plynovodník, gas-flitter
puškař, *pushkarsh*, gunsmith
řezník, *rshézñik*, butcher

rybář, *rybársh*, fisherman
rytec, *rytets*, engraver
sazeč, *sázech*, typesetter
sedlář, *sedlársh*, saddler
sekerník, *sekerñik*, millwright
sládek, brewer
sochař, *sokharsh*, sculptor
stavitel, builder
strojník, *stroyñik*, machinist
tesař, *tessarsh*, carpenter
tiskář, *tisskarsh*, printer
tkadlec, *kădlets*, weaver
truhlář, (*stolař*), *trühlársh*, cabinet
 maker
zahradník, *záhradñik*, gardner
zámečník, *zámechñik*, locksmith
zedník, *zedñik*, stone-mason, brick-
 layer;
zlatník, *zlatñik*, goldsmith.

Barvířství, n. *barveershrtwee*, the
 dyer's trade;
bednářství, n. *bednárshrtwee*, the
 cooper's trade;
doutníkářství, *doútnikárstwee*, cigar-
 making;
krejčovství, *kreychofstwee* } the tailor's
 trade, tail-
krejčovina, *kreychowină* } 1 ring;
ševecovství, *shéftsof-
 stwee*, } the shoemaker's trade,
ševecovina, *shéftsovina* } shoemaking;
sazečství, *sázechstwee*, type-setting,
 etc.

On the farm.

NA FARMĚ.

I want to go on a farm.
Do you want to be a
farmer?

Yes, I want to buy
land.

What is land worth in
this neighborhood?

What are improved
farms worth?

Fifty to sixty dollars an
acre, and over.

How is the soil? — The
soil is good, fertile.
Good land all over.

What is the character
(or "lay") of the land?

The land is level, flat,
broken, hilly).

The land is loamy, —
sandy.

Black loam, — mixed
with sand.

Gravel at the bottom, —
in some places clay.

Rich land; — poor land.

That land is bad —
swampy; — it has no
drainage.

That land looks poor.
— Everything grows
here; — but it wants
manuring.

Chci na farmu.

Cheete býti farmerem?

Ano; chci koupiti po-
zemek.

Co stojí pozemky v tom-
to okolí?

Co stojí vzdělané far-
my?

Padesát až šedesát dol-
larů akr, i více.

Jaká je půda? — Půda
je dobrá, úrodná.

Samá dobrá zem.

Jaká je poloha?

Půda je rovná (plochá,
lomená, kopčitá).

Zem je hlinitá, — pís-
čitá.

Černá hlína, — smícha-
ná s pískem.

Štěrk vespol, — někde
jíl (mazník).

Bohatá půda; — chudá
půda.

Ten pozemek je špat-
ný, — balný; —
nemá odpad.

Ta půda vypadá hubená. — Všechno zde
rostě; — ale musí se
hnojiti.

khtsi nă farmū.

khtsětě beet farmerem?

ānō; khtsi koüpít pōzě-
mek.

tsō stoyee pozemky ftom-
tō okolee?

tsō stoyee vzděláné far
my?

păděsát āsh shěděsát
dollaroo āk ēr, e veetsě.

yáká yě poodā? — poodā
yě dobrá, oo'odná.

sámá dōbrá zem.

yáká yě polohā?

poodā yě rovná, (plokhá,
lomená, kopchitá).

zem yě hlíñită, — pees-
chitá.

cherná hleenă, — smee-
khäná speeskem.

shčerk vespol, — něgdě
yeel (mázñik).

bohätá poodā; — khüdá
poodā.

ten pōzemek yě shpătnee
— băhñitee; — němá
odpăd.

tă pooda vypădá hubená. — fshëkhnuž zdě
rostě; — ālē măsee sě
hnojiti.

How will the harvest be? — good? — bad?

How does grain look? —
Grain shows a good stand. — Wheat stools out thickly.

Rye is in bloom. — Barley is heading.

Wheat as lodged; — the rainstorm laid it flat.

It has a good ear; — the berries are plump.

Corn is poor: — early corn looks better than late corn.

Have you a great deal of corn? — We have twenty acres of it.

We planted it towards the end of May. — I think it will pick up.

Our neighbor planted corn in the sod. — How does it grow? — Poorly.

How is the pasture? — Poor.

Everything is parched up. — Hay will be short.

Do you raise a great deal of stock?

About fifty head.

What do you feed (to your stock)?

Jaká bude úroda? — do-brá? — špatná?

Jak stojí obilí? — Obilí stojí dobře. — Pše-nice nasazuje hustě.

Žito je ve květu. — Ječ-men vymetá.

Pšenice lehla; — ten liják ji položil.

Má dobrý klas; — zrno je jadrné.

Kukuřice je špatná; — ranná korna je lepší než pozdní.

Máte mnoho korný? — Máme jí dvacet a-krů.

Sázeli jsme ji ke konci máje. — Já myslím že se seberé.

Soused sázel kornu do drnu. — Jak roste? — Mizerně.

Jaká je pastva? — Hu-bená.

Všecko je vyprahlé. — Sena bude málo.

Chováte mnoho dobyt-ka?

Asi padesát kusů.

Čím krmíte?

yáká būdě oorodā? — dō-brá? — shpātná?

yák stoyee obilee? — obilee stoyee dōbrshě. — pshěñitsè năssazű-yě hüssťe.

žitō yě vě kwyetū. — yěchmen vymětā.

pshěñitsè lehlă; — ten liják ye položil.

má dōbree klăss; — z ēr-nō yě yăd ērné.

kükürshitsě yě shpātná, — rāná kornă yě lep-shee nesh pozdñee

mátě mnohō kornuy? — mámě ye dwătset kroo.

sázelli smě ye kě kontsi máyě. — yá misleem že sě seberě.

soūsed sázel kornū dō d ērnū. — yák roste? — mizerñe.

yáká yě păstvă? — hū-běná.

fshětsko yě vyprahlé. — sennă būdě málō.

khovátě mnohō dōbyt-kā?

assi păděssát küssoo.

cheem k ērmeetě?

What do you feed your stock upon?
 What do you feed to your horses?
 Do you fatten your stock for the butcher (*liter.* "for meat")?
 Last year I fattened fifteen head of beef-steers.
 I feed many hogs for the market.
 I have a stock farm not far from here.
 There is a creek on it; — but now it is almost dry.
 This is a dry year (a dry season); — there is no moisture (no rain).
 A wet year (wet season) is better.
 There is a great deal of insects this year.
 Grasshoppers we never had; — neither did we have chinch bugs.
 Farming implements cost a great deal.
 At present we have machines for everything.
 Farming is improving.

Co dáváte dobytku žrati?
Čím krmíte koně?
Krmíte dobytek na maso?
Loni vykrmil jsem patnáct volů na maso.
Krmím mnoho prasat pro trh.
Mám dobytě farmu nedaleko odtud.
Je na ní potok; — ale teď je skoro suchý.
Je suchý rok; — není vláhy.
Mokrý rok je lepší.
Je síla hmyzu letos.
Kobylky nikdy jsme neměli; — polní štěnice také ne.
Rolnické nářadí stojí mnoho.
Ted' máme stroje na všecko.
Rolnictví se zvelebuje.

VOCABULARY.

Note. From the preceding lessons the student is familiar with a great many words and phrases relating to agriculture; To repeat the same in the following vocabulary would be a waste of space.

tsō dáváte dobytku žrát?
cheem k'ermeetě koñe?
k'ermeetě döbytek nă măssō?
loñi vyk'ermil sem pătnátst voloo nă măssō.
k'ermeem mnohō prăssăt pro t'erh.
mám döbitchee farmū nedălekō otăd.
yě nă ñee pătok; — ălě teď yě skorō sükhee.
yě sükhee rok; — neyñi vláhy.
mokree rok yě lepshee.
yě seelă hmiză letoss.
kobylky ñigdy smě ne-myëlli; — polñee shťe-ñitsë tăké ně.
rolñitské nárshăd'ee stoyee mnohō.
ted' mámě stroyě nă fshëtskō.
rolñitstwee sě zvelěbýyě.

LAND and HARVEST.

Půda a žen.

Delina, f. <i>dollină</i>	bottomland
úpad, m. <i>oopăd</i>	
výšina, f. <i>veeshină</i> ,	upland
svah, m. <i>svăh</i> ,	slope
stráň, f. <i>stráň</i> ,	bluff
rokle, f. <i>rocklă</i> ,	ravine, gully;
mez, f. <i>măz</i> ,	boundary, line;
pěšina, f. <i>pyěshină</i>	path
stezka, f. <i>steskă</i>	
lávka, f. <i>lăfkă</i> ,	footbridge
mostek, m. <i>măstek</i>	little bridge
můstek, m. <i>moostek</i>	
kanál, m. <i>kănál</i> ,	culvert
strouha, f. <i>stroňhă</i> ,	ditch
břeh, m. <i>brshěh</i> ,	bank
hráz (hráze), f. <i>hráz</i> ,	dam.

Orati, <i>orăt</i> ,	to plow
vláčeti, <i>vlăchet</i> ,	to harrow
přeorati, <i>prshěorăt</i> ,	to backset
přivláčeti, <i>prshi-vláchet</i> ,	to scour
oráč, m. <i>orách</i> ,	plowman
brázda, f. <i>brázdă</i> ,	furrow
kolej, f. <i>kolley</i> ,	rut
hnojiti, <i>hnoyit</i> ,	to manure

Tráva, f. <i>trávă</i> ,	grass
plevel, m. <i>plěvell</i> ,	weeds
pleti, <i>plet</i> ,	to weed
koukol, <i>kočkol</i> ,	cockle
jetel, m. <i>yetell</i> ,	clover
pohanka, f. <i>pohănkă</i> ,	buckwheat
proso, n. <i>prossă</i> ,	millet

hnojivo, n. <i>hnoyivă</i> ,	manure,
hnůj, m. <i>hnooy</i>	
mrva, f. <i>mĕrvă</i>	dung;
zaseti, <i>zăsset</i> ,	to sow, to seed (with);
zaseto, <i>zăssetă</i> ,	sown, seeded;
sáseti, <i>săset</i> ,	{ to plant
zasázeti, <i>zăssázet</i> ,	
zasázono, <i>zăssázonă</i> ,	planted
žíti, <i>žeet</i> ,	{ to reap, to mow;
požíti, <i>požeet</i>	
sekati, <i>sekăt</i>	{ to cut
posekatí, <i>păsekăt</i>	
skliditi, <i>sklidit</i> ,	to harvest
sláma, f. <i>slámă</i> ,	straw
snop, m. <i>snăp</i> ,	sheaf
vázati, <i>vázăt</i> ,	to bind
stoh, m. <i>stăh</i> ,	stack
stohovati, <i>stăhovăt</i> ,	to stack
kupa sena, <i>kăpă sennă</i> ,	hay-stack
kupka sena, <i>kăpkă s.</i> ,	hay-rick
voziti, <i>vozit</i>	{ to haul,
svážeti, <i>svăžet</i>	
droliti se, <i>drolit să</i> ,	to shed, to shell;
zralý, á, é <i>zrălec</i> ,	ripe
prézralý, á, é <i>prshězrălee</i> ,	over-ripe.

PLANTS.

Rostliny.

hráčli, m. <i>hrákh</i> ,	pease
boby, <i>böby</i>	beans
fazole, <i>făzolă</i>	
čočka, f. <i>chochkă</i> ,	lentils
řepa, f. <i>rshěpă</i>	beets
řípa, f. <i>rsheepă</i> ,	
řepa pro dobytek,	rutabaga

vodnatka, f. turnips
keř, m. *kersh*, shrub
živý plot, *živee plot*, hedge
háj, m. *háy*, grove
houština, f. *hoúština*, thicket, copse;
chrastí, n. *khráštī*, brushwood, undergrowth;

pařez, m. *pärshěz*, stump
klada, f. *klădă*, trunk
větev, f. *vyětef*, branch, bough;
větvička, f. *vyětvičkă*, twig
ratolest, f. prig
kácti stromy, *kátset* } to fell (trees)
porážeti “ *porážet* } to fell (trees)

TEAMS and DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

Potah a domácí zvěřata.

Potah, m. *pörtäh*, a team
pár koní, *pár koñee*, a pair of horses
pár volů, *pár voloo*, a yoke of oxen
pár mladých volů, a pair of steers;
na koni, *nă koñi*, on horseback;
jeti na koni, *yet nă koñi*, to ride a horse;
jeti s koñma, *yet skoñmă*, to drive horses;
zapřahnouti, *zäprshähnoût*, to harness;
uvázati, *üvázăt*, to hitch
náklad, m. *náklăd*, the load
nakládati, *năkládăt*, to load
skládati, *skládăt*, to unload
uváznouti, *üváznoût*, to get fast, to stick fast;
splašiti se, *spláshit së*, to run away
lekatí se, *lekăt së*, to shy
zarážlivý kůñ, *zarážlivee kooñ*, a balky horse;
zly kůñ, *zlee kooñ*, a vicious horse;
klus, m. *klüss*, trot
krok, m. pace
krmiti, *k'ermít*, to feed
napojiti, *năpoyit*, to water.

Klisna, f. *klissnă* } broad mare;
hřebice, f. *hrshěbitsë* }
hřebná, *hrshěbná*, with foal;
hříbě, n. *hrsheebyě*, foal
hřebeček, m. *hrshěběchek*, colt
hřebička, f. *hrshěbichkă*, filly
cucati, *tsütsăt*, to suckle
cucák, m. *tsütsák*, a suckling
hřebec, m. *hrshěbets*, } stallion
hengst, m. *hengst* }

Kráva, f. *krávă*, cow
dojnice, f. *doyñitsë*, milch cow;
jalovice, f. *yăllovitsë*, heifer
tele, n. *tellë*, calf
bulík, m. *bulleek*, bull calf;
jalovička, f. *yăllovichkă*, heifer calf
roční, *rochñee*, yearling
stelná, *stellná*, with calf
jalová, *yăllová*, farrow
pometati, *pömetăt*, to slink, to slip the calf;
běhati se, *byěhăt së*, to be bulling;
býk, m. *beek* } bull
bejk, *běyk* }

Ovce, f. *oftsě*, sheep
bahnice, f. *băhñitsě*, ewe
beran, m. *berăn*, ram, buck;
jehně, n. *yěhñe*, lamb
bahñení, n. *băhñeñi*, lambing season
vlna, f. *v'lnă*, wool
střílhání, n. *strsheelháñi*, shearing.

Prase, n. *prăsse* } pig, hog;
vepř, m. *veprsh* } pig, hog;
kanec, m. *kănets*, boar
svině, f. *sweene*, sow
sele, n. *sellę* } sucking
podsvině, n. *podswinčě* } pig.

Mezek, m. *mězek*, mule
osel, m. *ősell*, donkey
koza, f. *kőză*, goat, she-goat;
kozel, m. *kőzell*, he goat
kůzle, n. *koozlě*, kid
pes, m. *pest*, dog
čuba, f. *chübă*, bitch
štěně, n. *shťeñe*, whelp

kočka, f. *kőchka*, cat
kocour, m. *kotsoř*, tom-cat.

Drůbež, f. *drooběsh*, poultry
slepice, f. *slepitsě*, hen, chicken;
kvočna, f. *kwčchnă*, clucking hen;
kuře, n. *koorshě*, chick, young
 chicken;
kohout, m. *kohoūt*, rooster
kachna, f. *kăkhnă* } duck
kačena, *kachenă* } duck
kačer, m. *kăcher*, drake
husa, f. *hüssă*, goose
houser, m. *hoüsser*, gander
housata, pl. *hoüssată*, goslings
krocan, m. *krotsăñ*, turkey-cock
krůta, f. *krootă*, turkey-hen
páv, m. *páf*, peacock
pavice, f. *pávitsě*, peahen
hnízdo, n. *hñeezdă*, nest
nesti vejce, *nest veytsě*, to lay eggs;
lhnouti se, *leehnoūt sě*, to hatch.

TOOLS and MACHINES.

Nástroje a stroje.

Vůz, m. *vooz*, wagon
kolو, *kollă*, wheel
kolečko, n. *kollechkă*, wheelbarrow
ráf, m. tire
náboj, m. *náboy*, bub
náprava, f. *náprăvă*, axletree
špice, f. *shpitsě*, spokes
voj, f. *voy*, pole
vojky, *vryky*, shafts
hamovák, m. *hămovák*, brake
pera, pl. n. *peră*, springs
sedadlo, n. *sedădlă*, seat

kšír, m. *ksheer*, harness
oprát, f. *oprăt*, line
sedlo, n. *sedlă*, saddle
uzda, f. *oozdă*, bridle
ohlávka, f. *ohlífkă*, halter
popruh, m. *poprăh*, girt
čabraka, f. *chăbrăkă*, horse-loth
třemen, m. *trshěmen*, stirrup
hřebilce, *hrshě-beeltsě*, curry-com;
bič, m. *bitch*, whip
bičiště, n. *bichishtě*, whip-stick.

Saně, pl. *să̄ne*, sleigh
sanice, f. *să̄nitsë*, runner, (also: sleighing);
korba, f. *korbă*, cutt r
řezačka, f. *rshězăchkă*, straw-cutter, feed-cutter;
řezanka, f. *rshězănkă*, chopped straw;
brány, pl. harrow, drag;
válec, m. *válets*, roller
pluh, m. *plooh*, plow
radlice, f. *rădlitsë*, plowshare
kleče, pl. *klěchě*, handles
krajadlo, n. *krăyădlă*, coulter
řetěz, m. *rshět'ez*, chain
pospěchy, pl. *pospyěkhy* } culty-
podrývač, m. *podreevăch* } vator
kosa, f. *kossă*, scythe
motyka, f. hoe
špičatá motyka, *shpichătă* m., pick-axe
rýč, f. *reech*, spade
lopata, f. *lopătă*, shovel
hrábě, pl. *hrábyč*, rake
hrabati, *hrăbăt*, to rake
podávky, pl. *podáfkы*, hayfork
vidle, pl. *vidlë*, pitchfork
seykra, f. *seyyră*, axe
seyyrka, f. hatchet

pila, f. *pillă* } saw
pilka, *pillkă* } saw
ruční pilka, *răchňee pillkă*, hand saw
nebozez, m. bore, auger;
Mlatidlo, *mlăt'idlă* } threshing
mlatička, *mlăt'ichkă* } machine
mlátiti, *mlătit*, to thresh
mlácení, n. *mlátseñi*, threshing
mlatič, m. *mlăt'ich*, thresher
fofr, m. *făf'ér*, fanning mill;
sečka, f. *sechkă*, grain-drill
žací stroj, m. *žătsee stroy*, mower
sekací stroj, *sekătsee stroy*, reaper
samovazač, m. *sămovăzăch*, self-binder
rám, m. frame
sýto, n. *seetă*, sieve
řešeto, n. *rshěshëtă*, screen
řemen, m. *rshěmen* } belt
pruh, m. *prooh* }
tyč, f. *tich*, rod
panty, pl. m. *pănty*, hinges
zuby, pl. m. *zăby* } cogs
palce, *păltse* }
žlábek, m. *žlăbek*, spout
mlynek, m. *mleynek*, mill
leupač (na kukuřici), m. *loüpăch*, corn-sheller;
loupati, *loüpăt*, to shell.

PART IV.

Bohemian grammar.

1. ORTHOGRAPHY.

SECTION 1. — The full Bohemian alphabet, as given in the first Part, contains the following vowels : **a, á, — e, é, ě, — i, í, y, ý, — o, ó, — u, ú, û.**

The other letters are consonants. There is only one diphthong: **ou, oŭ.** When **ou** occurs in a compound word, ending one and beginning the next syllable, it is not a diphthong and must be divided : **použiti (po-užiti), pō-ŭžit,** to use, to make use of; **samouk (samo-uk), sāmo-ŭk,** a self-educated man.

An accute accent (or comma) over a vowel marks a long sound: **kam, kām,** where to; **kámen, kámen,** a stone.

A ring over the vowel **u (û)** is also a prolongation mark : **sup, sūp,** a hawk; **sûl, sool,** the salt.

When a word begins with a long **u**, the accute accent is used: **úrok, oorok,** the interest. In such cases the vowel **ú** may be and frequently is changed into the diphthong **ou:** **eurok, oŭrok,**

The accented vowel **ě** has always the short sound of **yě:** **svět, swyět,** the world.

The vowels **a, o, u, y,** are called *hard*; the vowels **e, ě, i,** are called *soft.*

SECTION 1. — The consonants are divided into three classes :

hard consonants, — h, ch, k, r, d, n, t;

soft consonants, — c, č, d', j, ň, ř, š, t', ž;

neutral consonants, — b, f, l, m, p, s, v, z.

After the hard consonants the hard vowel **y** is always used :

hynu , <i>hinnu</i> , I am perishing;	vždyť , <i>dyť</i> , <i>dit</i> , but, to be sure;
chyba , f. <i>khibă</i> , a mistake, a fault;	nynčko (nyní) , <i>ninchkō</i> , now, at present;
kyt , m. <i>kit</i> , putty	
ryba , f. <i>ribă</i> , a fish	tykev , f. <i>tikeyf</i> , a pumpkin

When the sound is long, an accented **ý** is used : **hýbati**, *heebăt*, to move; **tichý (á, é)**, *tikhee*, quiet; **rýti**, *reet*, to spade, to dig, to root; **dým**, m. *deem*, smoke; **týrati**, *teerăt*, to misuse, to torment.

In such cases the vowel **ý** is usually changed into **ej (ěy)**, in common pronunciation : **hejbatí**, *hěybăt*, **tichej**, *tikhey*; **rejti**, *rěyt*; **dejm**, *děym*; **tejrati**, *těyrăt*.

Words derived from foreign languages, also foreign names, make an exception, their original spelling being retained : **historie**, *historiě*, history; **Amerika**, **Riga**, etc.

The soft consonants are always followed by the soft vowel **i** (or **í**, when the sound is long) :

cit , m. <i>tsit</i> , the feeling	cíl , m. <i>tseel</i> , the goal
čin , m. <i>chin</i> , the deed	číslo , n. <i>cheeslo</i> , the number
divoký* , <i>divokee</i> , wild	díl , m. <i>d'eel</i> , a part
jistý , <i>yistee</i> , certain	jísti , <i>yeest</i> , to eat
nic , <i>nits</i> , nothing	hníti , <i>hñcet</i> , to rot
římsa , f. <i>rshimsă</i> , a cornice	říci , <i>rsheetsi</i> , to say
šikovný , <i>shikovnce</i> , smart, clever;	šítí , <i>sheet</i> , to sew
tisk , m. <i>tisk</i> , the printing	tíže , f. <i>t'eežě</i> , the weight
život , m. <i>život</i> , the life	žíla , f. <i>žeelă</i> , the vein.

The neutral vowels are followed by the soft **i** or **í**, with the following exceptions :

b : **aby**, **by**, that; **bych**, **bys**, etc. that I, that thou, etc.; **bylina**, f. the plant; **bystrý**, quick, sharp; **býti**, to be; **kobyla**, the mare; **obyčej**, m. the custom.

l : **lysý**, bald; **lysina**, f. bald spot, or white spot; **lýko**, the bast; **lyska**, f. the coot; **mlýn**, m. the mill; **oplývati**, to abound; **pely-**

*) The soft consonants **đ**, **ñ**, **ť** lose their accent, when followed by **i**, **í** or **ě**, and are written simply **d**, **n**, **t**. See Part I, section 2.

něk, m. the wormwood; **plyn**, m. the gas; **plynouti**, to glide; **plýtvati**, to waste; **polykati**, to swallow; **slyšeti**, to hear; **vzlykati**, to sob.

m : **hmýz**, m. the insects; **my**, we; **mýdlo**, n. the soap; **mýliti**, to mislead, to confuse; **mýliti se**, to mistake; **omyl**, m. a mistake; **mysl**, f. the mind; **mysliti**, to think; **myš**, f. the mouse; **mýti**, to wash; **smyčec**, m. the fiddle-stick; **smykati**, to drag; **zamykatí**, to lock up.

p : **kopyto**, n. the hoof; **netopýr**, m. the bat; **pýcha**, f. the pride; **pykati**, to regret; **pyl**, m. the pollen; **pýr**, m. the quick-grass; **pysk**, the lip; **pytel**, the sack; **třpytiti**, to glitter; **zpytovati**, to search, to inquire.

s : **osyka**, f. the aspen; **osypky**, pl. the measles; **posýlati**, to send; **syčeti**, to hiss; **sychravý**, chilly; **syn**, m. the son; **sypati**, to pour; **sýpka**, f. the granary; the bin; **sýr**, m. the cheese; **syrový**, raw; **syrup**, the syrup; **sysel**, m. the gopher; **syt**, **nasycen**, full, satiated.

v : **povyk**, m. the noise; **vý**, you; **vydra**, f. the otter; **výheň**, f. the forge; **vykýř**, m. the dormer-window; **výr**, m. the horn-owl; **vysoký**, high; **výti**, to howl; **vyza**, the sturgeon; **zvyk**, the habit; **žvýkati**, to chew.

z : **brzy**, soon; **jazyk**, the tongue; **nazývati**, to call, to name.

SECTION 3.—As in English, the spelling makes sometimes a great difference of meaning, though the pronunciation may be identical. For instance :

býti, *beet'i* or *beet* (colloquially *běyt*), to be

mýti, *meet'i* or *meet*, (colloq. *měyt*), to wash

my, *me*, we

vy, *ve*, you

výr, *veer*, (colloq. *věyr*), the horn-owl

výti, *veet'i* or *veet* (colloq. *věyt*), to howl

bíti, *beet'i* or *beet*, to beat

mítí, *meet'i* or *meet*, to have

mi, *me*, to me

ví, *vee*, he knows

vir, *veer*, the whirl-wind

víti, *veet'i* or *veet*, to wind.

SECTION 4.—The Bohemian verb shows a distinction of gender in the past tense*). In the plural, there is only an orthographical distinction

*) See Note 2, Lesson IX.

between the masculine and *feminine* gender, the latter always terminating in **y**. For instance :

<i>mASCULINE</i>	<i>fEMININE</i>
byli jsme , we were	byly jsme , we were
byli , they were	byly , they were
měli jsme , we had	měly jsme , we had
měli , they had	měly , they had
muži měli , the men had;	ženy měly , the women had
hoši viděli , the boys saw;	holky viděly , the girls saw.

The same is true of verbs relating to *inanimate* nouns of the masculine gender, or names of lifeless things : **stromy vyrostly**, the trees grew up; **domy shořely**, the houses burned down.

SECTION 5. — The general rule of Bohemian spelling is: A sound for every letter and a letter for every sound, and no silent letters*). From this rule there are but few exceptions. In some words the initial letter **j** is silent :

jdu , <i>d</i> u, I go	jmeno , <i>n.</i> <i>men</i> o, the name
jsem , <i>sem</i> , I am	jmenovati , <i>men</i> ovat, to name
jsme , <i>sm</i> e, we are	jmění , <i>n.</i> <i>my</i> ění, the property.

The letter **d** is also silent in a few cases: **deera**, *tser*á, the daughter, **srdee**, *n.* *s*’rěsě, the heart.

In some cases the letters **k**, **s**, **t**, **v**, **z**, **ž** modify their sound in order to facilitate pronunciation:

kdo , who, — <i>gd</i> o	v peci , in the oven, — <i>fpetsi</i> ;
kdy , when, — <i>gdy</i>	bez peněz , without money, — <i>běs</i>
s bohem , farewell, — <i>zbřhem</i>	<i>pěñez</i> ;
kletba , f. the curse, — <i>kledb</i> á	zpívati , to sing, — <i>speevat</i> .

SECTION 6. — The prepositions **s** and **z** (**se**, **ze**) are governed by the following rule :

When the tendency is *from above downwards* **s** or **se** is used: **spadl s okna**, **s nebe**, **se stromu**, *spādl sokn*á, *sněb*ě, *sě strom*ů, — he fell from the window, from heaven, from the tree.

*) See Part III, Note 1.

When the tendency is from below upwards, or from the inside to the outside, **z** or **ze** is employed : **vylezu ze studně**, I shall crawl up from the well; **vyndal jsem peníze z kapsy**, (skápsy), I took the money from my pocket, *or* out of my pocket; **vyskočím z okna ven**, I shall jump out of the window.

SECTION 7.—It is a vulgar English custom to place the sound of **h** before initial vowels : *heye* (eye), *Hengland* (England). In Bohemian a similar vulgar custom obtains, namely that of placing the letter **v** before an initial **o**. We hear, for instance :

von , instead of on (he)	vokno , instead of okno (window)
vona , " " ona (she)	voko , " " oko (eye)
vono , " " ono (it)	vosel , " " osel (ass).

This vulgarity must be carefully avoided in writing as well as speaking. On the other hand, when the letter **v** belongs to the root of the word, care must be taken not to omit the same :

voda, water; **voják**, soldier; **vosk**, wax; **voskovati**, to wax.

SECTION 8. — In writing, words have often to be divided in syllables. The principal rules to be observed are the following :

a) A consonant standing between two vowels belongs to the next syllable : **o-ba**, both; **o-ko**, the eye; **kla-da**, the log.

b) A consonant succeeding the letter **l** or **r** also belongs to the next syllable : **vl-na**, *vlnă*, the wool; **hr-dlo**, *hrdlō*, the throat.

c) Two vowels, if they do not form the diphthong **ou**, are always divided : **Ma-ri-e**, *mariě*.

d) Compound words are divided according to their component parts: **bez-hlavý** (**bez-hla-vý**), headless; **roz-ličný** (**roz-lič-ný**), different; **oka-mžik**, the twinkling of an eye; a moment.

Other rules are less important and are sometimes sinned against even by the best writers.

SECTION 9. — The use of capital letters follows the same rules as in English, excepting that adjectives derived from the names of countries or nations do not, in Bohemian, commence with a capital letter (**anglický**, English; **český**, Bohemian etc); neither does the personal pronoun **já** (I) use a capital letter.

2. ETYMOLOGY.

SECTION 1. — The Bohemian language has seven cases, the nature of which is sufficiently explained in Note 5, on page 82.

SECTION 2. — The declension of Bohemian nouns differs in regard to *gender*, and also in regard to *termination*.

Nouns of the masculine gender, moreover, form two classes: (a) names of living creatures, or *animate* nouns; (b) names of lifeless beings, or *inanimate* nouns.

According to this division there is also a slight difference in their declension.

DECLENSION OF MASCULINE NOUNS.

SECTION 3.—The first declension of nouns of the masculine gender is fully shown by the following examples*):

	Animate	Inanimate
	Singular number.	
<i>nominative</i>	syn , the son	strom , the tree
<i>genitive</i>	syn-a , of the son;	strom-u , of the tree;
<i>dative</i>	syn-u, -ovi , to the son	strom-u , to the tree;
<i>accusative</i>	syn-a , the son	strom , the tree
<i>vocative</i>	syn-e*), son !	strom-e , tree !
<i>locative</i>	syn-u, -ovi , (in) the son	strom-u , (in) the tree;
<i>instrumental</i>	syn-em , with the son	strom-em , with the tree
	Plural number.	
<i>nom.</i>	syn-i, -ové , the sons	strom-y***), the trees
<i>gen.</i>	syn-ů, -ův , of the sons	strom-ů, ũv , of the trees
<i>dat.</i>	syn-ům , to the sons;	strom-ům , to the trees;
<i>acc.</i>	syn-y , the sons	strom-y , the trees
<i>voc.</i>	syn-i, -ové , sons;	strom-y***), trees !
<i>loc.</i>	syn-ech , (in) the sons;	strom-ech , (in) the trees;
<i>inst.</i>	syn-y , with the sons:	strom-y , with the trees.

*) Compare Note 3, on page 55; also Note 1, on page 69.

) In this particular case the common usage is **synu ! o son ! **Synu mužj**, o my son !

***) It has also the long termination **ové**, when used of an *animate* noun, especially in poetic language: **stromové se klonili**, the trees bowed. **O stromové, promluvte** ! o trees, speak out !

The first masculine declension (*ten syn, ten strom*) comprises nouns ending in hard or neutral consonants.

SECTION 4. — The second declension of nouns of the masculine gender is presented in full by the following examples:

Animate

<i>nom.</i>	muž , the man
<i>gen.</i>	muž-e , of the man;
<i>dat.</i>	muž-i, -ovi , to the man;
<i>acc.</i>	muž-e , the man
<i>voc.</i>	muž-i , man!
<i>loc.</i>	muž-i , (in) the man;
<i>inst.</i>	muž-em , with the man;

Inanimate

Singular.

meč , the sword
meč-e , of the sword;
meč-i , to the sword;
meč , the sword
meč-i , sword !
meč-i , (in) the sword;
meč-em , with the sword.

Plural.

meč-e*), the swords
meč-ů, -ův , of the swords;
meč-ům , to the swords;
meč-e , the swords
meč-e*), swords !
meč-ich , (in) the swords;
meč-i , with the swords.

The second masculine declension (*ten muž, ten meč*) comprises nouns ending in soft consonants or in *el* (for inst. *učitel*, the teacher).

SECTION 5. — Nouns of the first declension, terminating in **h, ch, k, r**, change these hard consonants into **z, š, c, ř**, in the *nominative* case of the plural number, as explained in Note 3 on page 70, to which we refer.

SECTION 6. — Nouns of the first declension ending in **ek** eliminate the vowel **e** in the inflected cases, as stated in Note 2 on page 80. For instance :

svědek, *svyždek*, the witness; **svědka**, *svyždkă*, (not *svědka*), of the witness; **svědku** or **svědkovi**, to the witness; etc. — (Plural:) **svědci** or **svědkové**, the witnesses; **svědků**, of the witnesses; **svědkům**, to the witnesses; etc.

*) It may also have the long termination (**mečové**), when used as an animate noun, especially in solemn or poetical language.

The same is true of nouns ending **et** and **en**. The nouns **loket** (the yard, *or* the elbow) and **den** (the day) follow in their declension the example of **meč**:

loket, the yard; **lokte**, of the yard; **lokti**, to the yard; etc.

den, the day; **den**, of the day; **dni**, to the day; etc.

In the plural, **den** is quite irregular; **dni** or **dnové**, the days; **dní** or **dnův**, of the days; **dnům**, to the days; **dni** or **dny** (accus.), the days; **dnech**, (in) the days; **dněmi** or **dny**, with the days.

SECTION 7. — The vowel **ů**, when it occurs in the nominative, changes into **o** in the inflected cases : **kůň**, the horse; **koně**, of the horse; **koni** (*or* **koñovi**), to the horse; etc. — See Note 4 on page 56.

SECTION 8. — Nouns ending in **el** are mostly declined like **muž** or **meč**; for instance : **učitel**, the teacher; **učitele**, of the teacher; **učiteli**, (-ovi,) to the teacher; etc.

Přítel (the friend) has in the nominative plural **přátelé**, (the friends); in the genitive **přátel**, of the friends. —

The word **peníze** (the money) is a plural noun: **peněz**, of the money; **penězům**, to the money; **v penězích**, in the money; **penězi**, with the money.

DECLENSION of FEMININE NOUNS.

SECTION 9. — The first declension of nouns of the feminine gender (*ta žena*) is shown by the following example*):

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	žen-a , the woman	žen-y , the women
<i>gen.</i>	žen-y , of the woman	žen , of the women
<i>dat.</i>	žen-ě , to the woman	žen-ám , to the women
<i>acc.</i>	žen-u , the woman	žen-y , the women
<i>voc.</i>	žen-o , woman!	žen-y , women!
<i>loc.</i>	žen-ě , (in) the woman	žen-ách , (in) the women
<i>inst.</i>	žen-ou , with the woman	žen-ami , with the women.

All nouns of the feminine gender ending in **a** belong to this declension.

SECTION 10. — There are some masculine nouns terminating in **a**, which follow this declension in the singular, excepting the dative and locative cases, which have the long masculine form. For instance: **vévod-a**, the duke; **vévod-y**, of the duke; **vévod-ovi**, to the duke; etc.

*) Compare Note 3 on page 60

In the plural number, such nouns follow the first masculine declension: **vévod-ové**, the dukes; **vévod-ův**, of the dukes; **vévod-ům**, to the dukes; etc. (See "plural" of first declension of masculine nouns.) - Some masculines ending in **a** take in the nominative plural always the short form **i** or **é**; for instance: **basista**, the basso; **basisti** (or **basisté**), the bassoes.

SECTION 11.—Nouns of the feminine gender ending in **ě**, belong to the second declension (*ta země*), which is as follows*):

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	zem-ě , the earth	zem-ě , the earths
<i>gen.</i>	zem-ě , of the earth	zem-i , of the earths
<i>dat.</i>	zem-i , to the earth	zem-ím , to the earths
<i>acc.</i>	zem-i , the earth!	zem-ě , the earths
<i>voc.</i>	zem-ě , earth!	zem-ě , earths!
<i>loc.</i>	zem-i , with the earth	zem-ích , (in) the earths
<i>inst.</i>	zem-i , with the earth	zem-ěmi , with the earths.

SECTION 12.—Nouns of the feminine gender ending in a *consonant* (*ta dañ*), belong to the third declension, which has two branches showing a slight divergence at least in the written language, if not always in common discourse; hence we subjoin two examples :

	Singular	
<i>nom.</i>	kost , the bone	dañ , the tax
<i>gen.</i>	kost-i , of the bone	dan-ě , of the tax
<i>dat.</i>	kost-i , to the bone	dan-i , to the tax
<i>acc.</i>	kost , the bone	dañ , the tax
<i>voc.</i>	kost-i , bone!	dan-i , tax!
<i>loc.</i>	kost-i , (in) the bone	dan-i , (in) the tax
<i>inst.</i>	kost-i , with the bone	dan-i , with the tax.

	Plural	
<i>nom.</i>	kost-i , the bones	daně , the taxes
<i>gen.</i>	kost-i , of the bones	dan-i , of the taxes
<i>dat.</i>	kost-emi , to the bones	dan-ím , to the taxes
<i>acc.</i>	kost-i , the bones	dan-ě , the taxes
<i>voc.</i>	kost-i , bones!	dan-ě , taxes!
<i>loc.</i>	kost-ech , (in) the bones	dan-ích , (in) the taxes
<i>inst.</i>	kost-mi , with the bones	dan-ěmi , with the taxes

*) Compare Note 3 on page 60.

Nouns terminating in **eñ** drop the vowel **e** in the inflected cases; for instance : **lázeñ**, the bath; **lázně**, of the bath; **lázni**, to the bath; etc.

DECLENSION of NEUTRAL NOUNS.

SECTION 13.—The first declension comprises nouns of the neutral gender ending in **o** (*to slovo*). They are declined as follows*):

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	slov-o , the word	slov-a , the words
<i>gen.</i>	slov-a , of the word	slov, of the words
<i>dat.</i>	slov-u , to the word	slov-ům , to the words
<i>acc.</i>	slov-o , the word	slov-a , the words
<i>voc.</i>	slov-o , word !	slov-a , words !
<i>loc.</i>	slov-ě, (-u) , (in) the word	slov-ech, (-ích) , (in) the words
<i>inst.</i>	slov-em , with the word	slov-y , with the words

SECTION 14.—The second neutral declension embraces nouns ending in **e** and **ě** (*to pole*, *to poupě*). It has two branches differing somewhat in their inflected endings, as will be seen from the subjoined two examples**).

	Singular	
<i>nom.</i>	pol-e , the field	poup-ě , the bud
<i>gen.</i>	pol-e , of the field	poup-ěte , of the bud
<i>dat.</i>	pol-i , to the field	poup-ěti , to the bud
<i>acc.</i>	pol-e , the field	poup-ě , the bud
<i>voc.</i>	pol-e , field !	poup-ě , bud !
<i>loc.</i>	pol-i , (in) the field	poup-ěti , (in) the bud
<i>inst.</i>	pol-em , with the field	poup-ětem , with the bud.

	Plural	
<i>nom.</i>	pol-e , the fields	poup-ata , the buds
<i>gen.</i>	pol-i , of the fields	poup-at , of the buds
<i>dat.</i>	pol-ím , to the fields	poup-atům , to the buds
<i>acc.</i>	pol-e , fields	poup-ata , the buds
<i>voc.</i>	pol-e , fields !	poup-ata , buds !
<i>loc.</i>	pol-ich , (in) the fields	poup-atech , (in) the buds
<i>inst.</i>	pol-i , with the fields	poup-aty , with the buds.

*) Compare Note 2 on page 65.

**) Compare Note 2 on page 65

The following nouns are declined like poupě: **hrabě**, the count, (**hrab-ěte**, of the count; **hrabata**, the counts); **kníže**, the princ; **pachole**, the little boy; **děvče**, the girl; **vnouče**, the grandchild; — **zvíře**, the animal; **dobytče**, the beast; **hríbě**, the foal; **jehně**, the lamb; **kotě**, the kitten; **kůzle**, the kid; **káče**, the duckling; **kuře**, the chick; **hádě**, the young snake; **house**, the gosling; **tele**, the calf; — **doupě**, the den; **koště**, the broom; **vole**, the crop (the craw);

The nouns **břemeno**, the burden; **rameno**, the arm or upper arm; **semeno**, the seed: **temeno**, the crown of the head, — and some others, have also a short form: **břímě**, **rámě**, **símě**, **témě**. The declension of these shortened nouns deviates somewhat from the above examples of the second neutral declension, for which reason a full paradigm is subjoined:

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	sím-ě , the seed	sem-ena , the seeds
<i>gen.</i>	sem-ene , of the seed	sem-en , of the seeds
<i>dat.</i>	sem-eni , to the seed	sem-enům , to the seeds
<i>acc.</i>	sím-ě , the seed	sem-ena , the seeds
<i>voc.</i>	sím-ě , seed !	sem-ena , seeds !
<i>loc.</i>	sem-eni , (in) the seed	sem-enech , (in) the seeds
<i>inst.</i>	sem-enem , with the seed	sem-eny , with the seeds.

SECTION 15. —The third declension of neutral nouns is characterized by the terminal **í**:

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	znamen-í , the sign	znamen-í , the signs
<i>gen.</i>	znamen-í , to the sign	znamen-í , of the signs
<i>dat.</i>	znamen-í , to the sign	znamen-ím , to the signs
<i>acc.</i>	znamen-í , the sign	znamen-í , the signs
<i>voc.</i>	znamen-í , sign !	znamen-í , signs !
<i>loc.</i>	znamen-í , (in) the sign	znamen-ích , (in) the signs
<i>inst.</i>	znamen-ím , with the sign	znamen-ími , with the signs.

This declension embraces also: 1. *Feminine* nouns terminating in **í**, like: **paní**, the mistress or lady; **biblí**, (also **bible**), the bible; but these nouns retain the terminal **í** in the instrumental of the singular number: **s paní**, with the lady. — 2. Some *masculine* nouns ending in **í**: **rukojmí**, the surety.

SECTION 16. — There is a *dual* number in Bohemian, limited in the modern language to the names of parts of the human body, which appear in pairs : **oči**, the eyes; **uši**, the ears; **ruce**, the hands; **nohy**, the feet; **prsa**, the breasts; **ramena**, the arms; **kolena**, the knees. They are declined in the dual number as follows :

<i>nom.</i>	oč-i , the eyes	uš-i ,	ruc-e ,	noh-y	prs-a ,
<i>gen.</i>	oč-í , of the eyes	uš-í ,	ruk-ou ,	noh-ou	prs-ou
<i>dat.</i>	oč-ím , to the eyes	uš-ím ,	ruk-ám ,	noh-ám	prs-ám
<i>acc.</i>	oč-i , the eyes	uš-i ,	ruc-e ,	noh-y	prs-a
<i>voc.</i>	oč-i , eyes !	uš-i ,	ruc-e ,	noh-y	prs-a
<i>loc.</i>	oč-ích , (in) the eyes	uš-ích ,	ruk-ou ,	noh-ou	prs-ou
<i>inst.</i>	oč-ima , with the eyes	uš-ima ,	ruk-ama ,	noh-ama	prs-oma .

DECLENSION of ADJECTIVES.

SECTION 17. — There are two leading classes of adjectives: definite and indefinite.

Definite adjectives present two subdivisions : 1. adjectives with a changing termination, according to gender: **dobr-ý** (*muž*), **dobr-á** (*žen-a*), **dobr-é** (*dítě*), — the good man, the good woman, the good child; 2. adjectives with the same termination in all three genders: **dnešn-í** (*vítr*) **dnešní** (*zima*), **dnešní** (*parno*), — today's wind, today's cold, today's heat.*)

Indefinite adjectives are either derived from definite adjectives, being only a different form of the same; for instance: **zdravý**, **zdravá**, **zdravé**, healthy or well (definite); **zdráv**, **zdrává**, **zdrávō** (indefinite)**);

Or they are so-called possessive adjectives, derived from nouns : (*otec*, the father) **otec-ův**, **otec-ova**, **otec-ovo**, the father's; (*matka*, the mother) **matč-in**, **matč-ina**, **matč-ino**, the mother's***).

SECTION 18.—Definite adjectives with a changing termination are declined in the following manner****) :

*) Compare Note 1 on page 85, and Note 1 on page 94.

**) Compare Note 2 on page 103.

***) Com Notes 2 and 3, on pp. 94, 95

****) Compare Note 1, on page 85.

Singular.

masculine

feminine

neutre

<i>nom.</i> dobr-ý muž, a good man;	dothr-á žena;	dothr-é dítko
<i>gen.</i> dobr-ého muže, of a good man	dothr-é ženy;	dothr-ého dítka
<i>dat.</i> dobr-ému muži, to a good man	dothr-é ženě;	dothr-ému dítku
<i>acc.</i> dobr-ého muže, a good man;	dothr-ou ženu,	dothr-é dítko
<i>voc.</i> dobr-ý muži, good man!	dothr-á ženo!	dothr-é dítko!
<i>loc.</i> dobr-ém muži, (in) a good man	dothr-é ženě;	dothr-ém dítku
<i>inst.</i> dobr-ým mužem, with a good man	dothr-ou ženou;	dothr-ým dítkem.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i> dobr-í muži, good men	dothr-é ženy	dothr-á dítka
<i>gen.</i> dobr-ých mužů, of good men	dothr-ých žen	dothr-ých díttek
<i>dat.</i> dobr-ým mužům, to good men	dothr-ým ženám	dothr-ým dítkám
<i>acc.</i> dobr-é muže, good men	dothr-é ženy	dothr-á dítka
<i>voc.</i> dobr-í muži, good men!	dothr-é ženy	dothr-á dítka
<i>loc.</i> dobr-ých mužích, (in) good m.	dothr-ých ženách	dothr-ých dítkách
<i>inst.</i> dobr-ým muži, with good men	dothr-ým ženami	dothr-ým dítkami.

Note 1. The hard consonants **h**, **ch**, **k**, **r**, are changed in the nominative plural, of the *masculine* gender into the soft consonants **z**, **š**, **c**, **ř**, when the adjective qualifies an *animate* noun : **dobrý muž**, — **dobrí muži**; **velký hoch**, — **velcí hoši**. The terminations **eký** and **ský** change into **čtí** and **ští**: **německý** (sing). **němečtí** — (plur.); **český** (sing.) — **čeští** (plur.).

In common discourse, however, this rule is neglected.

Note 2. When the adjective qualifies a *masculine inanimate* noun, it agrees in the nominative and accusative plural with the feminine gender: **dobré stromy**, good trees; and the accusative singular is like the nominative: **dobrý strom**.

SECTION 19.—Definite adjectives, having the same termination (**i**) in all genders and both numbers, are declined in the following manner*);

*) Compare Note 1, page 94.

		Singular		Plural
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	<i>all three genders</i>
<i>gen.</i>	dnešn-ího	dnešn-í	dnešn-ího	dnešn-ích
<i>dat.</i>	dnešn-ímu	dnešn-í	dnešn-ímu	dnešn-ím
<i>acc.</i>	dnešn-ího	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>voc.</i>	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>loc.</i>	dnešn-ím	dnešn-í	dnešn-ím	dnešn-ích
<i>inst.</i>	dnešn-ím	dnešn-í	dnešn-ím	dnešn-ími

Note. When the adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, the accusative singular is like the nominative. We say: čekám dnešního hosta, I wait for today's guest; but: "čekám dnešní list", I wait for today's paper.

SECTION 20.—Indefinite adjectives like **zdravý** (from **zdravý**), **vesel** (from **veselý**), etc.* are now used only in the nominative and accusative cases. Possessive adjectives have the following declension:

		Singular	
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom.</i>	bratr-ův , my brother's	bratr-ova	bratr ovo
<i>gen.</i>	bratr-ova , of my brother's	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>dat.</i>	bratr-ovu , to my brother's	bratr-ově	bratr-ovu
<i>acc.</i>	bratr-ova , my brother's	bratr-ovu	bratr-ovo
<i>voc.</i>	bratr-ův! brother's!	bratr-ova !	bratr-ovo !
<i>loc.</i>	bratr-ovn (-ově) in my brother's	bratr-ově	bratr-ovn
<i>inst.</i>	bratr-ovým , with my brother's	bratr-ovou	bratr-ovým.

Plural

(Only three cases differ, the other four being identical. In conversation there is no difference at all.)

<i>nom.</i>	bratr ovi , my brother's	bratr-ovy	bratr ova
<i>gen.</i>		bratr-ových	
<i>dat.</i>		bratr-ovým	
<i>acc.</i>	bratr-ovy	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>voc.</i>	bratr-ovi !	bratr-ovy !	bratr-ova !
<i>loc.</i>		bratr-ových	
<i>inst.</i>		bratr-ovými	

*) See Note 2, page 103.

Note 1. — When the possessive adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, the accusative singular is like the nominative: *vidím bratrův dům*, “I see my brother’s house”; and the nominative and vocative plural have a final **y**, like the feminine gender: *bratrový domy*, “my brother’s houses”.

Note 2. — The adjective **páně** is not inflected: **leta Páně 1900**, in the year of our Lord 1890; — **chrám Páně**, the Lord’s house; — **večeře, Páně**, the Lord’s supper, — **dům páně Hodanův**, Mr. Hodan’s house.

Note 3. — Possessive adjectives formed from feminine nouns and having the termination **in** (fem. **ina**, neutre **ino**)*), are declined like those formed from masculine nouns: **bratrův, bratrova, bratrovo**.

In their formation hard consonants are softened down in the usual manner: **mat-ka**, the mother; **mat-čin** (**matčina, matčino**), the mother’s.

COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

SECTION 21. — The comparison of adjectives is fully explained in Notes 1 and 2, Lesson XXII. The termination **ký** changes into **čí**, in the second and third degree: **hezký**, nice; **hezčí**, nicer; **nejhezčí**, ni est.

DECLENSION of PRONOUNS.

SECTION 22. — *Personal pronouns.**)

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	já, I	ty, thou	on, he; ono, it	ona, she
<i>gen.</i>	mě (mne) of me	tě (tebe)	jeho (ho)	jí
<i>dat.</i>	mi (mně) to me	ti (tobě)	jemu (mu)	jí
<i>acc.</i>	mě (mne) me	tě (tebe)	jeho (ho, jej); je, it	ji
<i>loc.</i>	mně, in me	tobě	něm	ní
<i>inst.</i>	mnou, with me	tebou	ním (jím)	ní (jí)

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	my, we	vy, you	oni, (fem. ony; neut. ona) they
<i>gen.</i>	nás, of us	vás,	jich
<i>dat.</i>	nám, to us	vám	jim
<i>acc.</i>	nás, us	vás	je
<i>loc.</i>	nás, in us	vás	nich
<i>inst.</i>	námi (with) us	vámi	nimi (jimi)

*) See Note 3, page 95.

*) Compare Note 1 on page 102 and Note on page 106.

SECTION 23. — *Possessive pron uns.**

Singular.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	můj	má (moje)	mé (moje)	náš	naše	naše
<i>gen.</i>	mého	mé (mojí)	mého	našeho	naší	našeho
<i>dat.</i>	mémú	mé (mojí)	mémú	našemu	naši	našemu
<i>acc.</i>	mého (inan. můj)	mou (moji)	mé (moje)	naseho (inan. náš)	naši	naše
<i>voc.</i>	můj	má (moje)	mé (moje)	náš	naše	naše
<i>loc.</i>	mém	mé (mojí)	mém	našem	naší	našem
<i>inst.</i>	mým	mou (mojí)	mým	naším	naší	naším.

Plural.

(Cases showing no difference of gender are left in blank.)

<i>nom.</i>	moji (moje	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naši (naše)	naše	naše
<i>gen.</i>	mých			našich		
<i>dat.</i>	mým			našim		
<i>acc.</i>	mé (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naše		
<i>voc.</i>	moji (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naši (naše)	naše	naše
<i>loc.</i>	mých			našich		
<i>inst.</i>	mými			našimi		

SECTION 24. — *Indicative pronouns.***

Singular			Plural			
<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	ten	ta	to	tí	ty	ta
<i>gen.</i>	toho	té	toho	těch		koho
<i>dat.</i>	tomu	té	tomu	těm		komu
<i>acc.</i>	toho (ten)	tu	to	ty	ty	ta
<i>loc.</i>	tom	té	tom	těch		kom
<i>inst.</i>	tím	tou	tím	těmi		kým

SECTION 25.—The relative pronouns **který** (fem. **která**, neut. **které**) and **jenž** (fem. & neut. **jež**), are translated by *which* or *that*.The pronoun **který**, **á**, **é** is declined like the definite adjective **do-**
bry, **á**, **é** : the pronoun **jenž** is declined as follows:

*) Compare Lessons XXV and XXVI.

**) Compare Note 1 on page 115, and Note 5 on page 82.

		Singular		Plural
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	jenž	jež	jež	<i>of all three genders.</i>
<i>gen.</i>	jehož	jíž	jehož	již (masc.), jež (f. & n.)
<i>dat.</i>	jemuž	jíž	jemuž	jichž
<i>acc.</i>	jehož (jejž)	již	jež	jimž
<i>loc.</i>	(v) němž	(v) níž	(v) němž	(v) nichž
<i>inst.</i>	jímž	jíž	jímž	jimiž

NUMERALS.

SECTION 26.—The *cardinal* numeral **jeden** (fem. **jedna**, neut. **jedno**) is declined like **ten**, **(ta, to):***)

		Singular		Plural
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>of all three genders.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	jeden	jedn-a	jedn-o	jedn-i, -y, -a
<i>gen.</i>	jedn-oho	jedn-é	jedn-oho	jedn-ěch
<i>dat.</i>	jedn-omu	jedn-é	jedn-omu	jedn-ěm
<i>acc.</i>	jedn-oho (inan. jeden)	jedn-u	jedn-o	jedn-y, -y, -a
<i>loc.</i>	jedn-om	jedn-é	jedn-om	jedn-ěch
<i>inst.</i>	jedn-ím	jedn-on	jedn-ím	jedn-ěmi

The declension of **dva** (fem. & neut. **dvě**), **tři**, **čtyři** (fem. & neut. **čtyry**) is sufficiently explained in Note 1, on page 122.

The numerals **pět**, **šest**, **sedm** until **devadesát devět** (*five till ninety nine*) take in all cases an **i**, except the accusative and vocative, which are like the nominative. For instance : **pět mužů**, five men; **pěti mužů**, of five men (or “of the five men”); **pěti mužům**, to five men; **v pěti mužích**, in five men; **s pěti muži**, with five men.

In the nominative and accusative they are *always* followed by the *genitive case* of the noun: **pět mužů** or **mužův**, five men; **šest holek**, six girls; **sedm dětí**, seven children.

*) See Note 3 on page 116.

Numerals like *twenty one*, *twenty two*, *twenty three*, and so forth; may be rendered in Bohemian in two ways: 1.—**dvacet jeden**, **dvacet dva**, **dvacet tři**, etc.*), in which case both parts are inflected: **dvaceti dvou**, of twenty two; **dvaceti dvěma**, to twenty two; etc.

2. — **jeden-a-dvacet**, **dva-a-dvacet**, **tři-a-dvacet**, etc., *one and twenty*, *two and twenty*, *three and twenty*; etc., but usually written together: **jedenadvacet**, **dvaadvacet**. In this case only the second part is inflected: **jedenadvaceti**, of twenty one, to twenty two; **s jedenadvaceti**, with twenty one.

Sto (one hundred) is declined like the neutre noun **slovo**, excepting that in connection with **dvě** (two) it retains the *dual* number in the nominative and accusative: **sto**, **sta**, **stu**, etc. (a hundred, of a hundred, to a hundred); **dvě stě**, two hundred; **dvou set**, of two hundred; **dvěma stům**, to two hundred; **o dvou stech**, about two hundred; **s dvěma sty**, with two hundred.

Tisíc (one thousand) is declined like the masc. noun **meč**: **tisice**, of a thousand; **tisíci**, to a thousand; **s tisícem**, with a thousand.

SECTION 27.—*Ordinal* numerals, **první** or **prvý**, **druhý**, **třetí**, etc; (first, second, third,) are declined like adjectives of a corresponding termination, i. e. like **dobrý**, **á**, **é** or **dnešní**.**)

The same rule obtains in relation to the *special* and *multiplicative* numerals: **dvojí**, **trojí**, etc. (twofold, threefold); **dvojnásobný**, **trojnásobný**, etc. (double, treble).

The neutral form of special numerals: **čtvero**, **patero**, **desatero**, etc., is declined like the neutre noun **slovo**; for instance: **desatero přikázání**, the ten commandments; **desatera přikázání**, of the ten commandments; **v desateru přikázání**, in the ten commandments; etc.

The *names* of numbers: **jednotka** (the figure one), **dvojka**, the figure two), **trojka**, (the figure three), etc., are declined like the fem. nouns ending in **a**: **žena**.

SECTION 28.—The indefinite numeral **všecken** (also **všecek** or **všecken**)***), *all*, has the following declension:

*) See page 120.

**) See Note 3 on page 124.

***) See Note 1 on page 127.

Singular.			
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom. & voc.</i>	všechen	všechna	všechno
<i>gen.</i>	všecho	vší	všeho
<i>dat.</i>	všemu	vší	všemu
<i>acc.</i>	všeho (inan. všechen)	všechnu	všechno
<i>loc.</i>	všem	vší	všem
<i>inst.</i>	vším	vší	vším
Plural.			
<i>nom. & voc. masc.</i>	všichni	<i>gen.</i> všechn	<i>in all</i>
(<i>masc. inan.</i>)	všechny	<i>dat.</i> všem	<i>three</i>
<i>fem.</i>	všechny	<i>l.c. (ve) všechn</i>	
<i>neut.</i>	všechna	<i>inst</i> všemi	<i>genders.</i>
<i>acc., masc. & fem.</i>	všechny	<i>acc. neut. všechna</i>	

The indefinite numeral **veškerý**, **á**, **é** has the same meaning as **vše-chen**, **na**, **no** (*all*), and is declined like adjectives of the same termination (**dobrý**, **á**, **é**.)

VERBS.

SECTION 29. — 1. The verb is said to be *subjective*, when the action or condition is strictly confined to the subject: **sedím**, I am sitting; **běhám**, I am running; **růže kvete**, the rose is blooming.

2. It is called *objective*, when the action relates to another person or thing: **slunce zahřívá zemi**, the sun is warming the earth; **učitel chválil žáka**, the teacher praised the scholar; **důvěřuj v Boha!** trust in God!

The objective verb is *transitive* or *intransitive*.

The transitive verb is accompanied by the accusative case without any preposition: **učitel chválí žáka**, the teacher is praising the scholar; **matka vede dceru**, the mother is leading her daughter.

The intransitive verb is accompanied by the accusative case with a preposition: **důvěřuj v Boha**; or by some other case with or without a preposition: **lakomec baží po bohatství**, the miser craves for riches; **žák poslouchá učitele**, the scholar obeys his teacher.

3. A verb is called *reflexive*, when the action reverts to the subject. Such verbs are accompanied by the reflexive pronoun **se**: **Modli se!**

pray! *Chlapec se strojí*, the boy is dressing (himself). *Radujeme se z toho*, we are rejoicing over it.

But sometimes the pronoun **se** expresses the *passive* mood, and not a reflected action: *maso se jí*, the flesh is eaten; *jablka se česají*, the apples are being picked; **pole se orá**, the field is being plowed.

4. **I**mpersonal verbs express an action or condition regardless of the person or thing, from which it proceeds: **prší**, it rains, it is raining; **rozednívá se**, it dawns, (the day is breaking).

SECTION 30.—The classification of the Bohemian verbs in regard to the character of the action is fully explained in Lesson XXXIX.

Tense-inflection shows a difference in the *time* of the action or condition. There are three tenses:

1. *The present tense (přítomný čas):* **píšu**, I write, I am writing; **pes štěká**, the dog barks, the dog is barking.

2. *The past tense (minulý čas):* **psal jsem**, I wrote, I was writing; **pes štěkal**, the dog barked, the dog was barking.

The past tense may be *continuous*, when a continued past action is expressed: **šel jsem**, I went, I was going; or *finite*, when a finished action is expressed: **přišel jsem**, I came.

3. *The future tense (budoucí čas):* **psáti budu**, I shall write, I shall be writing; **pes bude štěkat**, the dog will bark, the dog will be barking.

The future tense may also be either *continuous*: **budu psáti**; or *finite*, when a completed future action is to be expressed; **napišu**, I shall write out.

The Bohemian verb, like in English, has an indicative mood: **mluvím**, *I speak*; a subjunctive or conditional mood: **mluvil bych**, *I should speak*; and an imperative mood: **mluv!** *speak!*

SECTION 31.—There is only one auxiliary verb in Bohemian: **býti**, to be. — But certain verbs are used in connection with other verbs, to make a complete assertion or declaration; for instance: **musiti**, must; **smíti**, may, dare; **moci**, can; **ráčiti**, please; etc. We say: **musím jít**, I must go; **smím mluviti?** may I speak? **ráčte vejít!** please to come in!

SECTION 32.—The Bohemian verb has *six conjugations*, fully illustrated in Lessons XXXI—XXXV incl.

The auxiliary verb **býti**, adding in the formation of the past and future tenses, is conjugated thus:

Present: **jsem, jsi, jest; jsme, jste, jsou.**

Imperative: **bud', bud'me, bud'te.**

Past participle: **byl, byla, bylo; byli, byly, byla.**

Subjunctive: **bych, bys, by; bychom, (bysme), byste, by.**

Future: **budu, budeš, bude; budeme, budete, budou.**

Present transgressive):* **jsa, jsouc, jsouc; jsouce; (being).**

Past transg.: **byv, byvši, byvši; byvše; (having been).**

Future transg.: **buda, budouc, budouc; budouce; (to be, expecting to be).**

*) This participial construction occurs only in the written language; it is explained in Note 4, page 164.

SECTION 33.—Table of the six conjugations.

I. Termination ti directly attached to the root.							II Term. -outi	III Termin.
Person		nés-ti to carry	pí-ti to drink	tří-ti to rob	péc-i*) to bake	min-outi to pass	hled-ěti to look, to look after	
Indicative mood	Plur.	Singular	1	nes-u	pij-u (-i)	tr-u	pek-u	min-u
	Plur.	Singular	2	nes-eš	pij-eš	tř-eš	peč-eš	min-eš
	Plur.	Singular	3	nes-e	pij-e	tř-e	peč-e	min-e
	Plur.	Singular	1	nes-eme	pij-eme	tř-eme	peč-eme	min-eme
	Plur.	Singular	2	nes-ete	pij-ete	tř-ete	peč-ete	min-ete
	Plur.	Singular	3	nes-ou	pij-ou	tr-ou	pek-ou	min-ou
	Plur.	Singular	2	nes	pij	tři	peč	miň
	Plur.	Singular	1	nes-me	pij me	tř-eme	peč-me	miň-me
	Plur.	Singular	2	nes-te	pij-te	tř-ete	peč-te	miň-te
Active participle.	Plur.	Sing.	<i>masc.</i>	nes-l	pi-l	tře-l	pek-l	minu-l
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>fem.</i>	nes-la	pi-la	tře-la	pek-la	minu-la
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>neut.</i>	nes-lo	pi-lo	tře-lo	pek-lo	minu-lo
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>masc.</i>	nes-li	pi-li	tře-li	pek-li	minu-li
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>fem.</i>	nes-ly	pi-ly	tře-ly	pek-ly	minu-ly
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>neut.</i>	nes-la	pi-la	tře-la	pek-la	minu-la
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>masc.</i>	nes-en	pi-t	tře-n	peč-en	minu-t
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>fem.</i>	nes-ena	pi-ta	tře-na	peč-ena	minu-ta
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>neut.</i>	nes-eno	pi-to	tře-no	peč-eno	minu-to
Passive participle	Plur.	Sing.	<i>masc.</i>	nes-eni	pi-ti	tře-ni	peč-eni	minu-ti
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>fem.</i>	nes-eny	pi-ty	tře-ny	peč-eny	minu-ty
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>neut.</i>	nes-ena	pi-ta	tře-na	peč-ena	minu-ta
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>masc.</i>	nes-a	pij-e	tr-a	pek-a	min-a
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>fem.</i>	nes-ouc	pij-íc	tr-ouc	pek-ouc	min-ouc
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>neut.</i>	nes-ouc	pij-íc	tr-ouc	pek-ouc	min-ouc
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>m. f.</i>	nes-ouce	pij-íce	tr-ouce	pek-ouce	min-ouce
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>n.</i>	nes-ouce	pij-íce	tr-ouce	pek-ouce	hled-íce
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>masc.</i>	nes	piv	tře-v	pek	miň-uv
Past transgressive	Plur.	Sing.	<i>fem.</i>	nes-ši	piv-ši	tře-vši	pek-ši	min-uvši
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>neut.</i>	nes-ši	piv-ši	tře-vši	pek-ši	min-uvši
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>m. f.</i>	nes-še	piv-še	tře-vše	pek-še	min-uvše
	Plur.	Sing.	<i>n.</i>	nes-še	piv-še	tře-vše	pek-še	hled-vše

*) Popularly **pecti**, originally **pékти**.

III -ěti or -eti		IV Termin. -iti	V Termin. -ati			VI Term. -ovati
ház-eti to throw	čin-iti to do	vol-ati to call	maz-ati to rub	hná-ti to drive	mil-ovati to love	
ház-ím	čiu-ím	vol-ám	maž-u (-i)	žen-u	miluj-u (-i)	
ház-íš	čin-íš	vol-áš	maž-eš	žen-eš	miluj-eš	
ház-í	čin-í	vol-á	maž-e	žen-e	miluj-e	
ház-íme	čin-íme	vol-áme	maž-eme	žen-eme	miluj-eme	
ház-íte	čin-íte	vol-áte	maž-ete	žen-ete	miluj-ete	
ház-ejí	čin-í	vol-ají	maž-ou (í)	žen-o	miluj-ou (-i)	
házej	čiň	volej	maž	žeň	miluj	
házej-me	čiň-me	volej-me	maž-me	žeň-me	miluj-me	
házej-te	čiň-te	volej-te	maž-te	žeň-te	miluj-te	
háze-l	čini-l	vola-l	maza-l	hna-l	milova-l	
háze-la	čini-la	vola-la	maza-la	hna-la	milova-la	
háze-lo	čini-lo	vola-lo	maza-lo	hna-lo	milova-lo	
háze-li	čini-li	vola-li	maza-li	hna-li	milova-li	
háze-ly	čini-ly	vola-ly	maza-ly	hna-ly	milova-ly	
háze-lá	čini-la	vola-la	maza-la	hna-la	milova-la	
háze-n	čině-n	volá-n	mazá-n	hná-n	milová-n	
háze-na	čině-na	volá-na	mazá-na	hná-na	milová-na	
háze-no	čině-no	volá-no	mazá-no	hná-no	milová-no	
háze-ni	čině-ni	volá-ni	mazá-ni	hná-ni	milová-ni	
háze-ny	čině-ny	volá-ny	mazá-ny	hná-ny	milová-ny	
háze-na	čině-na	volá-na	mazá-na	hná-na	milová-na	
háze-je	čiu-ě	vola-je	maž-e	žen-a	miluj-e	
háze-jíc	čin-íc	vola-jíc	maž-íc	žen-ouc	miluj-íc	
háze-jíc	čin-íc	vola-jíc	maž-íc	žen-ouc	miluj-íc	
háze-jíce	čin-íce	vola-jíce	maží-ce	žen-ouce	miluj-íce	
háze-v	čini-v	vola-v	maza-v	hna-v	milova-v	
háze-vši	čini-vši	vola-vši	maza-vši	hna-vši	milova-vši	
háze-vši	čini-vši	vola-vši	máza-vši	hna-vši	milova-vši	
háze-vše	čini-vše	vola-vše	maza-vše	hna-vše	milova-vše	

SECTION 34.—Irregular verbs.

Jeti, to ride, to drive;—*present*, **jedu**, **jedeš**, **jede**, **jedeme**, **jedete**, **jedou**; *imper* **jed'**, **-me**, **-te**; *active partic* **jel**, **-a**, **-o**; *passive partic.* **jet**, **-a**, **o**; *present transg.* **jed-a**, **-ouc**, **-ouce**; *supine*, **jet**, (to ride); **jíti**, to go;—*pres.* **jdu**, **jdeš**, **jde**, **jdeme**, **jdete**, **jdou**; *imp.* **jdi**, **jdě-me**, **jdě-te**; *act. part.* **šel**, **šla**, **šlo**; *present transg.* **jda**, **jdouc**, **-ce**; *sup.* **jít**, (to go);

chtítí, to want;—*pres.* **chci**, **chceš**, **chce**, **chceme**, **chcete**, **chtějí**; *imper.* **chtěj**, **chtěj-me**, **-te**; *act. part.* **chtěl**, **-a**, **-o**; *pres. transg.* **chtěj-e**, **-íe**, **-íce**; *past transg.* **chtěv**, **-ši**, **-še**; *sup.* **chtět** (to want);

míti, to have;—*pres.* **mám**, **máš**, **má**, **máme**, **máte**, **mají**; *imper.* **měj**, **měj-me**, **měj-te**; *act. part.* **měl**, **-a**, **o**; *pres. transg.* **maj-e**, **-íc**, **-íce**; *past transg.* **měv**, **-ši**, **-še**;

spáti, to sleep;—*pres.* **spím**, **spíš**, **spí**, **spíme**, **spíte**, **spí**; *imper* **spi**, **spě-me**, **-te**; *act. part.* **spal**, **-a**, **-o**; *pres. transg.* **spě**, **spíc**, **spíce**; *past transg.* **spav**, **-ši**, **-še**; *sup.* **spat**, (to sleep);

státi se, to happen, to become;—*stanu se*, *staneš se*, *stane se*, *stan-eme*, *-ete*, *-ou se*; *imper.* *staň se*, *-me*, *-te se*; *act part.* *stal*, *-a*, *-o se*; *pres. transg.* *stav*, *-ši*, *-še*, *-se*; *stává se*, *it happens*, is impersonal);

viděti, to see;—*vidím*, *vidíš*, *vidí*, *vidíme*, *vidíte*, *vidí*; *imper.* **viz**, **-me**, **-te**; *act. part.* **viděl**, **-a**, **-o**; *passive part.* **viděn**, **-a**, **-o**; *present transg.* **vid-a**, **-ouc**, **-ouce**.

SECTION 35.—The derivation and comparison of adverbs is explained in Notes 2 one 3, on page 128.

Prepositions govern or require particular cases.

The *genitiae* case, responding to the question **čí**, **koho?** **čeho?***), is governed by the following prepositions, and adverbs used as prepositions:

bez , without	do , to, till, until;	krom	as:de from,
dle { according to;	od , from	kromě	except;
podle { next to;	u , at, by;	kolem	round,
vedle , next to, along- side of;	z , ze , from, out of;	okolo	around;
		vůkol	

*) See Note 5, page 82. In the genitive case the question **koho?** **whose?** was inadvertently omitted.

vně , outside of;	daleko , far	výše , higher
vnitř , inside of;	stranu , about	prostřed , amidst
blízko , near	níže , lower	místo , instead of.

The *dative* case (responding to the question **komu? čemu?**) is governed by the following:

k	{ to, for;	proti , against	naproti , towards, a-
ke		k vůli , for the sake of;	gainst, opposite;
ku			vstríc , towards.

The *accusative* case (responding to the question **koho? co?**) is governed by the following:

mimo , besides, past;	pro , for	skrze , through.
ob , over	přes , over, across;	

The *locative* case (responding to the question **v kom? v čem? o kom? o čem? etc.**) is always governed by the preposition **při**, *by, at*; and in most instances by the following prepositions:

v	{ in	o , about, on;	po , after, by, during.
ve		na , on, upon, for;	

The preposition **v** or **ve**, when it occurs before a word beginning with the letter **v**, is often changed into **u**; for instance: **u velikém počtu** (instead of **ve velikém počtu**), *in a large number*, or “in large numbers.”

The above five prepositions often require the *accusative* case; for example: **na potupu**, *for disgrace*, i. e. “in order to disgrace or dishonor”; **bojí se o život**, *he fears for his life*.

The prepositions **mezi**, between, among; **nad**, over, above; **pod**, under, below; **před**, before, — govern either the *accusative* or the *instrumental* case: **půjdu mezi lidi**, *I shall go among people*; **byl jsem mezi lidmi**, *I was among people*.

The preposition **s**, *se* governs the *genitive* case, when it means *from, off*: **spadl s vozu**, *he fell from the wagon*, *from the tree*; and it governs the *instrumental* case, when it means *with*: **pojd' se mnou**, *come with me*; **šli jsme za ním**, *we went after him*, *we followed him*.

Za governs the *genitive* case, when it means *during, in:* za času Washingtona, in the time of Washington;—it governs the *accusative* case, when it means *for:* koupil jsem to za dollar, I bought it for a dollar; — and it governs the *instrumental* case, when translated by *behind, after:* pojď za mnou, come behind me; přijdu za tebou, I will come after thee.

In rare instances it requires the accusative case: nejsem s to posloužiti vám, I cannot (I am not able to) accommodate you.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Why this book has been written.....	5
The Bohemian language.....	7
The Bohemians in the United States.....	8
 PART I.	
General observations.....	12
The Bohemian alphabet.....	12
Names of the letters.....	15
Bohemian pronunciation.....	16
Parts of speech.....	18
Gender.....	19
Grammatical rules in general.....	20
The accent.....	21
“Ty” and “vy”.....	22
 PART II. Rules of pronunciation.....	
Lesson I }	25
Lesson XL }	28
	172
 PART III. Bohemian conversation.....	
Bohemian and English.....	179
Greetings and compliments.....	180
A call.....	187
Time.....	190
The hour.....	192
Age and date.....	198
The weather.....	201
Health and sickness.....	206
The human being.....	213
Disease and cure.....	218
Drugs and medicines.....	228
At home.....	237
Buying and selling.....	244
In a grocery store.....	249
Garments.....	255
Shoemaking.....	257
Diverse trades.....	260
On the farm.....	261
	262
 PART IV. Bohemian grammar.....	
Orthography.....	269
Etymology.....	274

Knihy vydané nákladem Slavie:

Tlumač. Nový Tlumač Americký od Karla Jonáše. Žádná publikace česká v této zemi nebyla přijata od obecnstva s takovým vděkem a uznáním a žádné se ně dostalo rozšíření tak rychlého a velikého, jako Tlumači, knize ku snadnému a rychlému přiřízení se jazyku anglickému, bez jehož znalosti nikdo se zde valného pokroku nededělá. Cena \$1.50 i se zásilkou a prodává se jedině za hotové.

Slovník česko-anglický, od Karla Jonáše. Čtvrté rozmnovené a opravené vydání. Postupná kniha učebná po Tlumači a nezbytná pro každého ku zdokonalení se v jazyku anglickém. Pro počátečníka ku rychlému seznámení se s nejobecnější, každodenní mluvou stačí Tlumač; povrchní znalec angličiny musí pak k ruce mít Slovník, aby se zdokonalil. Cena \$1.50. Jen za hotové.

Slovník anglicko-český, od Karla Jonáše. S úplnou výslovností anglickou. Obsahuje na 723 stranách bohatý slovní poklad anglického jazyka. Nezbytná pomůcka čteuářům. Cena \$1.75.

Zlatá kniha pro farmera. Dle rozličných pramenů se stavil Karel Jonáš. Kniba tato pojednává o vnitřních i zevnitřních nemocech koní a všechno dobytka hospodářského. Obsahuje návod o koupi koní, dodatek o domácích pomůckách pro všeliké nehody, a recepty na rozličné léky v jazyku českém i anglickém. Prospěla již stům českých farmerů a na žádné farmě neměla by chyběti. Cena \$1.00.

Americké právo. Sepsal Josef Jiří Král. Sbírka nejdůležitějších zákonů, které by měl znati každý občan americký. Obsahuje právo státní, občanské, rodinné, pozemkové, farmereské; bomstední zákon i jiné o zabírání veřejných pozemků a všechny smlouvy s Rakouskem. Cena \$1.75.

Česko-americký Besedník. Největší sbírka příležitostních básní a deklamací vážných i žertovných, solových výstupů, gratulací atd. Pravý poklad pro pořadatele zábav. Cena \$1.75.

Politické zřízení americké. Napsal Charles Nordhoff. Se svolením spisovatele a nakladatele přeložil Gustav B. Reišl. Cena 50c.

Objednávky adresujte: SLAVIE, Racine, Wis.

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

Los Angeles

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

QL

OCT 17 1994

6 WK DEC 22 1999

REC'D YRL DEC 01 '99

MAY 6 1 2006

32

MR L878

QL OCT 08 2002

QL JAN 13 2003

NON-RENEWABLE

ILL-MB@

MAR 10 2004

DUE 2 WKS FROM DATE RECEIVED

UCLA YRL/IL

1992

92

93

3

315

A



3 1158 00671 2821

